

Temple Of The Sages

Voyages To Hell

地獄遊記



Explanations by Master Luong Si Hang-Vi Kien

PUBLISHED BY
Vo Vi LED Publications
Vo Vi Friendship Association of Northern California
P.O. Box 18304
San Jose, CA 95158, USA

Cover Design by Vu Nguyen

website: <http://www.vovi.org>

Printed in the United States of America
August 2012
ISBN 978-1-937457-03-7

Unicode version
First Edition, Set in San Jose, California
(Second Revised Version of Voyages To Hell)

Printed for Free Distribution – Not For Sale



Temple of The Sages, TaiChu



*Master Luong Si Hang and Mr. Yang Ts'ien
(13 March 1985)*



*Master Luong Si Hang-Vi Kien
(1923-2009)*

This book “Voyages To Hell” is full of spiritual meaning. It shows the path for spiritual adepts and helps them reach self-awakening, so that they can clearly see their own mistakes. They will understand that God holds the final and sublime power, not earthly human beings.

The original version of the book "Voyages To Hell" was written in Chinese by the Temple of The Sages in Taiwan through the intermediary of a medium and published in the year 1979.

The Vo-Vi Friendship Association was permitted to do translations in the year 1980, and the Vietnamese version translated by Mr. Dao Mong Nam was first published in the year 1982.

The English version was translated from the Vietnamese version by Mr. Nguyen Khang and Mr. Bui H. Huu.

Master Luong Si Hang-Vi Kien read the book "Voyages To Hell" and gave his explanations during a Vo-Vi meditation seminar held in Melbourne, Australia, in 1987. His audio transcript was translated from Vietnamese into English by Ms. Hue-Mai.

Temple Of The Sages

Voyages To Hell

地獄遊記

*English Version Translated by
Nguyen Khang & Bui H. Huu*

*Explanations by Master Luong Si Hang-Vi Kien
Translated by Hue-Mai*

Contents

<i>Foreword</i>	1
<i>Introduction</i>	3
<i>Words From Master Luong Si Hang—Vi Kien</i>	5
<i>Celestial Edict</i>	7
<i>Preface</i>	14
<i>Chapter 1: Arrival upon Heart-Summit</i>	23
<i>Chapter 2: Visit to “Pure-Heart” Pond</i>	28
<i>Chapter 3: Promenade on the Frontier</i>	33
<i>Chapter 4: Passing the Portico of Demons</i>	37
<i>Chapter 5: Arrival in the First Palace of Hell</i>	48
<i>Chapter 6: Visit to the Memory Hall</i>	53
<i>Chapter 7: Visit to the Center for Complimentary Teaching</i>	62
<i>Chapter 8: Visit to the Citadel of Premature Death</i>	70
<i>Chapter 9: Second Visit to the Citadel of Premature Death</i>	79
<i>Chapter 10: Visit to the Second Palace</i>	91
<i>Chapter 11: Visit to the Prison with the Lake of Mire</i>	105
<i>Chapter 12: Visit to the Prison of Hunger and Thirst</i>	113
<i>Chapter 13: Visit to the Bridge over the Pit of Snakes</i>	122
<i>Chapter 14: Visit to the Prison of Ice</i>	130
<i>Chapter 15: Visit to the Third Gate</i>	144
<i>Chapter 16: Visit to the Prison of Eyeball Wrenching</i>	149
<i>Chapter 17: Visit to the Prison of Face-Skinning</i>	156
<i>Chapter 18: Visit to the Prison of Upside-Down Hanging</i>	166
<i>Chapter 19: Visit to the Palace of Soul-Resuscitation</i>	172
<i>Chapter 20: Another Visit to the Palace</i>	187
<i>Chapter 21: Third Visit to the Palace</i>	193
<i>Chapter 22: Visit to the 4th Palace</i>	200
<i>Chapter 23: Visit to the Prison of forcible Drug-Drinking</i>	206
<i>Chapter 24: Visit to the Prison of Arm-Bath With Boiling Water</i>	214

<i>Chapter 25:</i>	<i>Visit to the Prison of Throat-Staving</i>	<i>230</i>
<i>Chapter 26:</i>	<i>Visit to the Prison of Sinew-Cutting</i>	<i>236</i>
<i>Chapter 27:</i>	<i>Visit to the Prison with Venomous Wasps</i>	<i>243</i>
<i>Chapter 28:</i>	<i>Second Visit to the Prison</i>	<i>250</i>
<i>Chapter 29:</i>	<i>Third Visit to the Prison</i>	<i>262</i>
<i>Chapter 30:</i>	<i>Visit to the 5th Palace</i>	<i>268</i>
<i>Chapter 31:</i>	<i>Visit to the 5th Palace</i>	<i>275</i>
<i>Chapter 32:</i>	<i>Visit to the Prison of Heart-Wrenching</i>	<i>281</i>
<i>Chapter 33:</i>	<i>Second Visit to the Prison</i>	<i>287</i>
<i>Chapter 34:</i>	<i>Third Visit to the Prison</i>	<i>293</i>
<i>Chapter 35:</i>	<i>Fourth Visit to the Prison</i>	<i>299</i>
<i>Chapter 36:</i>	<i>Visit to the 6th Palace</i>	<i>310</i>
<i>Chapter 37:</i>	<i>Visit to the Prison of Kidney-Lopping</i>	<i>315</i>
<i>Chapter 38:</i>	<i>Visit to the Prison of Driver-Teaching</i>	<i>321</i>
<i>Chapter 39:</i>	<i>Visit to the Prison of Mouth-Pinching</i>	<i>326</i>
<i>Chapter 40:</i>	<i>Visit to the Prison with Barbed Nets</i>	<i>333</i>
<i>Chapter 41:</i>	<i>Visit to the Temple of the Tutelary Genius</i>	<i>338</i>
<i>Chapter 42:</i>	<i>Visit to the 7th Palace</i>	<i>349</i>
<i>Chapter 43:</i>	<i>Visit to the Hand-Roasting Prison</i>	<i>357</i>
<i>Chapter 44:</i>	<i>Visit to the Eviscerating Prison</i>	<i>363</i>
<i>Chapter 45:</i>	<i>Visit to the Prison of Stone-Load Carrying</i>	<i>370</i>
<i>Chapter 46:</i>	<i>Visit to the Prison with Cauldrons</i>	<i>377</i>
<i>Chapter 47:</i>	<i>Visit to the Prison of Tongue-Carving</i>	<i>388</i>
<i>Chapter 48:</i>	<i>Visit to the 8th Palace</i>	<i>395</i>
<i>Chapter 49:</i>	<i>Visit to the Prison with Crushing-Wheels</i>	<i>401</i>
<i>Chapter 50:</i>	<i>Visit to the Limb-Chopping Prison</i>	<i>405</i>
<i>Chapter 51:</i>	<i>Visit to the 9th Palace</i>	<i>409</i>
<i>Chapter 52:</i>	<i>Visit to the Prison with Vats of Bubbling Oil</i>	<i>417</i>
<i>Chapter 53:</i>	<i>Visit to the Prison with Biting Vipers</i>	<i>428</i>
<i>Chapter 54:</i>	<i>Visit to the Eternal Prison</i>	<i>431</i>
<i>Chapter 55:</i>	<i>Visit to the 10th Palace</i>	<i>437</i>

<i>Chapter 56: Visit to the Reincarnation Center</i>	442
<i>Chapter 57: Visit to the 10th Palace</i>	451
<i>Chapter 58: Visit to the 10th Palace</i>	457
<i>Chapter 59: Visit to the Popular Quarter of Hell</i>	466
<i>Chapter 60: Visit to the Center of Perfection</i>	473
<i>Chapter 61: Visit to the Lake of Polluted Blood</i>	480
<i>Celestial Edict</i>	487
<i>Postface by the Living Buddha Tse Kong</i>	490
<i>Conclusion—Words From Master Luong Si Hang—Vi Kien</i>	493
<i>Biography of Master Luong Si Hang—Vi Kien</i>	505

濟公活佛聖像

Phật Sóng Tế Công



臺中聖德堂恭奉

Buddha Tse Kong

Foreword

The English translation of Yang Ts'ien with Buddha Tse Kong in "Voyages To Hell" follows Chinese mythology. For those readers not familiar with Asia and the Far East, the different palaces relate to gates of hell representing many levels of torture to the physical body form.

The severity of sins and lack of merit play crucial roles in the numbers of gates and levels that the soul must enter to learn lessons through suffering and happiness in order to attain balance. The mode of transport to each palace or gate is via a lotus flower which represents purity.

"Voyages To Hell" is translated from the original Chinese spiritual document for readers to open their minds and try to understand many facets of truth.

The revelation of hell serves to awaken many other human beings who don't know the law of cause and effect. Man can avoid going to hell if he adopts the spiritual path toward self-perfection.

The Taiwanese use of mediums described in this book should not be confused with Vo-Vi. For further information about the original version of this book, please write to:

SHENG TE MAGAZINE ASSOCIATION

20 Ching Dao Rd, Section 4

Tai Chung, Taiwan R.O.C.

George Capps, Bangkok



Introduction

We acknowledge the fact that the present world of readers is being satiated with books and novels of all varieties, so much so that the publication of a new book may remain unnoticed if not preceded or followed by adequate publicity. This book “Voyages to Hell” is without publicity because it is essentially canonical. Canonical books need no publicity. The Bible needs none. Neither do Buddhist Holy Scriptures.

However, we think it advisable to forewarn the readers that all of the accounts that are narrated in this book are truthful. The places, personages, and witnesses that have contributed to its edition still exist, and are ready to give evidence as to the authenticity of the facts.

Man is naturally sinful and his current level of morality is too low. Thus, God ordered the Temple of the Sages in Tai Chu (Taiwan) to publish a book about hell to awaken mankind. The book reveals to mankind the pain and torment they will undergo in hell, should they not make an effort to regenerate during this life.

This book is not one of moral philosophy. We are presently being overwhelmed with the proliferation of books on ethics. It is not a book of superstition either. It dates from 1976 to 1978, and so, it is recent and verifiable.

The interviews Yang Ts’ien had with the Kings of the Palaces in hell, and with the sinful souls, were relayed to the Temple of the Sages. They were audibly and visually witnessed by a good number of disciples present. After some sixty voyages back and forth, the possibility of hallucination,

mirage, illusion, or vision is simply impossible. This book serves rather as an admonition to mankind.

It is the right of the reader to believe or not to believe in the authenticity of its stories. However, after reading it, one should admit to having been told and warned of how one should respond after one's death. At least, the reader will know that everyone of us, without exception, has committed or will commit one of the sins mentioned in it. He will know exactly which punishment will be reserved for him, if he fails to change his behavior immediately.

Some scientific readers usually requiring concrete proof before believing may reject the facts in the book as lacking solid and visible evidence. To such readers, we borrow the words of Buddha Tse Kong who said *"Our breath, the air, ours, our feelings are intangible; our viscera are not seen; but it suffices to say that should they cease existing or functioning, even for a minute, we would be no longer in this life."*

Finally, to those readers who may regard this book as more oriental than it is worldwide, may we say the following:

"Honestly, hell in this book is seen from an oriental view because God has chosen the Temple of the Sages in Taiwan as a place for propagation of religious faith. If God, Father of us all, contents Himself with punishing a certain number of His children while sparing an even larger number of others, and if hell is created to punish only a given group of human beings, we could say that God our Father is partial and unjust, and that the punishment of hell is virtually regional. But God is neither partial nor unjust. The punishment of hell is applicable to the whole mankind".

Words From Master Luong Si Hang–Vi Kien Before Reading “Voyages To Hell”

Dear Friends,

On the occasion of my visit, let’s search deeply for the spiritual path, which is hidden in the true consciousness of every person. Why do we need to search for spirituality?

Today, we have seen our sins clearly, and we clearly confirm that there are Immortals, Buddhas, Heaven, and the human world. There is a vast organization which nourishes us every day, every hour, and every minute. However, every person has a dark and treacherous character, and we need to counteract this fundamental nature by searching for a path to develop our consciousness and open our mind. We should march on the path of sincerity to return to our true selves. We will see our sins clearly, repent our mistakes and amend ourselves. We will comprehend the Truth from Heaven and Buddhas more clearly in order to return to our roots. We keep hearing the beautiful words of purity from the World Above, but we do not know the earthly world clearly. The impure world of hell is the place to guide our souls to progress, and we will see ourselves more easily.

Today, the World Above of Yin and Yang blesses us with their spiritual guidance and gives us complete learning materials. People are busy with their money issues, their rivalries, and their dishonest behavior. Because of their worries, they destroy the divine structure, which is their own body. They crawl into the confinement of money, rivalry,



and intransigence. As a result, they are angry, frustrated, and feel that they are falling behind. They say that they are cultivating themselves spiritually, but they are going nowhere. They are angry at their karma, but if they refuse to repent their mistakes and amend themselves, when will they be able to release their karma? We want to cultivate ourselves spiritually, we want to attain enlightenment, and we want to reach our goal at any cost, but we do not practice enough. I see that even though you have spent your efforts to practice, you are still partly busy with rivalry, intransigence, and money issues. Thus, you are losing the equilibrium of your inner consciousness, and you completely forget the original principle that God and Buddhas have bestowed upon us. This principle lacks nothing; it only waits for us to fulfill the evolution of our souls.

On the occasion of my visit, let's discuss and study together the book "Voyages To Hell" to understand its depth. Why does God create hell? Is this the last opportunity for the soul to awaken itself and return to itself? Let's find out who has created this book "Voyages To Hell". Why do the reports in this book bring us fear and contrition, unless we must have committed some sins too? Once we can see that this contrition is rippling through us and could guide our souls, and when we feel remorse and repent our mistakes, then we will have an opportunity for advancement.

Our consciousness will awaken when we listen to and perceive the truth within the truth in ourselves, and then we will fully dedicate ourselves to spiritual practice and advancement.

Now I will start my reading.

Celestial Edict

Mr. Kuoan, President of the Temple of the Sages ascends to the pulpit and declares:

The Saint-Messenger of God prescribed the following:

"According to God's Edict, the Genii of Communes within five miles around, and Genii of Graces within ten miles are ordered to gather here for its promulgation. All of the disciples must be prepared to respectfully attend this ceremony of promulgation".

The High Chamberlain of the Celestial Palace of God, through the intermediary of a medium, sent down this quatrain:

*The Immortals pray fervently in their celestial spheres,
Buddhas chant in choir to awaken the sufferers,
The Heavenly Emperor announced His Edict
in mid-autumn,
The August moonlight blesses the world of darkness.*

And the Saint-Messenger proclaims:

Down to this earth, I have the mission to bring this Edict of God which I dictate tonight in the following terms:

That all of the Genii and disciples humbly prostrate as a sign of reverence for the Celestial Edict that reads:

"From my palace in the Ethereal Heights, I observe the



world of human beings: Their moral conduct grieves Me greatly. Crimson desire and greed are spreading everywhere, piling up to heaven. Social ethics have been disintegrated: Men lose loyalty and filial piety, women lack chastity and fidelity. To them, elevation to the rank of Immortals and Buddhas is merely an illusion; deities are non-existent and so are saints. Morals are corrupt. Customs and tradition decline toward treachery. In social relationships, there is a total absence of any sense of honor and honesty.

All these indications are sickening, and I cannot remain unmoved without trying to salvage the souls in perdition.

It is time of rejoicing for Me, however, to notice that the Temple of the Sages in Tai Chu, Taiwan, dependent on the Celestial Southern Sector, has opened many schools to educate people and has conscientiously carried out the work of disseminating the Way and the Truth. Presently, it has contributed to editing the "Review of the Sages" whose goal is to awaken sinners from the Harbor of Illusions and give a beneficial impetus to mediumistic scriptures, and a resplendent glitter to the deeds of the Saints.

I especially order this Temple to begin the writing of an important book entitled "Voyages To Hell" and appoint the living Buddha Tse Kong to guide Yang Ts'ien – a narrator through mediumistic scriptures – to pay visits to the ten gates of hell. Upon his return from each trip, Yang Ts'ien will narrate in detail the horrible punishment inflicted on sinful souls.

In this way, human beings will be thoroughly aware of what is reserved for their sins after their death, and will know how to behave in their earthly life. Thus, our endeavors to educate them on the way of good will not be in vain.

Consequently, this piece of work will be an extraordinary book. It will be the product of the persevering, tenacious work of

the disciples of the Temple of the Sages to whom a mission of great magnitude has been entrusted. They must remain unshakable in their faith and take My place in the education of mankind.

Meanwhile, I give an order to the guardians of palaces in the World of Darkness to open wide their gates to welcome the young reporter on every one of his visits. They will cooperate with him by providing efficient assistance which will enable him to complete the reporting which will constitute a precious book.

Any opposition or disobedience to this Edict is subject to severe punishment.

From this day of promulgation of this Edict, a voyage to hell will be performed in each mediumistic session, and the sessions will not terminate before completion of the projected book.

You will do the work of God by carrying out this order, and you will be rewarded according to your merits on the day the book is completed.

I command respect for this. This is my order."

(O God, we obey Thee without negligence. We thank Thee for Thy grace).

Celestial Cycle, August 15th, 1976
Leap Year of the Dragon



The All-High Supreme Master of Chaotic Times—Primordial Venerated God

Communicates these rhymes in a mediumnistic session:

*Human existence, like time, is a dream and illusion
What a waste to cherish gold and covet silver,
Man's nature is buried in luxury and feminine beauty,
Anxious for gains and for glory, his mind is busy,
Immersed in the river of love, he can't raise his head.
By housing anger, man increases his karma and misery.
May he no longer live with his mistakes and his injustice,
May he change and follow the example of Kuan Yin.*

Prefaces the book:

In the nebulous time of creation, heaven and earth were not yet separated. The universe was under the same atmosphere, inhaling ether from infinity and moving freely.

At the moment heaven and earth developed, man was created by the original energy which emanated from the center of the universe.

In the earliest ages, man was endowed with a fine nature. After his death, he returned to his pure, simple origin.

Afterwards, the earthly desires piled up, destroyed his innate generosity and transformed it into wickedness. It was then God created hell as a place for mortification and punishment, and for the purification of souls.

Since man's original generosity decreased as he came into contact with increasing vices, and moral deterioration proved itself more and more alarming, hell has been overcrowded with sinful souls.

His Majesty the Celestial Emperor cannot be so heartless as to watch mankind sink further into the depths of evil. He therefore projects divine light, revealing to men the terrible chastisement and corporal punishment in hell, and warning them not to step on the track of overturned carriages, if they aspire to return to their pure origin and put an end to their sorrowful karma.

During the past years, the Temple of the Sages in Tai Chu, obeying the will of God, has not spared any pain in its efforts to reveal the Way and Truth, propagate faith and teach religious dogma to men.

By so doing, this Temple has proven a great adherence to its righteous and harmonious ideal. By virtue of its merits, it was entrusted with the mission of taking trips to hell and preparing reports which contributed to the writing of this book.

According to celestial instructions, the living Buddha Tse Kong was designated to accompany and guide Yang Ts'ien's soul on his visits to hell for acquiring information and proof.

The Cherub of God from the Great Nothingness of Nirvana was designated to lend his assistance in mediumistic scriptures, using his divine eye to record the images in hell. He helps transmit to the earth everything the emissaries of God had seen and heard.

It has taken the Temple two years of strenuous work



and great effort to complete this book. The persons who read it with diligence will feel an awakening of their conscience that will help them avoid evil, do good, and prepare themselves for the Way to Paradise.

If every human acts this way, hell will become a vacant place, and all mankind will return to Nirvana.

This book contains numerous testimonials concerning legislation carried out in both the terrestrial world and in hell. It constitutes a book of holy scriptures consecrated by deities and destined to contribute to the salvation of human beings. It is desirable that the readers altogether make translations of the book, and distribute it widely to educate people. Everyone of heart should recognize that this is a good thing to do and should respond positively to this appeal. The above words will suffice as a preface for the book.

Celestial cycle, April 13th, 1978

Year of the Horse (1978)

(Text received through mediumistic scriptures at the Temple of the Sages, Tai Chu, Taiwan, from the Primordial Venerated God.)

Words by Master Luong Si Hang–Vi Kien

The poem above has shown us the following:

"Human existence, like time, is a dream and an illusion."

In the blink of an eye, we were just a child, now our hair is white and our eyes are weak, time is fleeting...

"What a waste to cherish gold and covet silver."

We are greedy for gold, money, and all kinds of things, but eventually, we do not keep any.

"Man's nature is buried in luxury and feminine beauty."

Man is attracted daily by luxury and feminine beauty, and the agitation of the external world. He buries his nature of emptiness given by Heaven and Earth, and loses his serenity.

"Anxious for gains and for glory, his mind is busy."

His mind is busy with gains and glory, but he does not know who he is.

"Immersed in the river of love, he can't raise his head."

Immersed in the river of love, he keeps worrying about this person or that person. He is entangled in his romantic relations, and can't raise his head. He cannot develop himself, and does not make any progress on the spiritual path.

"By housing anger, man increases his karma and misery."

Like a home where fire burns, man is never at peace with his heart-karma. His mind is always agitated and never at peace.

"May he no longer live with his mistakes and his injustice."

We should not continue making mistakes.

"May he change and follow the example of Kuan Yin."

If we can correct and prevent our bad habits, we will become a Buddha on earth.



Preface

From the pulpit, Mr. Kouan, President of the Temple, prefaced the book as follows:

Our Temple was founded for the sake of expanding the basic religious doctrines, revealing the hidden words of oracles through mediumistic scriptures, and popularizing the sutras in view of teaching good to men.

In this field of activities, good results have been obtained. Many vicious passions have been destroyed, and society is vigilant against the corruption of morals and customs that could lead it to eternal damnation.

The past year was marked by the publication of many books encouraging men to turn toward good and to improve the quality of their hearts. It is sorrowful, however to remark that many people still do not try to improve. They continue to live an unruly life.

Profoundly stirred by such a state of things, the Celestial Emperor summoned a congress at his palace in the Ethereal Heights. It was unanimously decided to select an altar of oracles of genuine purity which had acquired close communion with the saints and immortals, as well as perfect harmony with men. It must have proven its versatility in spiritual invocations. Such a temple would be favorable for sending a disciple's soul to hell to write a book and reveal to men the realities of hell with a view to awakening and educating them.

It was fortunate that our Temple was chosen by

heaven, also a great honor to be entrusted with a mission of such magnitude.

At first I was very anxious because a trip to hell could not be compared to a practice of cult, mediumistic revelations, or distribution of religious doctrines. Had a failure in Yang Ts'ien's state of mind unhappily occurred while in full séance of spiritism, there could be grave errors. This was tantamount to treachery and annihilation of the Great Work that would horrify deities and men.

Nonetheless, as it was impossible for me to contravene God's order and in obedience to divine instructions as given on the lunar August 15th, 1976 (year of the Dragon), every disciple of the Temple received the Celestial Edict with reverence. They were gathered at every mediumistic séance, their heart and spirit in peace.

To prepare himself for the trips, Yang Ts'ien had to adopt the vegetarian regimen and observe all kinds of abstinence. When Buddha Tse Kong arrived, he led Yang's soul to visit hell and guided him in his observation. The Celestial Cherub, gifted with divine powers, relayed to earth the dialogue between Buddha and man, the conversation with hell's dignitaries, and used the mediumistic brush-pen to note the documentary facts for the book "Voyages To Hell".

After two years of very tiring work, a period of time necessary for visiting all of the 10 palaces of hell and writing the book, I now look back and feel extremely pleased at the completion of such an imposing piece of work.

Since the time our Temple worked for the revelation of mediumistic scriptures and propagation of religious doctrines, we have spent a great deal of time, but only now



can we manage to write this miraculous book whose contents are absolutely truthful. This is a precious book, very effective in encouraging men to do good.

As soon as the publication of this book has begun, a strong, dazzling light was projected from the darkness of hell, bringing forth salvation to all human beings under the ceiling of heaven.

Those who have the opportunity to read this book will be saved from the sea of sorrow, and will work for their elevation to paradise.

I write this preface.
With all my respects.

Kuan Hung,
President of the Temple of the Sages
Celestial Cycle, April 13th, 1978 (lunar)
Year of the Horse

Summary of Recommendations

*By the Office-Chief of the Celestial Royal
Palace named Lo, transmitted through
mediumnistic scriptures*

1. This book has been commissioned under the instructions of a celestial edict. Though simple and popular in form and style, it contains the whole of profound realities. It is a precious book for spiritual perfection, recognition of the Way and Truth, and for conversion of mankind.
2. If an absence of rhetoric is noticed in its usage and style, it should not be a reason for the reader to disparage it. The objective is dedicated to the fidelity of its description and the authenticity of its advents.
3. Its preparation has taken two years and cost the deities and men a great deal of effort and pain. It contains a series of revelations on the secrets of the kingdom of darkness and the laws and punishment being applied in it. It is such an unprecedented chance to have this treasure-book for perusal that men read it, cherish it, study it, and make a bible of it for their improvement.
4. The Three Councils in heaven, respectively in charge of celestial, terrestrial, and hell affairs have contributed to the preparation of the book. They want it to become popular and would rejoice greatly if many copies could be printed and offered free to the public.
5. Instructions from the Celestial Palace indicate that every

person who assists in any manner in the printing and distribution of this book free of charge for the salvation of human beings, will be granted a lesser sentence for their sins. If their merits are great, they will ascend to heaven and enjoy happiness in paradise.

6. Anyone who contributes voluntarily to the printing of this book and to its free distribution will have all his wishes granted as to longevity, honor and glory, prompt recovery from illnesses, grace for the damned souls of their ancestors, redemption for their proper sins, and finally a great deal of happiness. All this can be obtained by accomplishing these rites: Burn joss-sticks, bow and pray before the altar of the kitchen-god, before the altar of heaven set in the yard, or the altar of the saints and protector-genii in temples. These deities will send immediate reports to heaven, and all wishes will be granted. The manifestation of celestial will is doubtlessly positive
7. This book of divine law is under the protection of immortals and saints all over the universe. It must be preserved with care and stored in a safe place away from impurities after reading. Those who express scorn or contempt with regard to this book or try to stop its distribution will be sent forever to hell. Such a crime is unforgivable. May men return to the way of good, and may they study seriously these recommendations.

The Celestial Cherub Yu-Hiu

Transmitted this quatrain and preface:

*Heaven gives to man a precious book as a guide.
The horrors of hell are purely indescribable.
With repentance, there is no longer the road to hell,
In penitence, man may ascend to heaven. (1)*

Preface

An overabundance of material for enjoyment is available to man. He becomes aware of the alarming crisis which is arising from the lack of moral education and spiritual perfection. Crimes such as robbery, pillage, murder, trickery, and rape increase considerably.

In order to stop this increase of social evils and open the way to an ethical science that reeducates man, it is time to teach him the principle of cause and effect and the doctrine of retribution and sanction that govern all his actions, and make him aware of the immortality of his soul.

There are no doors where happiness or misfortune originates. Happiness or misfortune is the result of man's good or bad actions. If during his lifetime man creates a harmful karma through bad conduct, his soul, after his death, will suffer pain, condemnation, and successive reincarnation. This explains the reason for hell.

My breath being wholly purified, I have attained



enlightenment and have access to the celestial sphere. While the Temple of the Sages was tasked by Celestial Edict with writing the book “Voyages To Hell”, I was entrusted by the Celestial Emperor to be a seer and conveyer of truthful facts. I dared not disobey the divine order and quickly carried out my mission. In each mediumistic séance, on quiet nights, when Buddha Tse Kong descended from heaven to lead Yang Ts’ien’s soul to visit hell and interview the damned souls in jail, I made use of my divine power to relay to earth all of the sounds and live images they saw and heard in hell. Also, I entered the physical body of Yang Ts’ien and directed his hand to write what he saw. His accounts have helped to edit the book which serves as the awakening and education of man’s conscience. (2)

All of these facts were miraculous because there were in those moments many pious adepts who watched the phenomena. One and all, they approved and confirmed the real existence of deities in the world of heaven.

It is difficult for those who did not attend these mediumistic séances to form an idea of what they were like and believe them. For this reason human beings must believe that paradise and hell reside in their own hearts. If they lose their conscience, they will not have an opportunity to live in paradise. Their conscience will awaken some day, and will reproach them harshly, but too late, because they will already be in hell, a detention place for sinful souls.

It is erroneous for man to believe that his origin was from the earth. He is created by heaven. Paradise is his cradle, his native country. I do hope he will not swim adrift in the infiniteness of the cycle of transmigration.

The disgusting things I saw in the past two years have removed my desire for witnessing those horrible scenes in hell again. I hope that those who read this book will henceforth behave in all circumstances with a pure, unstained soul. By so doing, they will avoid hell, and at the same time console me of my pains.

At the Yu-Hiu Palace, April 13th, 1978 (lunar). Year of the Horse.



Words From Master Luong Si Hang—Vi Kien

(1) *“In penitence, man may ascend to heaven.”*

On earth, if as sinners, we know how to repent and amend ourselves, we will be able to release our heart-karma, and hell will no longer exist. We will elevate ourselves and ascend to heaven. Therefore, we should not hesitate to read and listen to the “Voyages To Hell”.

(2) We see that nowadays, television is also a means of conveying the truth. When we meditate with closed eyes, we project our energy, which can travel farther each day to communicate with the pure energy of the World Above.

People who travel with their souls in a transcendental séance also receive the pure energy from the World Above, and they will relate truthfully whatever they perceive to the world below. The medium will communicate the report. Today, in the civilized world, we have television, so we see clearly that this way of reporting has existed for a long time.



The soul has the ability to perceive and report back millions of years ago. This is a proof that the soul is eternal and can travel anywhere to collect all good and evil materials in the whole universe. This is not an illusion, but a truthful fact. There are people who can record events in their dreams and see that these family events would occur exactly like their dreams one week later. Thus, the ability to see and convey the truth, this method of recording, exists in the inner consciousness of every person.

Today, we meditate to perfect ourselves spiritually and when we listen to this section of the “Voyages To Hell”, we see that there are mystical aspects from God and Buddhas, which are hidden in our consciousness. Today, we utilize the exercises of “Concentration of Spiritual Energy” and “Cyclical Breathing Without Retention” to unblock our energy and to restore our equilibrium and ability to see and convey the truth within ourselves, so that we would perceive and awaken our true consciousness.

When you meditate and see light, a bright light, you would remember it all the time in your soul. This is your ability of seeing and conveying the truth. We all have this ability, but we are attracted by passions and deluded by our five senses, by beauty and desires. We have become more and more obscure, and cannot see this ability. We cannot see the magical ability that everyone possesses. We also have this ability, not Yang T’sien alone. If we devote ourselves to spiritual perfection, we will also arrive at the destination.

Chapter 1

Arrival upon Mount of Heart-Summit Visit to Hell's Grotto

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on August 16th, 1976, leap year of the Dragon,
gave this quatrain:**

*Paradise or Hell is within man's heart
Good or evil depends one one's self will
I, Tse Kong will accompany Yang T'sien tonight
On the lotus flower, we together depart.*

Buddha Tse Kong: Tell me, Yang T'sien you are going to take a trip with me to hell. How do you feel about that?

Yang T'sien: I thank Heaven and Buddhas for having granted me this opportunity to visit hell. I'm really delighted.

TK: The Temple of the Sages belongs to the Southern Sector of Celestial Kingdom. Its disciples should be devoted to cultivating virtues, saving those people drowning in perdition in the harbor of illusions, disseminating books and sutras for preaching good to fill the whole universe with a religious spirit. The Celestial Emperor has ordered that a narrative of the "Voyages To Hell" be published in a book. Since this is your first time to visit such an important place, you will relate in detail all that you have seen to help people understand clearly what hell is like. You can do this because

you will have known every road in hell. While you make use of your mediumistic brush-pen, I have taught you many things. A bond has therefore been created between master and disciple which is strong and lasting. Now, our Almighty Lord in the Heavenly Kingdom has arranged for us to visit the kingdom of darkness in order to write a book. It is a great joy for me, because this is a chance for us to express our ardent and sincere desire to awaken and educate people. Day by day, they will probably show improvement. Let's get going!

YT: Venerable master, I thank you for the teachings you've just given me. But I'm told that for a descent to hell, there must be a prodigy steed or a lotus flower. How could we get going? Do you mean we go on foot?

TK: Yang T'sien, how naïve of you! How can people go down to hell on foot? Do you suppose we'll have to walk on clouds or fly on smoke? In this society of advanced science, people travel by cars and other mechanized vehicles. Do you think we can depend on such means of transport? In reality, hell is without a door. Everyone has to enter by himself. To do otherwise is pure imagination. It requires patience and completion of the long path of regeneration before one can reach paradise.¹

1 Buddha Tse Kong's teachings are very appropriate. We see that in order to reach paradise, we must go through the path of spiritual perfection. However, to traverse the path of Tao, we must endure innumerable thorny obstacles and adversities. Thus, we must persevere in our endeavour, and not abandon halfway. (Master Luong Si Hang-Vi Kien)

YT: It seems to me you've been drinking tonight, Master.

TK: True! I've had some alcohol for I'm struck with fright at the moral conduct of human beings. Their morals and customs give me horror. To salvage them from loss is too difficult. An immense sadness invades my heart. I know you are fond of alcoholic beverages, too. A little inebriety would help us arrive in hell with lesser pain.

YT: I'm not used to drinking, as you know, Master. I pray you not to ridicule me!

TK: Oh, I see. Well, time is pressing. I'm going to have a flower of lotus appear, and we'll make a dais of it for our voyage.

YT: Your buddha dharma is really miraculous and boundless. No sooner said than done, a white lotus-flower is in sight. But my feet are not clean, I dare not step on this magnificent dais of lotus.

TK: Your heart as well as your speech are pure. That's enough. Even though, your feet may be dirty, it doesn't matter. There is a proverb about the lotus: "Growing in mud, but never get impregnated with the bad odor of mud".

YT: Since you permit me, I may now try to get on this flower of lotus. I'm settled, Master. Which direction are we going?

TK: Close your eyes. I'll show you. We'll arrive in no time.

YT: At your request.

TK: Now, you may open your eyes.

YT: Say, Master! What place is this? I see a high mountain and on the slope I read three golden words "Mount

of Heart-Summit” with glitter that dazzles my eyes.

TK: This mount is named “Heart-Summit”. On the top of it, is the door that leads to paradise. Looking down from the top, you’ll see a dark, bottomless grotto. It’s the grotto of hell. After his death, the soul of a man who has led an upright, honest life will come up to the top of the mountain and proceed to paradise. For those who did evil in their lives, when arriving at the top, they will be struck by vertigo, will lose consciousness and tumble down into the bottom of the grotto of hell. It is for this reason that the sages of old times have taught the following: “One’s heart is capable of creating paradise, or creating hell”.

YT: In other words, paradise and hell are the actual creation of man. This explains the existence of immortals and of demons as well.

TK: We don’t have much time left tonight. Let’s stop here and get ready for the return to the Temple. Get quickly on the dais of lotus.

YT: I’m seated, Master.

TK: Make sure your eyes are closed tightly. If you do open them, they can’t resist the winds that blast from the world of darkness.

YT: How true, how true! It’s blowing like a gale. I can hardly stand it.

TK: Here we are, at the Temple. Young man, just alight and your soul will be reinstated in your body.



Words From Master Luong Si Hang–Vi Kien

We have read the first chapter only, but we see that the esoteric science is very elaborate: Each motion, each pureness or each impurity, is clearly defined. Every little action shows us that what is pure is treated with ease, while the impure is always faced with difficulties.



Chapter 2

Visit to “Pure-Heart” Pond and the Frontier between Living and Dead Worlds

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on August 19th, 1976. Leap Year of the Dragon.**

*Man’s original state was a pure and precious pearl
Which now sinks into the muddy earthly world.
Know that his terrestrial body can return to Buddha’s²
And with wisdom eyes, he can rediscover his self.³*

Buddha Tse Kong: Young man, get yourself ready for another trip to hell.

Yang Ts’ien: I’m just back from my trip to the Tchang

2 When we use our terrestrial body to perfect ourselves spiritually, and we succeed to understand thoroughly and master our character and our thinking, we will transform into a Buddha’s body. It means to return to emptiness. To understand thoroughly and master ourselves is truly a return to emptiness. (Master Luong Si Hang–Vi Kien)

3 Even though we have an earthly body, when we cultivate ourselves spiritually and attain wisdom eyes, we have successfully understood and mastered our true consciousness. Where does the true consciousness reside? Our true consciousness is located at the top of the head, at the cranial psychic centre, and relates to all three spheres. Our true consciousness harmonizes with Buddha. (Master Luong Si Hang–Vi Kien)

Houa. I feel terribly weary, Master. All I need is a good nap. Can't we postpone that trip to another day?

TK: You, lazy boy! As a man of religious faith, you can't shrink from duty after enduring some hardship. How can you acquire great courage that way?

YT: I'm really wrong. I ask your forgiveness, Master. I'm ready for the trip.

TK: Ascend the lotus dais. Shut your eyes...Open them and alight.

YT: Master, why do you lead me to this place? I see before me a big limpid pond which is like a mirror reflecting the sky of an emerald blue. From the bottom of the pond, I see a sudden appearance of three words, "Pure Heart Pond".

TK: On our last visit to hell you couldn't see everything due to your earthly eyes and body. Today, I brought you here for the opportunity to bathe in this pond to eliminate all the dirty earthly desires. After this bath, your "carnal" eyes will become clairvoyant and you will be able to behold the scenery of hell.

YT: But, Master, I dare not plunge into it because it is now autumn and the water of the pond is extremely cold. It's too dangerous. I might catch a bad cold.

TK: What a strange idea! You want to visit hell but you are afraid of getting cold! Well, I'm going to push you in, and you are going to make a splendid dive!

YT: Help! Help! I can't swim. Have you the heart to drown me? Ah! ah! ah!

TK: I immerse you for a few minutes to make you more awake.

Up came the General Genius- Protector of the pond.

The General: May I extend to you my respectful greetings, Venerable Buddha Tse Kong. I have failed to

be polite by not having welcomed you decently. I humbly apologize, sir. May I ask why you pushed that young man into the pond?

TK: You don't know General? At this time the people on earth are living in the harbor of illusions and wrapping themselves in the obscurity of ignorance. They have buried their lucid souls of pre-reincarnation times. Today, I've just pushed this profane youth into the pond in order to wash away the impurities which obstruct his clairvoyance. His precious pearl will shine better again, so he will be able to see more clearly...

The General: That's very good! But...Please allow me to rescue him or he may drown.

TK: Yes, Make it quick! Otherwise, he will sink to the bottom of the pond.

The General: Here he is, up on the bank. He is breathless though. How will you revive him, Venerable Buddha?

TK: Don't worry. Now that he's cleansed of all mud stains, he's to be resuscitated. A simple blow of this rush-fan of mine will revive him. Look and see what I'm going to do.

The General: He's back to consciousness and opens his eyes.

YT: Master! Why did you push me into the pond?

TK: Earthly man is used to be passive and full of ornamental phrases. Well, your pearl is still a big mass which was not refined and polished. I cannot help bringing it out and cleansing it.

YT: I'm deeply grateful to you for the teachings you've just giving me. At present, I feel fit and well and my mind is pretty lucid. By the way, who is that gentleman in uniform of a general?

TK: He is the general in charge of guarding this pond. Strangers who do not have special authorization are not permitted to bathe in this pond. This expanse of water is also called “Pool of Fairies and Gods”. Only three categories of immortals are permitted to bathe in it. Profane folks are forbidden to come here. You should consider yourself to be very lucky today.

The General: Venerable Buddha, What noble intention induces you to bring this young man here?

TK: As the Temple of the Sages follows the celestial order to prepare a book entitled “Voyages To Hell”, I have the mission to guide Yang Ts’ien to the Kingdom of Darkness. If this young mortal still had his profane spirit, it would be difficult for him to see things clearly. That’s why I took him to this pond to wash his eyes so that he can make a more effective visit to hell.

The General: That’s what it’s all about! Wonderful, indeed.

TK: I say good bye to you, General! Our time for this visit is short. Yang Ts’ien, come to the lotus dais.

YT: Where are we going now, Master?

TK: No need to ask questions. You’ll know when we arrive. Quickly shut your eyes...Now open them. We have arrived. Get off the lotus.

YT: Why isn’t this road paved? The winds blow up clouds of dust that darken the sky. I’ve become blinded by them, and I trip every other pace.

TK: Here is the gate that separates the world of demons from that of men.

YT: Oh! From the far side, I see many people coming, crying and lamenting.



TK: They are the souls of dead men just arriving in hell.

YT: Venerable Master, ahead of us, I see a signboard with these words “Frontier Between The Living And The Dead”. What is this place?

TK: Well, it is the frontier of two worlds.

YT: I also see two large palaces. May we go and visit them, Master?

TK: Sure, sure. Let’s hurry.

YT: Above the doors of the two palaces, I read these inscriptions “Soul Reception Hall, Section 1, Section 2”. There are over ten rooms altogether.

TK: Let’s go inside.

The Mandarin in charge of soul reception:

Welcome to our palace, Venerable Buddha Tse Kong and Mr. Yang Ts’ien, the leading-scribe of the mediumistic altar oracles of the Temple of the Sages in Tai Chu. We are highly honored with your visit of which we were informed by the Celestial Edict on August 15th. We knew that the honorable emissaries would come to hell to collect information in order to write the book “Voyages To Hell”.

TK: We are rather late for our return to the Temple. With your permission, we shall come back for another visit.

The Mandarin: As you wish, gentlemen. Our respectful salutations.

TK: Yang Ts’ien, get ready for the return trip. Let’s leave this place and mount the lotus dais. Keep your eyes closed.

YT: Order executed, sir.

TK: Back we are. Yang Ts’ien, come down and let your soul be reinstated in your body.

Chapter 3

Promenade on the Frontier between the Worlds of The Living and The Dead—Visit to the Soul Registry Hall

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on August 20th, 1976. Leap Year of the Dragon.**

*No waves, no dust, calm and clear is Buddha's sea,
Turn within, search for the natural path to the Immortals,
Waves of sun and moon light synchronize in unison,
To free mankind from the six ways of transmigration.*

Buddha Tse Kong: Hey! Yang Ts'ien, my son. Get ready for another trip to hell!

Yang Ts'ien: At your request, sir. I'm on the lotus dais with my eyes shut.

TK: Here we go!...Fine, come down, son.

YT: There is a noisy group of people at the turning of the road. What are those men of the living world doing here?

TK: This is the frontier between the worlds of the living and the dead. That group of men is the souls of deceased people who just came down to hell. No more question! I'm going to take you to the Soul Reception Hall. You'll ask the Mandarin Chief any question you may have.

The Mandarin: Welcome, welcome! Venerable Buddha Tse Kong and Mr. Yang Ts'ien. Please come in to the Hall. Mr. Yang Ts'ien, may I ask what we can do for you?

YT: Would you mind telling me where the frontier between the two worlds lies?



The Mandarin: The frontier of the two worlds is the place where the two worlds of the living and the dead meet, but this is closer to hell. After their death, the humans, or rather their souls must come here to report to our Registry Office. After their registration, the good and virtuous souls are led by the Genius of Grace to visit the palaces of hell, whereas the wicked souls are escorted by the black-and-white-faced demons and handed over to the Mandarin of the Demon-Portico where they will be judged and punished by the First Tribunal.

YT: How many records are kept of the names and ages of the souls?

The Mandarin: Three registers. The first, called “Origin Register”, is kept for inscription of the origin of souls when in paradise. That is the time preceding their incarnation on earth. The second records the existences of the souls when they live on earth. It is called “Transience Register”, and the third, reserved for the souls when they come down to hell, is called “Portion Register”. Those who didn’t do any charitable work in their lifetime will have to come to hell. Their souls can’t rise to paradise. Hell is similar to jail in the human world. It’s a place for penance of sinful souls. It is not man’s paternal country. He can return to paradise, his ancient lodging and his genuine native country, only if in his lifetime he knows how to regenerate in the light of religious virtue.

YT: When a person died, it was a custom for the family to burn paper-money and light an oil lamp placed at the corpse’s feet, calling it the “lamp at the dead’s feet “. I wonder what their intention was.

The Mandarin: Upon a man’s dead, his soul is free from his carnal body. First, the soul is led by infernal guards because he is in a state of drowsiness. It is hard for him to control himself. For this reason, the relatives of the deceased

fear that the roads in hell are too dark for the soul. So they burn paper-money and light an oil lamp to provide the soul with pocket-money and light on dark paths. All of these efforts, derived from a good sense of filial piety, deserve credit. However, one should know that bribery and corruption are non-existent among the authorities of hell, and the verdict in hell is easy or severe depending on how the souls behaved in their lives. If they had a cruel heart when living, they cannot count on any action of their relatives to redeem their sins and insure their salvation.

YT: For the time being, the living standard on earth is improving because of the progress of science. Being eager to offer to their dead the modern commodities of life, people produce with paper and glue, imitation-gadgets such as color TVs, electric fans, automobiles, furniture, beds with soft mattresses, even tall buildings which they burn as offerings. I don't know if these will enrich the dead.

The Mandarin: In hell, there is no opportunity to drive cars, use electric fans, water beds or any other comforts. So there is no need for the relatives of the dead to attempt to provide those things.

YT: Gracious Master, the last time you took me to hell, I saw Mount of "Heart-Summit". I see today, at the same place, only the frontier between the worlds of men and of demons. I'm at a loss to know why.

TK: Follow me. You'll know why. Excellency, my disciple and I have to take leave of you.

The Mandarin: Excuse my shortcomings, if any.

TK: There is no need to be ceremonious, Excellency.

YT: I thank your Excellency for having taught me about the harbor of illusions. With your permission, I wish to say good bye. (To Tse Kong) Please, Master, I'm impatient to hear your explanation about the Mount of Heart-Summit,



and the two-world frontier.

TK: All right. I did take you to this place the last time, didn't I? Now look!

YT: Grace! I see again the characters "Mount of Heart-Summit" reappear in streaming light, while the scenery of the frontier vanishes.

TK: Well, the Mount and the frontier are one. The people who were evil doers in their life have their souls escorted to this place by infernal guards. Because of the impurity of their souls, they are dazzled by the blinding light on the top of the mountain, and can hardly open their eyes. They fall to their knees and drop down into the grotto on the slope of the mountain. This grotto communicates with the frontier, and with hell. On the contrary, the soul of a religious man with great virtues who accumulated merits in his life will see this magnificent light appear on the top of the mountain which directs him to paradise. He will be welcomed by angels and fairies at the Gate of Heaven. As for the people of medium or little merit, their souls will be led on an eight-meter-wide road by the Genius of Grace to the frontier of two worlds to report their arrival. The genius will then take them to hell and hand them over to the king of hell for investigation. If they acquired good merits in their life, they will be sent to the bureau of "acquiring good deeds". In case they have the opportunity to have the protection from immortals and buddhas, they will be admitted to a higher astral plane for continuing to evolve in their improvement and self-perfection. It's quite late, I believe. Let's get going.

YT: I'm settled, Master.

TK: Here we are. Get down from the lotus dais and regain your body, my boy.

Chapter 4

Passing the Portico of Demons—Listening to the Original Dharma of All Religions

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on August 26th, 1976. Leap Year of the Dragon.**

*The Immortal's heart is filled with noble feelings
And captivated by celestial bliss while meditating,
Impassive, regardless of light clothes and cold winds,
He is warmed by his compassion for living beings.*

Buddha Tse Kong: Be ready for a new visit to hell.
Come quickly on the dais.

Yang Ts'ien: Yes, Master. I'm ready.

TK: Here we go. Alight.

YT: There stands before us a fortress whose gate is engraved with the words "Portico of Demons". We are now at the entrance to the land of demons. But why isn't the gate of the fortress open? I hear clanking of weapons and tools from inside.

TK: Ordinarily, the Portico of Demons is not open. The human souls come through it by themselves. Now, with this rush fan of mine, I'll give a blow and it will automatically open.

YT: Marvelous! Hardly did you agitate your fan, and here it is, widely opened. But how could a man who just died make it open, if he doesn't have a Buddha's fan?

TK: When a man with a demon's predestination come



here at the end of his life, the gate opens by itself to make way for him. As a rule, the gate of the demons' world opens as soon as the one of the living is close. Such is the miraculous effect of interaction between the Yin and the Yang. Come along quickly. I'll show you this place. Don't indulge in vain reflections.

YT: Yes, Master. But...on this side of the Portico, why is there such a throng of people, just like a swap meet! Where are they going, all these people?

TK: They are condemned souls who will receive their sentence at the ten palaces of hell. The infernal guards are going to escort them to penitence jails. Let's not be lagging because of them. Follow me!

YT: Yes, Master. This road is so full of holes and obstacles. Where does it lead to, eventually?

TK: Just walk for a couple of miles and you'll see, my son.

YT: Ahead of us, I see a man escorted by infernal guards. What could he have done?

TK: That man in his life was a well-versed religious man of a sect of spiritism. Because he did not have an exact conception of truth, he blasphemed the other religions. After his death, he is subject to punishment in hell.

YT: I also see a tall building with a panel on its front saying: "All religions to return to the same source". Where are we, Master?

TK: For the time being, as far as religion is concerned, thousands and thousands of institutions and denominations have been created and grown just like mushrooms. Their followers, who don't know exactly where the Truth lies, allow

themselves to utter scathing and violent criticism against other religions, thus destroying the significance of the Tao. They infringe upon the law of God and commit the so-called “Karma of Speech”. For the sake of their rehabilitation, after their death, they must attend a course called: “All religions to return to the same source”. Look there! The priest-instructors are coming. Yang Ts’ien, kneel down for salutations.

YT: (saluting). I offer my respects, sirs.

The Pontiff–Priest: Welcome to you, distinguished visitors, Venerable Buddha Tse Kong and Saint-Scribe Yang Ts’ien. You are from the Temple of the Sages, as I can see. We have just received God’s order to give you a decent reception. (To Yang Ts’ien) Young man, I free you from polite obligations. Be on your feet.

TK: I bring young Yang Ts’ien here today so that you can take him for a visit to different places and give him necessary explanations.

Pontiff–Priest: Please come into the hall. Take a seat.

YT: “All religions to return to the same source”. That’s quite meaningful. But I still can’t catch the real meaning of this phrase. May I get some ideas from you, Venerable Pontiff-Priest?

P.P.: In today’s world, there exist five great religions: Confucianism, Taoism, Buddhism, Christianity, and Islamism. One can say they are the main religions of higher reputation. All of them, however, had their origin in the same Tao. In the remotest ages, the term “religion” did not exist. Later, God sent down to the earth many sages and philosophers who dispersed to different countries and, in the name of God, taught men the dogmas and religious thoughts,



and the practice of the Tao according to celestial norms.

Humanity was the primitive tributary of a single religion that suffered no separatism. Unfortunately, once the apostles returned to heaven, their disciples, who misunderstood the meaning of Tao, were divided into different denominations, some in opposition to the others. They failed to know that “hundreds of rivers flow into the same ocean” and that “all doors make part of the same house”. Thence were born unending quarrels and disputes that could not come to mutual agreement. They founded their respective schools of religious thought which they believe were higher than those of other religions. When they died, their souls could not escape from their destiny, and here, in hell they descended.

Anxious about such a degeneration of mankind, the Celestial Emperor founded this temple baptized as “All religions to return to the same source” in order to reeducate those religious people who got lost in darkness, and to help them discover the Truth. After adequate learning, they will accede to a higher plane of evolution.

TK: You are absolutely right, Pontiff-Priest. But I presume Yang Ts'ien still hasn't grasped all the subtleties of the matter. Will you teach him on the spot? As a proverb put it, “A hundred things heard of are not equal to one thing seen”.

P.P.: That's a good idea. Now, if you follow me.

YT: This hall must cover a surface of several acres. Its interior looks like a large amphitheatre. Tens of thousands of persons are seated on the flights of steps. Among them are many notables and dignitaries of religions from all nations.

They all seem ready to hear the sermon.

P.P.: Exactly! They are here just to hear the sermon. Please get seated on the foremost rush mat reserved for distinguished visitors and listeners.

TK: This auditorium is incredibly large, indeed. There isn't any of equal capacity in the human world. These words are written on the blackboard: "All religions to return to the same source". I see a professor with a close-shaven head who is stepping up onto the platform. He has the appearance of a Bhikshu (mendicant-priest). Everyone stands up to salute him, then sits down again.

The Professor: Gentlemen, I have the honor to present to you Mr. Yang Ts'ien from the Temple of the Sages, in the living world, who is here to join us in this conference. Let's welcome him with applause.

YT: Please, Master, these dignitaries are people of different races. How can they understand a sermon given in Chinese?

TK: Though the people in the vast world speak a multitude of languages, all have one aim in common—that is the development of the mind and advancement of the spirit. Because of this, the soul, after death, knows no language difference or discrimination. For instance, when a peal of thunder is rumbling, peoples from all nations know that it is going to rain. Today, by hearing the professor's voice, one can sense the meaning of what he is saying. This is exactly what Buddha did when his voice was raised at the conference, and the significance of his doctrine was understood by people throughout the world. No more questions now. Listen to

what the professor says. ⁴

The Professor: Although belonging to various races, men are endowed with a common character that proceeds from reason. When alive, they may adopt various modes of life and different standards of living, but after their death, they come to the same place. They have different skin colors, but one and all, they know to eat food when hunger makes itself felt, and to sleep when night comes. They are all under the protection of heaven and earth. The sun and the moon

4 Many people who read “Voyages To Hell” or “Voyages To Heaven” wonder: “Why do these spirits only wear fairies’ dresses or Chinese dresses, and not occidental dresses?” What do people realize when they succeed to travel by their soul through spiritual practice? What is light is ascending to the higher sphere, while what is heavy is staying in the impure sphere. Therefore, the light part wears leisurely clothes, lightweight clothes and not some heavy clothes like the western ones or the heavy ones found on earth. But whether they are Occidental, Chinese, Vietnamese, or American, man has the same consciousness. As we all live with the same consciousness, we should develop knowledge and understanding, and do positive work.

Many people scorn: “Oh, this is a chinese book, not an occidental one.” This is a big mistake and lack of understanding. When we practice the Vo-Vi Method of Esoteric Science of Non-Being and Dharma of Buddha, we are able to perceive the flux of energy and we understand that there is neither sight nor form. Thus, there is only oneness, and neither Occidental nor Vietnamese. We only have a consciousness that needs to evolve further. (Master Luong Si Hang–Vi Kien)

shed equal rays of light on them, and the dharma shower is abundantly available to all. Unfortunately, though they possess the same heart, diversity in faith and religion causes them to disparage and criticize each other. They believe that only their religion can elevate the converts to paradise, while the others send their converts to hell. They transform paradise with such limpid sources and such an atmosphere of liberty and euphoria – into a purple and golden tower of their own, ballooning in space. They then lock themselves up in a cage suspended in the air. Viewing themselves as noble and incomparable, they enrapture in joy, and in imitation of birds, they set to sing foolishly. Their tower, thus constructed, constitutes nothing but a kind of hell in the bosom of paradise. Those people are nothing but black sheep waiting for salvation. They are sinners awaiting their verdict. This is the reason why all of you pretended, when in life, to rise to paradise, but you have now fallen here in hell.

With a variety of skin colors, men can be black, white or yellow. The clothes they wear can be printed with red, yellow, or blue flowers. But their hearts, since birth, are not dyed any color. If they nurture a spirit of disparagement, they are deprived of that common heart dedicated to the religious way. There will be no sense in such words as mercy, and brotherhood, and the life they are preaching.

Since the dawn of time, the sun and the moon have shone indifferently upon human beings, the good as well as bad, without any sign of separatism. Due to this, the sun and the moon will radiate forever, leaving a soft fragrance until eternity.

Gentlemen, you have to awaken your conscience and illuminate your “self”. Abstain from hatred and hostility, for we are now in an era of vulgarization of this principle:”All religions to return to the same source”. What we are to do is this: Unite our hearts, treat each other humanely, develop mutual assistance, be kind to everyone. The doors of all religions should open widely to attract all those who deserve salvation, even if they are not disciples of the same apostle. The prayers of our hearts should aim at the same path of redemption. It is hopeful that some day, all of mankind will converge toward the Celestial Way, transforming this “vulgar world” into an essence of the country of lotus.

Through their priesthood the apostles, priests, pastors and monks can only salvage the hearts and souls of their believers. By no means can they rescue the latter’s carnal bodies. Only by discovering the genuine nature of his heart can man escape from his “self” and live a free, eternal life. Once these conditions are fulfilled, universal accord will prevail over the world. Each person will become a Buddha, a demi-god, and all of them will be deities in heaven. Any betrayal to these laws will engender a return to the cycle of transmigration.

TK: Well, I think time’s up (turning to the Pontiff-Priest for taking leave). We hope to have an opportunity to meet you again. Yang Ts’ien, be on your knees and give our thanks to our host.

YT: Venerable priest, we certainly fail to practice good manners by retiring while in full session of the conference. We must be returning to the Temple. We beg your forgiveness.

P.P.: It doesn't matter. I will walk with you part of the way.

TK: Yang Ts'ien, come quickly to the dais. Now, tell me, what is your impression about that séance of the conference?

YT: The professor gave extremely clear explanations on the Tao and its reason for existence. These days, the religions are throwing criticism at each other and boasting the groundwork of their own. They act the way fruit vendors do when selling their melons, pretending that only theirs are sweet. To believe them, the buyers have to test the flavor of the fruit by tasting it, just as a drinker does, to know whether a beverage is hot or cold. This natural sensation is real, because it is innate, and the consumer alone is capable of giving an exact idea as to the quality of the merchandise. I believe it is the only way to prove one's objectivity and accuracy in judgement and appreciation.

TK: The greater part of human beings is obstinate and short-sighted. Ascension to heaven is therefore impossible for them. The Buddhas, Immortals and Sages have, in the name of heaven, given precious teachings to them.

The proper sense of the Tao is its fundamental impartiality. I take you as a typical example. Suppose you are incarnated in some country other than this, do you think while adopting the religion of that country, you won't receive my benediction and salvation? Well, if I acted that way, I wouldn't deserve my name of a Buddha, and the trips we are taking now would be nothing but "the enterprise of a miniature religion" carried out for personal reasons. I hope all people will display a fair heart and reject their egoistic "self".

Otherwise, their paradise would measure five yards wide and wouldn't have enough room for welcoming the whole mass of creatures. Here is the Temple! Yang Ts'ien, come down from the lotus dais and get incorporated in your carnal body.



Words From Master Luong Si Hang—Vi Kien

When we read this passage, we clearly see how all return to oneness. If we still hold to sights and forms, we can never achieve oneness. If we still cling to an organization, we cannot achieve oneness. We should open our consciousness of harmony and contribute for the benefit of all. By its nature, money is impermanent. Sometimes, it is ill-gotten and in certain hands, it is ill-spent. Therefore, if we have money, we should use it for constructive spiritual work. This would mean also that we shall return to Heaven what belongs to Heaven.

Only if we do not think of and are not obsessed with money, will we be able to return to oneness. Our hearts will not harbour partisanship; we are neither moved by blame nor praise. We are determined and steadfast in our spiritual cultivation and voluntary contributions. We must remain resolute and unmovable to be true spiritual adepts. Those who are still stingy and calculating are not truly devoted to spiritual cultivation. As you have heard, we clearly created our own obstacles.

Let's develop our Tao-heart! We should advance and

continue our learning. We learn within suffering and develop ourselves according to the awakening of our hearts. Only then will we become enlightened.

This book “Voyages To Hell” is full of spiritual meaning. It shows the path for spiritual adepts and helps them reach self-awakening, so that they can clearly see their own mistakes. They will understand that God holds the final and sublime power, not earthly human beings.



Chapter 5

Arrival in the First Palace of Hell Discussion with the King of the Palace

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on August 29th, 1976. Leap Year of the Dragon.**

*The spiritual man disengages himself from desires
In one existence, he may detach from fame and position
By directing himself toward spiritual perfection
Leisurely, the ascetic reaches enlightenment.*

Buddha Tse Kong: Let's prepare for another trip to hell. Say, Yang Ts'ien, you seem out of sorts today. What's amiss?

Yang Ts'ien: Venerable Master, I have some personal affairs that leave me pensive. My mind is sort of troubled and my thoughts are scattered.

TK: Voyages to hell are not child's play. If your spirit isn't pacified, your soul enters hell with difficulty. Now, if we don't go today, the writing of our book is delayed. I give you this soothing tablet. Take it, and be ready for the trip.

YT: I appreciate it, Master. I've taken it, and feel much better. All worries are gone, for good.

TK: Come quickly on the dais. Here we go!...Here we are.

YT: What is this place, Master? I see a big palace and an animated group of people which is quite a mess.

TK: This is the First Palace of hell. We're going to

meet the King of the Palace.

The King : Really delighted to meet you, Buddha Tse Kong and saint-scribe Yang Ts'ien of the Temple of the Sages.

YT: Please accept my most respectful greetings, Your Majesty. Today, I accompany my master, Buddha Tse Kong, to your palace, and we will disturb you greatly. I count on your kindness for my disturbing you.

The King: Not too much civility, Mr. Yang Ts'ien, Now, if you don't mind following me into the palace. Please, take a seat in the reception hall. General, would you mind serving some gods and fairies' tea?

The General: At your request, sir.

The King: Help yourself for some tea, Buddha Tse Kong and Mr. Yang Ts'ien.

TK: Hey! Yang Ts'ien, you act a bit faltering. Drink that tea! Nothing to worry about.

YT: I just dare not, sir. I'm told that humans can't return to the world of the living, if they eat or drink something from hell. I wish His Majesty and you to have it.

The King: You're mistaken, Mr. Yang Ts'ien. Many rumors have it that one should not eat any foodstuffs in hell. This is truth for humans in general. The world of the dead and that of the living have their own Lord. Their laws and regulations should by no means be trespassed. But you, Mr. Yang Ts'ien, appertain to the class of living people who come down here by order of God, and you are my guest of honor. Besides, you have the presence of Buddha Tse Kong who led you to my palace. Do you think he can't do anything to restore you to the human world?

TK: Set your mind at ease, Yang Ts'ien. You are the bearer of the Celestial Edict. I should wonder if any devil has the temerity of obstructing your way home. Should such an



incident occur, the troublemaker will be chastised properly. Have no fear, son. Drink all you like.

The King: Humans have a thirst for living and an apprehension of death. The attitude of Mr. Yang Ts'ien who did not dare drink the tea is understandable and quite natural. But we should say that among the mortals of the living world, there exists a category of men who do know their bad actions and infamous misdeeds will necessary lead them to death, but they still refuse to walk on the right path. They continue to rush headlong forward, and precipitate in their tombs. How really pitiful!

YT: I have drunk my tea. It quenches my thirst, indeed. Now, please sir, outdoors, I see many persons approaching in line. May I ask you the reason for their coming?

The King: The reason is this. I am in charge of the first palace. After their death, humans have to come first to the Service of Public Relations, at the frontier of the two worlds, for declaration. After that, the infernal guards escort them to my place. Those concerned and their curriculum-vitae will be sent to the court of hell for me to examine them closely, and separate the good from bad elements.

Those who did good acts will be led to different palaces for a visit and observation. Others who benefit from protection of gracious-geniuses are permitted to accede to a higher astral plane so they can continue to regenerate. In some cases, they are led to the Service of Retribution for Good Actions, or to the Center of Perfection. On the other hand, the ones who committed too many sins are escorted to the second palace, or to the service of registry of sins committed. If their sins are too serious, they will be sent first to the Memory Hall where the "Mirror Revelator of Past Crimes" will reflect their images in flawless precision, making them

bow their heads and confess their crimes. Then they will be led back to the second palace.

YT: Incessant cries and moanings are heard from outside, mournful and heart-rending. Why should all those people, young and old, big and small, be that miserable?

The King: Well, these souls realize they have left the living world only upon their arrival in my palace. In their lifetime, they believe neither in the existence of genii and demons, nor in the law of cause and effect with its retributions and sanctions. Upon their arrival here, they understand that everything is not annihilated after their death.

A commandment has stipulated as follows: *“A fine morning is enough to change the multitude of things to a nought, and the seeds of evil alone will pursue one on the road to hell”*. The sinful souls now know they will be judged by the laws of hell and will have to endure punishment. A large number of them, with chilled hearts and trembling limbs, are crying bitterly, meanwhile inquiring about their fate. Back on earth, they have left all their estates, riches, beautiful wives, wise children, storied houses, precious gems, gold and silver. Also they have cut short all that is love, affection, and passion. At present, nothing is left for them, except for a forlorn soul on the River Styx. Every moment reminds them of their past, they can hardly contain bitter tears.

YT: Can you tell me, sir, why those infernal guards show little respect toward those souls? They strike them fiercely with weapons and whips, which make them cry out and sob like winter cicadas. It’s really deplorable!

The King: These souls are immortal elements on earth. They don’t deserve any respect from the infernal guards who mistreat them to the extent of their sins. You might well say it: “Someday, the wicked is castigated by



another wicked". How could such people as speculators, profiteers or swindlers, hope to be succoured by the deities? On the other hand, if they knew how to sympathize with the miseries of their fellow men and gave them some relief, they are certainly admired now by the infernal guards. The latter would treat them with deference and consideration. It is therefore useless to plead for the souls' cause.

YT: If people fail to cultivate their hearts and conduct while in life, they are extremely pitiable when in death. Had the descendants of the dead known that their fathers would be ranked among culpables, despised and beaten by the infernal guards, they would feel deeply pained. The only way to express our gratitude to our ancestors is to engage in the religious way and to do works of charity. Through our merits and virtues, we shall deliver our ancestors from suffering.

TK: If humans fail to maintain order and discipline within their families and act mischievously, their ancestors are jointly responsible for their misdeeds. Thence, this saying: *"Nine successive generations, seven ancestors of the same blood support mutually the consequences of the cause and effect cycle"*. This is the reason for one to watch prudently over one's deeds. Well, it's time for us to depart.

The King: Bon voyage, gentlemen.

TK: Yang Ts'ien, be seated on the dais... We are back. Dismiss and reintegrate into your body.

Chapter 6

Visit to the Memory Hall with the Mirror Revelator of Past Crimes Where Sinful Souls Reappear in their Earthly Forms

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on the 6th day of the second 8th lunar month, 1976.
Leap Year of the Dragon.**

*Facing the Mirror, the soul is exposed to truth
These irrefutable proofs are condensed and profound
Laws in hell are impartial and judgements are fair
Toward sinful persons that cannot be spared.*

Buddha Tse Kong: It's time for us to depart for hell.
Are you ready, Yang Ts'ien?

Yang Ts'ien: I am ready, Master. Let's set off...

TK: We have arrived. Let's get down.

YT: May I ask you what place this is? Why is that crowd over there being led up to that high platform by the guards of hell?

TK: This is the Memory Hall with the Mirror Revelator of Past Crimes. These are the souls of a group of people who didn't submit to moral laws. They gave themselves up to vices, and committed dishonest acts in their life on earth. At present, they become culpable demons who must come to the First Palace for declaration formalities. Then they are led to the magic mirror. Here, they witness the projection of living images relevant to the crimes they

committed in their lifetime. Once their sins are exposed, they can't go beyond the penal code of hell. Nearly all of the demon-souls tremble to the depth of their hearts when being led to this platform, because their unveiled vices could be a laughingstock for all the attendants. Let's follow them onto the platform.

YT: Yes, let's observe the situation more closely.

The General (in charge of guarding the Memory Hall): You are welcome, living Buddha Tse Kong and Mr. Yang Ts'ien of the Temple of the Sages in Tai Chu.

TK: Our greetings, General. Obeying the order of the Celestial Emperor, we pay successive visits to hell for the preparation of a book. Today, we visit your Memory Hall. I would appreciate your permission to let Yang Ts'ien have a close look at the Mirror.

YT: Dear Master, please accompany me. I don't feel comfortable with all those strangers in an odd place like this.

TK: All right. Let's follow the General up to the platform. We stay on this side to watch better.

YT: Look there! An old man is being dragged to the mirror by the infernal guards. My! The old man suddenly transformed into a youth who, in the middle of the night, scales the wall and breaks into the house of someone.

He is bending his back...pulling the bolt of the window. Now, he jumps into the room of an elderly couple. They are sleeping soundly. The young man is a professional burglar, experienced in opening locks. While he is busy looking for something, the husband suddenly awakens. Seized by terror, he screams out. The burglar unsheathes his dagger, springs upon the victim and stabs him. Oh dear! Red

blood is gushing out in streams. I dare not look at the scene!

The General: Take it easy, Mr. Yang Ts'ien. These are only visual images as the Mirror reflects a wicked karma. When this old man was a youth, he scaled the wall and broke into a house for burglary. Being caught in his act, he took out his jackknife, thrust it in the victim's body and killed him. Now, he must look at himself in the mirror which faithfully reflects all of his actions relating to his crime.

YT: I wonder how the mirror could be made. It's simply miraculous!

TK: This mirror is made by the synthesis of the two divine forces of heaven and earth called "Ch'i". When the criminal's soul stands before it, his real nature is completely unveiled. In reality, this mirror isn't extraordinary nor is it miraculous. We should know that throughout a lifetime, from childhood to adolescence, a person creates a lot of bad karmas which stack up from day to day. The mind makes them conscious of all their deeds. Look, our conscience is similar to a camera which imprints our every act on film. That's the mirror of the conscience. We may possibly ignore some immoral act an individual is doing in the dark. But it is certain that the guilty one must have consulted his conscience many times, weighing the pro's and con's with care. He has therefore obeyed the dictates of his conscience. In this way, his subconsciousness tacitly records every single one of his acts, whether important or not. The Mirror Revelator of Past Crimes is made up of a combination of the two polar principles, Yin and Yang. These vital forces, when meeting the soul and astral body of a man, produce the crossing of two magnetic currents which enable the mirror

to reflect accurately all the registered images of his existence. Consequently, no one is allowed to conceal even what he considers the most profound thought or most secret action of his life. When standing in front of the mirror, every act of wickedness is laid open. *"All precepts of morality stem up from the heart"* as the Buddhist scriptures relate. This truth also lies in the above principles.

YT: Now, I understand. If I am not mistaken, this mirror has no effect on virtuous men.

The General: The souls of honest people do not have to stand before the mirror. Don't you see that inscription: *"No honest souls on the platform of the Mirror Revelator"*? After his death, the honest man's soul is translucent before the mirror. An immaculate white prevails in it, in a way a film is fogged by a flash of light. He sees nothing of his genuine nature, because his heart is hiding no dark thoughts and memory. His aureola is more brilliant as his merits are more numerous. His soul will either rise straight to paradise or will be sent to the palaces of hell for a special investigation of his merits and his wrongs, if any. This is why he doesn't have to come here. The Mirror Revelator of Past Crimes is also called "Mirror of Karma". Every time a man creates a bad karma, he sees it appear in the mirror. Mr. Yang Ts'ien, would you like to have another look?

YT: I certainly would. Now, I see a girl being escorted by the guards to the platform. Seized by a great panic, she refuses to move forward; she groans and writhes terribly. Her situation is really sorrowful. Far from handling gently so fragile a creature as they should do a blossom or a pearl, the infernal guards shove her savagely ahead with their harpoons,

just as if they would treat one deserving blame. Also, I see over there, at some distance, a house where many men come in and out. It is decorated with rosy paper-lanterns, and its door is painted green, the perfect description of a brothel in the terrestrial world.

The General: That's just it. Observe it attentively.

YT: Inside, in the various rooms, young girls are seen entertaining their clients, chuckling, gossiping, their voices resounding like the chirpings of orioles and swallows. This is really a bewitching den that drowns men in an ecstatic delight. I just can't watch all this any longer. How about going home, Gracious Master?

TK: If you feel uneasy at that sight, it is because you are endowed with great virtues such as respect for rites, sense of duty, integrity, purity and fear of disgrace. Really, you shouldn't be ashamed of being my favorite disciple. Now, that girl was a prostitute who dealt in the business of the flesh. She charmed the male sex for the sake of taking their money. With boorish speech and dark thoughts, she destroyed her femininity. Her sins were grave. Attacked by venereal diseases, she died a premature death. Now that her soul comes to hell, it is impossible for her to avoid punishment.

I advise women on earth to respect and take care of their bodies. They should not allow themselves to fall in perdition by selling their chastity, using their jade-like arms for pillows for the heads of numberless ruffians who scorn and insult them. They will commit many sins, simply to satisfy their greed for money. The men who are passionately fond of unhealthy diversions are also considered lascivious. It is hopeful they will change.



YT: We must go now.

The General: It's too bad you can't stay a little while longer.

YT: I have learned how efficiently this Mirror Revelator of Past Crimes works. Now, I dare not watch it any longer. The vices of sinful souls are neatly unveiled in it, and as a profane fellow from the living world, I shouldn't stay longer, for fear of worsening their shame. I ask to take leave.

TK: General, we greatly appreciate your information. Now, we have to return to the Temple. Another time, we will visit the "Center for Complementary Teaching of Canonical Scriptures". Yang T'sien, the dais is this way.

YT: It was a dreadful scene, Master. It made my flesh creep.

TK: Dreadful, did you say? Well, just try to behave correctly, and you won't have to come here with a hideous face. Here we are! Get down from the lotus dais quickly and let your soul be reincorporated in your body.



Words From Master Luong Si Hang-Vi Kien

We see that the more we cultivate ourselves spiritually, the more we see our bad habits. We do not wait to be at the platform of the "Revelatory Mirror of Past Crimes" to see our bad character. When you practice the Vo-Vi Method of Esoteric Science of Non-Being and Dharma of Buddha, you clearly see your bad characters: Envy, hatred, rivalry, harming others and all kinds of things in your deep consciousness. We

must meditate to see our sins. The more we see our sins, the more felicity we will achieve, as we will refuse to repeat them and commit new ones.

This meditation method helps you see how you look at yourselves, how you despise yourselves, how you clearly are a sinful soul on the path of regeneration, and how you are the greatest sinner on earth. Now you must repent and amend yourselves. You must spend efforts to cultivate yourselves spiritually and progress in order to liberate yourselves, and you do not need anyone to praise you. Our actions demonstrate our virtue to everyone and we should develop our consciousness of harmony in all spheres. You have a ready weapon, the silent mental invocation of Nam-Mo-A-Di-Da-Phat, to open the consciousness of harmony. The more we harmonize, the more we clearly see our errors. On the other hand, if we tightly enclose ourselves and nurture our bad characters of hatred, envy, and unfairness toward others, we will become even more intolerant.

The book “Voyages To Hell” explains in a clear and orderly manner for us to understand, to learn, and to practice. When we practice the Vo-Vi method, we will see more clearly our foolish characters in many lifetimes, and not only just in this existence. To see your current existence is very easy, but there were many existences during which you committed wicked acts. You will see how these unrighteous acts reappear in your consciousness, how you still repeat these wrongdoings, and how they push you to return to the old path of evil.

Why do you often lament that even though you are perfecting yourselves spiritually, you still have an earthly

character and you are still agitated? The bad karma from previous existences rushes in waves, it comes to your boat to capsize it, and if you do not have a steady faith and refuse to go forward, it will drown you. When we practice the Vo-Vi meditation, we only go forward and never step back regardless of any adversity. Whether we have food to eat or not, we still practice to perfect ourselves spiritually. We utilize all possible means to practice. We unblock our energy and relate with the great universe through the exercises of Concentration of Energy, Cyclical Breathing Without Retention, and Meditative Contemplation. We harmonize with all three spheres to awaken our consciousness. We correct ourselves and amend our sins. We live sincerely with our own selves, and admit our mistakes. Let's not try to argue to defend our errors because doing so, we will bury our lucidity.

You have the fortunate opportunity to discover the book "Voyages To Hell". We have lived in a cruel society, and have seen and heard many wrongdoings. Looking at the past, we also perpetrated many wicked acts and were not kind people. At the present, we are still cold-hearted when we eat a lot, sleep in great comfort, wear luxurious clothes, but do not see the virtue of a bodhisattva from thousands of living beings, which sacrifice for us and guide us. When we clearly see the virtue of a bodhisattva from the thousands of beings, which sacrifice for us, we pay back ten times what we take. We do charity work with the most sincere compassion and dedication.

Do not cheat or unjustly blame others. You should rectify yourselves to evolve further. Let's progress within sincerity. You will lose nothing and you will have a good

opportunity. We should strive to make progress to learn the truth and practice within sincerity, so that we may release all sorrows and errors in our inner consciousness. It is invaluable that you practice the Vo-Vi method and study these materials. The more we read the “Voyages To Hell”, the more we understand every word, every original principle, and every original thought residing in our consciousness, and not outside.

On the occasion of my visit, I spend time to talk with you with a deep affection, as we practice and learn together to disentangle our karma. We have sins and we should calmly devote ourselves to spiritual perfection to help free ourselves. We should accept to cultivate ourselves spiritually and release our karma. We dare not hold in contempt any religion on earth. We are sinners and we must perfect ourselves.

Even a blade of grass is more interesting and worthier than us. We have not done as much work; therefore, we must spend great efforts to cultivate ourselves spiritually.

Today, you come here to listen to me and discuss with me in your deep consciousness. I hope that tomorrow or the day after tomorrow, we will set aside some time to continue our reading in order to complete this book.

Chapter 7

Visit to the Center for Complimentary Teaching of Canonical Books

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on the 9th day of the second 8th lunar month, 1976.
Leap Year of the Dragon.**

*Men strain to peruse their books in dim light
Religious men struggle to complete their lessons
Money matters muffled their gongs and bells
So now, in hell they grieve their own fate.*

Buddha Tse Kong: We're going for a tour to hell, Yang Ts'ien. Come on the dais. Be calm in your spirit.

Yang Ts'ien: I will, Master. But for the moment, I'm not yet in a mood to witness those dismal scenes of hell.

TK: I know you feel disturbed. But look, all those souls are heavy with sin, Yang Ts'ien. You must not pity them. Now, come on. Let's be on our way. We have arrived! Get down.

YT: These rooms are quite dark. I hear sobbing and moaning from inside.

TK: This is the Center for Complementary Teaching of Canonical Books. Let's go in.

YT: After you, Master. On the door, I read this inscription: "Center for Complementary Teaching of Canonical Books". Two officers are coming to the door. Who are they?

TK: They are official guards.

One of the guards addresses the visitors: You are welcome, Buddha Tse Kong and Mr. Yang Ts'ien of the Temple of the Sages in Tai Chu.

TK: Our greetings, General. Today, I take the saint-scribe Yang Ts'ien to the Center for Complementary Teaching of Canonical Books. Would you be so kind as to help him with his visit?

The General: It's a pleasure for me. Would you follow? You can come in by the side door. The main door is open on the 1st and 15th days of the lunar month. On these two days the Bodhidharma, the Masters of the Tao, and the Immortals and Saints come down from the Western Paradise to preach in this hall, and give lessons on practical methods of spiritual perfection to the religious and priests.

YT: It's a great favor for me to have come. The main door matters little. This auditorium looks quite dreary and dark. I'd rather stay outside and look in. No use entering.

The General: Take it easy. I'll show you the way.

YT: So much the better! The hall is made of wood. It must have been constructed a long time ago, for its partitions are all insect-eaten and filled with holes. In the hall, thousands of religious persons clothed in their respective gowns, are leafing through their prayer books and chanting psalms under a dying light. One and all, they look miserable.

TK: While living, these priests and the religious people made their living by reciting prayers in requiem masses in order to salvage the defuncts' souls from unhappy incidents. Nevertheless, out of greed for gain and lack of conscience, they intentionally left out part of the prayers, or pronounced them incorrectly. After they died, they were condemned to the Center for Complementary Teaching of Canonical Books to learn the prayers again. Every night, under the light of

oil lamps as weak as a glowworm's, they have to recite the prayers. For each word skipped, they are forced to re-read it a hundred times. They will go on like this until they have finished the Complementary Course. Then, they will be judged according to their pains and merits.

YT: If what you said is true, I'm afraid nobody dares recite the prayer-books edited by our Temple, such as the "Saint Scriptures of the Celestial Emperor for Salvation of Humans" and the "Saint Bible of the Supreme Master of Chaotic Times". A great number of believers have recited them in good faith; but it is probable they can't pronounce the words quite correctly. Will they be forced to attend a Complementary Course at your Center?

The General: They certainly won't. Only the people who practice cultic rites as a means of living have to come to this center. If they receive money from other people with the purpose of warding off the latter's ills, but don't recite the entire contents of the prayer-book, they have to come here. As for the people who recite prayers for others or for themselves disinterestedly, without any attempt to cheat for money, they may commit a few mistakes in pronunciation, but they are tolerated by divine laws.

YT: The dying glimmer of the lamps, which is no brighter than a glowworm's, flickers and threatens to die out at every gust of wind. The aged religious people and priests, with weakened eyes, decipher with great difficulty characters the size of a fly's head. They all seem exhausted, miserable, and pitiful to look upon.

The General: When a merchant receives money from a buyer, he must sell him good merchandise. These men pocketed their clients' money without trying to do as they should. They have to bear the burden of a bad karma.

TK: The religious and priests have the mission of converting the people to virtue. They recite prayers to illuminate humans with religious faith. Those who practice cultic rites by praying or reciting prayers must be careful. In no case should they skip a word, shorten a sentence, or falsify the pronunciation. If they are incapable of diverting calamities for other people because of their deceit, they have to suffer the consequences in their clients' place.

The General: On the 1st and 15th days of every lunar month, two Pontiffs of Buddhism and Taoism come down to this center to check the study of canonical books, and to teach the correct pronunciation of the prayer words. Immortals and Buddhas are morally responsible for the acts of humans. Consequently, they have to come to hell in person for the sake of salvaging the souls. They are truly merciful. Humans must be conscious of everything they do, even the most trifling acts. The author of bad acts can never be exempt from the laws of hell.

YT: I understand thoroughly, General. And thank you for your information.

TK: Yang Ts'ien, go ask that priest the reason for his being sent to this center.

YT: (to the priest) Would you mind telling me, Reverend, the reason why you have to come here?

The Priest: Don't address me as Reverend, I pray you. In my lifetime, I was named: "The red-capped priest". I took charge of cultic rites and requiem masses for the salvation of souls of the dead.

Unfortunately, my knowledge of prayers was as limited as it was groundless. I feigned to mumble the prayers with the accompaniment of bell-tollings and gong ringing. The masters of the households knew nothing of what I



recited. Worse still, I used to gain time by reciting one page of prayers instead of two, only thinking of pocketing money as quickly as I could. I cared very little whether the souls of the deceased came to Nirvana or not. Upon my death, my soul was first escorted by the infernal guards to the 1st palace of hell, then to the Center for Complementary Teaching of Canonical Books where I have stayed for over a year. Since I was negligent in my duty and anxious to shorten the prayers, I knew nearly nothing of the canonical books.

Now, I have to extend myself in an all-out attempt to learn them again, from start to end. Still, I find it hard to complete my complementary course. My eyes are swollen and red, causing me almost unbearable pain. When my complementary studies are finished, I will probably be sent to the 2nd palace for judgement on an even graver crime. For I also used charmed philters to harm other people. Now it is too late for me to repent. I aspire sincerely to amend, and hope my wish would be communicated to other priests in the living world. They should never forget their professional conscience, if they want to avoid my fate. For this moment, all I desire is to see other people granted salvation.

YT: This priest really deserves some mercy. I pray you, Master; do something to help him overcome this situation.

TK: His sin tallies with the law of retribution and sanction on man's acts. He is reaping what he has sown. The happier he was when on earth, the more miserable he is now in hell. Don't meddle with other people's business. We are mere visitors. All this is beyond our province. After all, his case will be determined by the laws of hell. It's growing late. Get ready for our return. My sincere appreciation, General.

YT: Mine too. General. It's really heart-warming to

see all the religious people and priests exerting great effort to study what they need most.

TK: On the dais, Yang Ts'ien...Here is the Temple. Run to your body, son.



Words From Master Luong Si Hang–Vi Kien

After reading, we clearly see that our souls are eternal, and we cannot hide anything. Each of our actions is being recorded, and we must bear the consequences of our actions. No one else can take our place. We must remember to monitor our four senses. We should not think wrongly, and we should not see wrongly. If we have thought or seen wrongly, we should repent and amend ourselves in order to progress quickly. Our errors amass themselves and build our ego. They are like an iron gate, which locks us up and we have no way to escape. Why do we have to perfect ourselves spiritually? We perfect ourselves spiritually to open our hearts and minds, to open the gate of prison, which locks up our consciousness.

As you cultivate yourselves spiritually every day, you will see that you are a bad person; you have wronged your husbands and children, you have wronged your wives and children, and you see your authoritarian character clearly, but if someone had told you so before, you would become angry. Now, you like people to criticize your domineering character so that you can amend yourselves. You acknowledge your bad character.

To see one's bad character is the most fortunate event. We will have an opportunity to correct ourselves. We will correct ourselves during the several decades of our life



on earth. Then, we no longer need to rectify ourselves when descending to hell. We will participate in another study phase to evolve higher and become lighter; we will progress toward greater lightness. There are people who only see money as important and their character as important. They would say that their character is not changeable. Your bad character is like money, and both prevent your ability from making progress. We must seek and discover our bad character, the dishonest one that is filled with anger and blinded passions. We must repent our mistakes and amend ourselves; we must improve our character and guide it to a higher level. This is the responsibility of our souls.

Today, we perfect ourselves spiritually by practicing meditation. Many people see that they can meditate easily and thoroughly, but others have difficulty and cannot meditate because of their impure character, their intolerance, infatuation and agitation. Therefore, our goal for spiritual perfection is first to rectify our mind and character, then we will see our character and enlighten our mind, then we will be able to meditate. Let's not say hastily: *"I also follow the exercises of Concentration of Spiritual Energy, Cyclical Breathing, and Meditative Contemplation, but why can't I practice?"* It is because you do not correct your character.

Today, you have the occasion to listen how I constantly invoke "Nam-Mo-A-Di-Da-Phat" in my mind, so that you can see this rule to master and correct us. We should spend our efforts to mentally invoke "Nam-Mo-A-Di-Da-Phat" to develop our capacity of harmony in our inner consciousness. At that time, you clearly see that we should borrow this walking aid from the Immortals and the Buddhas in order to arrive at our destination; otherwise we do not have the ability. Do you see it?

When you practice the mental invocation of “Nam-Mo-A-Di-Da-Phat”, you will realize that the more you practice, the more you will see your character and enlighten your mind. You will clearly see how your consciousness of harmony will develop; you will see that the era of unification of the three spheres is oneness, brothers and sisters are one, and all humans are one. We no longer nurture our intransigence and we will know how to love and forgive. You will be able to return to serenity.

If instead, you only read the scriptures of serenity but you do not rectify your consciousness, or if you read the scriptures of Buddha, understand the philosophy of Buddha, and write about the teachings of Buddha, but you do not rectify your mind, how can you progress?

We must correct ourselves, but what is needed to correct ourselves? In order to correct ourselves, we must encounter conflicts. When we encounter conflicts, we will see our mistakes, we will see our darkness, and we will work constructively to arrive at a bright place. This is what self-improvement means. The more we devote ourselves to spiritual perfection, the purer and lighter we will feel; the more we accept our challenges, the more we are willing to improve ourselves, and the more we will develop ourselves.

Now I will continue to read Chapter Eight.



Chapter 8

Visit to the Citadel of Premature Death

**Budda Tse Kong who manifested
on the 16th day of the second 8th lunar month, 1976.
Leap Year of the Dragon.**

*How pleasant to comfort oneself with two full moons
Who cares for those poor damned souls in purgatory?
Because they committed themselves to undesirable
deaths⁵
They mourn their bitter fates and now suffer like hell. ⁶*

Buddha Tse Kong: This is a leap year. We have beheld the full moon two times this month. It is just one month since the day we received the Edict of God prescribing the preparation of the book “Voyages To Hell”. Time is fleeting like water flowing. Humans should be coming out of their errors and illusions. The moon may be full and

5 They take their own life, but they are not satisfied. Similarly, we involuntarily utter words like “I hate this person” or “I resent this person”, and remain resentful. This is not our true intention, but our character forces us to act in this way. Consequently, we remain discontent. (Master Luong Si Hang-Vi Kien)

6 The misfortune has arrived. Even though we are now at the River Styx, we still lament our fates before being willing to correct ourselves. (Master Luong Si Hang-Vi Kien)

bright many times, but how often could humans have the opportunity to contemplate two mid-autumn full moons in their life, as they are doing in this leap year? Under the splendor of the moonlight, people are strolling and chatting. But their enjoyment is far from full if they cast a glance back to hell, and see nothing but dense darkness and hear only the resounding wailing and moaning of demonical souls. They are loath to set eyes on such spectacles. Now, Yang Ts'ien, prepare yourself for a promenade in hell.

Yang Ts'ien: I am at your request, sir. Time elapses quickly. It has been one month and yet we have not accomplished one tenth of our task in collecting materials for our book. I fear we'll fail to fulfill our mission.

TK: It suffices we hold firm our faith. Didn't the ancient sages say: *"By dint of sharpening a bar of iron, one can obtain a needle"*? My boy! If the Tao within you remains immutable, all of the ten palaces of hell will open wide their doors before you. You need only cast a glimpse, and then you will understand everything perfectly. Shake off all such disturbances, will you? Now, the dais!

YT: I'm on it. Let's go...

TK: We have arrived. Come down.

YT: Is this the Citadel of Premature Death you spoke of? The door is closed tight. Above it, are engraved the words: "Citadel of Premature Death". May we enter and see what is going on?

TK: Why not? To go through this door is precisely our purpose tonight. Follow me.

YT: But this door is carefully locked. What shall we do?



TK: It will open automatically, just the way supermarket doors do on earth. The souls of victims of violent death due to unnatural or unjust causes suffer a justified wrath and their pure essence, thus troubled, cannot escape. When the demons lead those confused souls to this place, negative energy attracts and repels, creating a repercussion that opens the door widely. All things in the Kingdom of Darkness and of anywhere else result from the reaction of the elements Yin and Yang that govern every creature. They adapt together, or they change, according to the craving of a man's heart. But you and I shouldn't rely on a like effect, as far as the door is concerned. I'll give a blow of my rush-fan, and it will open for us. (1)

YT: Your power is frightening, Master. Can you possibly lend me your rush-fan sometime? I'll take it to earth and perform a "magic show" with it, which certainly will dumbfound the spectators.

TK: Abstain from such a desire to make yourself conspicuous, my son. The one who nurtures such a dark thought is easily haunted by demons. Exercising religious virtues doesn't need an exhibition of miraculous power. Tranquility of the soul and a sound, fair reasoning are enough. By living a single day without any trouble and possessing a calm, lucid spirit, you can consider yourself a diminutive sage or a small-sized saint. No need for you to own my fan. You will do nothing but attract chagrin and annoyance.(2)

YT: You have opened my eyes, Master. I'm really grateful for it. I'm ashamed of my foolish desire. I see a group of people coming. Who are they?

TK: They are the Governor, the General, and other dignitaries of the citadel-administration. Let's go greet them.

The Mandarin-Governor: Our greeting to Venerable Buddha Tse Kong and to saint-scribe Yang Ts'ien, of the Temple of the Sages. This citadel is really honored by your visit.

The General: Welcome to Buddha Tse Kong and Mr. Yang Ts'ien. Some time ago, we received the Celestial Order about your visit. We greatly admire your mission of writing a book for redressing the conduct of mankind.

YT: I have been following the steps of my elders, and tonight, I come here to visit this citadel. I would feel deeply obliged if you could give me detailed explanations about it.

The Mandarin-Governor: It's a pleasure, Mr. Yang Ts'ien. Please follow me into the citadel.

YT: This place looks like a big prison. It covers an immense area. How heavily populated it is!

The Mandarin-Governor: New victims of premature death come every day. Come along. You will inspect the rooms successively. To begin with, take this one.

YT: I see a large number of infants whose heads are wet with blood. They wail and cry unceasingly. Some of them are writhing on the ground in a heart-rending way. Why aren't they set free?

The General: These infants had their normal development interrupted by voluntary or forced abortion. They are abandoned here because their makers refused to accept responsibility, pretending that the child had been conceived either casually or illegitimately. The fetus had taken human shape so its innate life did not die out completely. Thus the souls of these tiny creatures survived a little while on earth, before they came here. Considering the fact that

each human has a predestined fate, why then are these beings prevented from seeing the light of day? Their vengeance on their parents persists forever. They swear to bring an implacable woe upon their parents by not allowing them to enjoy matrimonial happiness, and plaguing them until their death. As soon as the souls of their parents come down to hell, the infants cling to them to reclaim their lives. Because of such moral torment, it is recommended that humans not practice abortion. This practice not only jeopardizes virtue, but also creates the abominable, lewd vice of lust. The people guilty of abortion must redeem their sin by acquiring an important record of good actions and meritorious deeds. Only under these conditions can hell consider mitigating circumstances in favor of the sinners.

YT: Now, I realize how things are. But General, may I ask you this: Do all people dying of premature death have to come to this citadel?

The General: Not all of them. The soldiers and officers who die while defending their country, for instance, sacrifice their “smaller self” for perfecting their “greater self”. They are not detained in this citadel. Their loyalty and patriotic actions, on the other hand, are taken into consideration. They are admitted to the Kingdom of Immortals where they live in felicity. Nevertheless, a number of them may not be completely freed from the burden of the law of causality. They will either rejoin the sojourn-place of genii and saints, or reincarnate, that is, become a fetus and be born again among human beings, in a blessed land. This is the reason so many temples have been erected in the world of humans in honor of great patriotic martyrs. Every year, tens

of thousands of people perform pilgrimages out of respect and gratitude to them. And we should say that at all times, the great men, illustrious for their devotion and loyalty to the cause of their countries, always leave behind them a good reputation that perpetuates to following generations.

YT: What you said is exact.

TK: Heaven and earth always embrace honest and loyal people in deep affection. The great patriots who dedicated their lives to the preservation of their countries inspire admiring respect from heaven and earth, and even excite tears of commiseration from demons themselves. A number of them have attained the “Way”, only by having observed and done what their noble feelings of devotion and loyalty dictated them to do. For the moment, we have no time left. Yang Ts’ien, let’s return to the Temple. We’ll come back another day for further information. Turn to our hosts and say goodbye.

YT: Excellency, General, accept my thanks for the explanations you gave me. Now, we wish to take leave.

The Mandarin-Governor: If any shortcoming occurs, I apologize.

TK: Please, don’t mention it.

YT: I’m scared, Master.

TK: Alas! It’s sorrowful to say that people nowadays are so deeply plunged in the abyss of love that they trifle with their own blood and flesh. Abortion has been practiced regularly and to-be-born infants are abandoned even from within the wombs of their mothers. What a disgusting spectacle! The sight is simply repulsive to Buddhas and angels. It is important to advise mankind to change and embark on

the “Arc of Mercy”, in conformity with the divine will, and to establish an ethical norm in married life in order to secure a sane and sound progeny and permanent happiness in the family. Mild moral satisfaction is much more valuable than momentary voluptuousness procured for sensual pleasures. One should preserve one’s energy and should not waste one’s blood, because these aren’t limitless. Men must make efforts to render themselves useful for humanity, for society, and for their families.

(The two travelers arrive at the Temple. Yang Ts’ien descends from the dais and reinstates in his body)



Words From Master Luong Si Hang–Vi Kien

(1) After reading this passage, you see the supernatural science of spiritual energy. Today, you practice the Vo-Vi method to enter the sphere of energy. You practice the Cyclical Breathing Without Retention to regulate the pure Yin and Yang energies. While breathing, you inhale and release energy every day and every night. You take in the sacred fire to cleanse your earthly heart and the five organs. Then, the door will open. You direct yourselves toward the World Above, which is pure and light. When your energy is unblocked, you will naturally ascend higher. On the other hand, if the door is closed, your energy is blocked. With blocked energy and an angry and passionate character, one cannot evolve higher and attain salvation. If you practice this dharma of self-perfection

and follow the teachings correctly, when your energy is unblocked, you will know that you are an indestructible flux of energy; only you are responsible for your own destruction. When you cultivate yourselves spiritually and are able to unblock and develop your energy, you will naturally attain enlightenment.

(2) Many people say that reading the “Voyages To Hell” is terrifying. What is terrifying? The “Voyages To Hell” showed to us that the civilization of heaven and earth exists ages ago and not just recently. We clearly see the principle of energy. Through reading and analysis, we clearly see that the scenes in our consciousness come from our pure energy. Similarly, the external scenes come from the harmonization of the Yin and Yang energies in the earthly world. If there are no Yin and Yang energies, there will be no mankind and no visible sceneries. Hence, pure energy is the master of all material forms. When we perfect ourselves spiritually by cultivating our energy, we are going on the exactly right path.



We see that in the present civilized world, people only know about their sexual desires. People would take pills or go through abortions instead of accepting to pay back the debts from previous existences. One must pay back one’s debts. The law is immutable. If we refuse this law, we will encounter misfortunes. When the fetus is formed, the World Above has given it a destiny, and the newborn has a mission



to perform in the future in a given area. If we now throw it away, we are destroying the celestial mechanism.

People who live in matrimonial bonds have ethical limits. Those who make love indiscriminately never have a limit. Excessive lust is boundless; it will harm both the body and soul. Spiritual adepts must be aware. Do not claim: *“I am now good-looking after a period of spiritual cultivation. I am now healthy. If someone offers me love, I also desire it.”* You will die and suffer from your sensual pleasures. You will lose both your body and soul. To preserve one’s vital energy is the most important thing in order to evolve in accordance with divine law. Many people do not understand and commit wrongdoings. They claim that they must have sensual pleasures in order to cultivate themselves spiritually. This is even a graver sin. They will only shackle themselves more each day in the impure sphere. They would have to bear infinitely heavy punishments in the future, and they will only grow more obscure each day. To borrow the name of Buddha or to borrow the name of the Saints and Immortals in order to propagate the Tao in a dubious way means to betray others and to betray oneself. This is a very heavy sin.

Chapter 9

Second Visit to the Citadel of Premature Death

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on the 19th day of the second 8th lunar month, 1976.
Leap Year of the Dragon.**

*Truth is expounded to guide common people
Toward self-cultivation and awareness
All religions must return to one God
Everyone will then learn Tao and practice Nam Mo.*

Buddha Tse Kong: The men in this world are rushing toward scientific studies. To them, metaphysics, spiritualism and religion are utopian speculations. Never have they harboured the thought that material things disintegrate and disappear, while the spirit alone is lasting eternally. Whether paradise and hell exist or not depends totally on the whims of our thoughts. Paradise is not far away. It suffices that we turn our heads to see it. As for hell, is it near? To improve ourselves religiously is to get away from it. What we saw in the Citadel of Premature Death was really disgusting. Well, Yang Ts'ien, how about a trip to hell? Raise your morale, son, quick to the dais.

Yang Ts'ien: I'm on the dais, Master. Let's go...

TK: Arrived!

YT: Please, sir, this place doesn't look like the one we came to the other day. Why don't we simply park our lotus



dais outside the walls of the Citadel as we did? We can take only a few steps to be inside.

TK: After Buddha, the four phenomena of the void are materialization, stabilization, destruction and annihilation. Even the door of hell is subjected to annihilation by the phenomenon of the void. Therefore, coming in and going out is free, without any restrictions. The last time, we had lots of time so we landed our lotus outside the Citadel and walked in. Tonight, time is short, so we land right in the heart of hell. I hope this is a lesson for the men who know how to regenerate and follow the teachings of Tao. They will be freed from every material thing, and won't be attached by the bonds of hell; they will be entirely free to come and go as I am now.

YT: Master, you've just taught me the Buddhist law of the Greater Vehicle. I piously recognize it. Here come the Mandarin-Governor and the General.

TK: Kneel down and greet them.

YT: My respects to His Excellency and to the General. The last time, you gave me precious teachings. I wish to express my profound gratitude. Tonight, I am coming to solicit more instructions from you.

The Mandarin: You honor me greatly, Venerable Buddha Tse Kong and Mr. Yang Ts'ien. I invite you to come into the Citadel of Premature Death to observe what is going on, and get more information for your book.

YT: Thank you very much, Excellency. To TK: Let's go with them, Master.

TK: You go ahead with the Governor and General. I have some affairs to settle. I will leave you for a little while.

YT: Master, if you leave me, who will take me home?

TK: Don't worry. I'll be back in due time.

The General: Just relax, Mr. Yang Ts'ien. Follow me, will you?

YT: In each of these two rooms separated by a partition, I see young people of both sexes packed together. They have disheveled hair, and their looks are deplorable. Excellency, may I ask you the reason for their detention here?

The Mandarin: These young people, when in life, loved each other passionately. But something negative happened to them. They were deeply affected, they mourned their lost love. Then, yielding to a foolish resolution, they took poison to put an end to their lives. Upon their death, they were locked up in here. Humans should not allow themselves to be carried away by foolish passions that destroy their lucidity and their lives. If they sense they cannot live together as two birds flying wing against wing, why do they continue to hope that they can further their union like the branches of a single tree?

YT: In that far jail, I see many people with mutilated arms and legs, cracked heads, and their bodies covered with blood. Their wails, groans and cries are heart-breaking. Who are they, Excellency?

The Mandarin: They are the victims of traffic accidents in the world. Since they have not yet come to the age determined by their destinies, they rank in the category of premature death. Their souls, when arriving in hell, are temporarily detained here until they attain the limit of their longevity. They will then be at the disposal of the Pontiff of hell who will apply the impartial laws of the two worlds to

judge them according to their merits and their wrongs.

YT: What a strange conception of justice! A man is killed under the wheel of a vehicle. That misfortune alone inspires a lot of pity. Now the victim is put in jail and prevented from entering heaven. I find such justice a bit inhuman.

The Mandarin: Young man! You see only one aspect of the matter. It's not necessary that every person killed in a traffic accident come here. Those people who have attained their predestined age and are killed in an accident because of the karma of their previous life don't come here. Many people curse heaven and earth for the misfortunes that fall upon them unjustly. All of their lives they have tried to regenerate and accumulate virtue and good acts. With all these merits, they still have to die under the wheel of a vehicle! Could we say therefore that the celestial scheme is unfair? Look! Yen Hoei was an honest and virtuous man. He died very young. Take Sikya Muni, the founder of Buddhism who was wholly dedicated to his religious ideal. He had been the target of unceasing misery and misfortune caused by devils and demons. Who's will is it? Who is incorrectly accused of having no clairvoyant eyes upon human affairs? Isn't this the will of God the Supreme? Man's physical body is a trifling thing. It is perishable. Only his spirit counts: That is immortal.

YT: If the principle of three successive lives is well-established to define good, evil and causality, how do you explain the cases of premature death? Isn't there some contradiction which leads men to doubt the theory of cause and effect? Can you give me some explanation about that matter, Excellency?

The Mandarin: The three successive lives usually alluded to only a short spell in the long march of time. Since scores of millennia, whose beginning was lost in time immemorial, man has passed through so many incarnations that the causes and effects of his former lives become uncountable. Buddha only referred to three existences in the principle of causality. They consist of the former life, the present life, and the future life. The karma does not merely result from the causes of one's former life. It is the outcome of the whole causal process that has been developing from the yet hazy apparition of the spiritual soul until the time it is completely condensed, then, until now. Men used to believe that their present fate inherits all the karmas of their previous life. With this conception, they fail to take into account the creed of faith. They should know that their conduct in the former life affects only seven tenths of their present destiny, while the other three tenths is influenced by their moral conduct in this life. This axiom is justified: "Destiny is hard to modify, but luck may deter its course".

YT: Now, I begin to realize how things are. A great number of people believe that all of the things that happen to them are the consequence of the actions of their previous life. And some believe that everything is disposed for them by God, the Supreme Being. All such conceptions are negative and in contradiction with reality. Now, Excellency, from the cells of the jail opposite come poignant screams. What crimes have those detainees committed?

The Mandarin: They are the victims of assassination or of mutual slaughter.

YT: That's really unthinkable! The assassin and the

assassinated are under the impact of the law of retaliation and account settlement. How natural they should die! Why then are they sent to the Citadel of Premature Death after their death?

The Mandarin: Your argument is quite plausible. It is true that some people kill each other because they are governed by the law of retaliation and account settlement. But there is still another category of men who in this life refuse squarely to improve morally, or to acquire new virtues. They are the root of every quarrel and disorder that impairs the celestial cause. It is because of them that the motives for premature deaths are created. Humans in the world must be permeated with this truth. One couldn't say: *"I kill this fellow, because in his former life, he owed me some debt"*. A proverb goes like this: *"One should get rid of a vendetta rather than nurture it"*. If someone owes you money but he cannot repay it, when you don't force the payment, you will benefit infinite grace from God. If in the human world one doesn't nurture in one's heart a selfish craving but lives fraternally with all fellowmen, just as heaven and earth don't protect any particular individual, hell will exist no longer. The theory of causality will fall into disuse. Man must understand that the mere fact of possessing a body to live in is already a blessing he obtains with difficulty from the Almighty. He has the duty to educate his heart and improve his conduct. If a man inconsiderately loves every flower (implying the fair sex), telling himself that a given flower owed him a debt of love in her former life, and that in this life he is entitled to claim his due, he commits a heavy error. He cannot act likewise by picking every flower he finds on

his way. His actions are in no way justified by the principle of causality, nor are they included in the law of retaliation and account settlement. The cause created by his former life can only be justified when his encounter with the girl is sudden and spontaneous. On the contrary, the one who intentionally commits dishonest actions creates for himself a heavy karma with disastrous effect in his future life.

The General: Each of His Excellency's sentences is a truth. Men should assimilate them and come out of their illusions. If they fail to grasp this truth, they will remain callous to the teachings of religion. They will argue that the persons with angelic and buddhist essence are the only ones to attain enlightenment and reach nirvana. More erroneous are the idle remarks of those men who pretend to be exempt from any type of work, once they own a fortune worth thousands of thousands of dollars.

Buddha Tse Kong (back from a short absence, talking to Yang Ts'ien). I am back. The sayings of His Excellency the Governor and of the General are perfectly correct. They will eliminate all man's errors. Think of the times when all men were Immortals and Buddhas. Later, they fell in this world here-below, became imbued with the dust of illusion which created passions in them, blinded them, and made them lose their genuine nature. That's why they can't return to their origin. Now that heaven proclaims the great doctrine of the Tao, this is an era when the principle of causality draws to an end, giving place to the convergence of Void. Thus enlightened by the grace of God, mankind should not fall back in error. Those who patiently convert to the Way will become immortals and buddhas; those who

don't will return as before to the six ways of transmigration. Immortals and buddhas are born from a man's heart. Destiny is not determined by heaven, but by man himself. All this is confirmed by the spectacles we saw in the Citadel of Premature Death. Yang Ts'ien, be ready for the return. We thank you, Excellency and General, for the assistance you afforded us by giving explanations about the Citadel, and the necessity for combatting man's erroneous beliefs.

YT: The way of the Tao is as deep as an ocean. Without the explanations of the Governor and of yours, Master, humans would not have an accurate idea of things. It is desirable that you give ample teachings on the Truth to instruct men, guide the devotees in the right direction, and help them make correct decisions, about things concerning the Tao. Only under these conditions could men avoid erroneous thinking that makes them ignore the Truth even until their death.

TK: This is precisely my responsibility. Henceforth, every effort is exerted for the propagation of the Truth. The Temple of the Sages is assuming the task of accomplishing this work for men's salvation and directing them to the right way, and thence, to sanctity. Now, we must be going.

YT: Yes, Master. I'm seated. Shall we go?

TK: Here we are. Get down from the lotus dais now and enter your body.



Words From Master Luong Si Hang–Vi Kien

We have heard everyone saying that hell is just a superstition, an illusion, and imaginary scenes, but hell has shown us the truth in all matters. We have seen clearly that we must act, we must bear the consequences, and we must amend ourselves in order to progress. This is infinitely more civilized than the way ordinary people behave on earth, as they like to put the blame on this thing or that thing, and do not see the matter accurately. Therefore, today, we must practice to perfect ourselves spiritually, and not use theories. We must practice. How much we have done, how much we have cultivated ourselves spiritually, and how much progress and learning we have made are very clear.

Up to now, you have listened about the “Citadel Of Premature Death”. The people who die prematurely have to go there and be locked up until the proper time before ascending further in their evolution. We see all matters very clearly. There are other people who also die prematurely, but their will is spiritual liberation. As Vo-Vi practitioners, every night we think about returning to Heaven, we rectify our mind and character, we sacrifice all our bad character and bad habits to return to emptiness. If all of a sudden, a bomb would go up, we would still return to a place of purity and lightness instead of being imprisoned in a place of darkness and agitation.

Why are we still imprisoned in a place of darkness and agitation? We are still angry and frustrated, we still cherish and miss our physical body, we are attracted to earthly



matters, and do not know about the place of eternal purity and lightness. If we know about this place, we will achieve liberation even in case of an unfortunate event. You should cultivate this infinite will and keep these thoughts during your practice. When you examine yourselves, you would see that before practicing a spiritual method, you were not able to write a poem even if you had wanted to. Now that you meditate, you can easily write a poem, but all your poems relate to Tao. Why? You have achieved focus. You have focused your true consciousness to attain lucidity, you are no longer procrastinating, and you are neither angry nor passionate. At that time, you can write easily without any difficulty. You can write about one subject repeatedly with ease. Why? This is because of the pure energy at your disposal. When I achieve serenity through spiritual perfection, and once I have understood the great serenity, one single sentence or one of my words is equal to my writing of a whole poem. People could tell a lot, they could ask a lot, but you only need to answer with one word “Emptiness”, that will be all. Only a smile and one word “Emptiness” will comprise everything. However, you must fully perceive what “Emptiness” means to be able to answer in that manner, and you must have already experienced this state of emptiness to dare answering in this way. If you have not achieved this level, you will not be able to use that answer. The word “Emptiness” is very easy, but it cannot be spoken easily.

We do not understand what is called “Emptiness”. When we speak about “Emptiness”, and if people ask us about “Emptiness”, we have to explain what it means. Materialization, stabilization, destruction and annihilation,

all four states return to emptiness. Life on earth is a school to learn, to teach us patience and resignation to progress further. Hardships, which I encounter during my spiritual cultivation, such as unjust accusations and punishments, all these adversities give me the opportunity to return to emptiness. Only when I am tired of the earthly world and turn to the spiritual world, will I return to emptiness. Many people do not understand, and they would stumble and fall when being tested, even though they claim to pursue spiritual cultivation with determination. If I say that I always think of God in my heart, but I refuse to perfect myself spiritually, I only think of God in a restrictive way. I do not think of God as the immense Great Compassion, the Almighty Lord, and my consciousness will never open up. My heart will be trapped in a corner and will not develop, and I will only come to my own self-destruction and self-imprisonment. Therefore, hell is a proof of how humans imprison themselves. If I have committed a wrongdoing, I must go to this place and I have no other choice. On the other hand, if I know how to work constructively to attain lightness, I will arrive at a light place after my death.

There are people who die for a righteous cause, who save their countries and their peoples. They are heroes and they do not care about their physical bodies. They return to emptiness and lightness. Why do I keep reminding that, as spiritual adepts, we must return to emptiness? We want to guide the sentient beings in our microcosm, since they also relate to the three spheres of the universe. You take your pure energy to purify and guide the parts from a lower origin, so that they may ascend higher. You are doing a great work,

not some menial task. You should not become discouraged halfway. From now on, all Vo-Vi practitioners will encounter challenges quickly because The Lord has taken notice. The more God loves us, the more He wants to guide us and allow us to return soon. He must give us more lessons to shorten the time, and He must let us face more conflicts to awaken our consciousness. People who cannot withstand the selection process will be dropped.

Today, I come here to read the book “Voyages To Hell” to remind you one more time. You have the “Voyages To Hell” in your home, in your hands, but you have not yet understood it thoroughly. The Truth is explained clearly to guide your consciousness. You should awaken your consciousness soon, you should give up your bad character and bad habits, and you should abandon your ego and ignorance. You will return to your inherent contentment, peace and leisure, and do not need to beg from anyone. Do not remain superstitious, and do not pray for favors. If you do not march forward, you will commit a graver sin. Let’s practice to reach awakening soon.

Chapter 10

*Visit to the 2nd Palace
Interview with the King
Visit to the Conference Hall*

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on the 26th day of the second 8th lunar month, 1976.
Leap Year of the Dragon.**

*The Trinity Council cares for all living beings
Hell's structure constantly changes with time ⁷
Wickedness in life may operate out of sight
However, it can never escape the divine eyes. ⁸*

7 Transformation and development happen every day.
(Master Luong Si Hang–Vi Kien)

8 One says: “Oh, what I do here cannot be known in hell. The King of the Underworld cannot see, as he is busy with judging and punishing people. I can go ahead with my evil business.” Doing evil does not simply mean to steal from others. When you are enraged at people, you are already doing evil. A little anger or resentment is already evil. We should cultivate ourselves spiritually such that our consciousness is not polluted by any worldly dust. We should always be in a state of harmony with all creatures to open ourselves and save others. This is essential, and it is a proof that we have liberated our inner consciousness. (Master Luong Si Hang–Vi Kien)

Buddha Tse Kong: Our trips to hell to get facts for the book have fatigued deities and men. However, for the sake of salvaging mankind, we do not count our pain. We could say that: *“Every work of benevolence is done with joy.”* I am greatly impressed at the sight of the adepts practicing contemplative meditation every night until late hours. The Three Councils of heaven, hell, and virtuous men insure salvation for the whole universe: Heaven provides blessings for the stars and the Milky Way. In the middle, the Sages and the Virtuous assist mankind. The netherworld helps salvage the souls and demons in hell. At this time, turmoil is reigning over the human world and the kingdom of heaven as well. The Saint Door opens widely; the genuine Tao is being propagated. Those predestined to the Tao are converted and allowed to pursue their regeneration. The non-predestined, on the other hand, continue to make fun of the Buddhas and move further from paradise. Casting my eyes upon the earth, I see Buddhist temples and centers for the practice of meditation mushrooming everywhere. The spirit of the Tao is prevailing over every household. This is an epoch when religious culture is reborn, and the ancient doctrines respected and applied. A spectacle of favorable omen is offering itself. The demon-souls in hell are waiting for these moments to redeem their sins. Tonight, I take Yang Ts’ien for a tour to hell, so he can understand the situation and relate it to mankind. Get prepared, Yang.

Yang Ts’ien; I am, Master.

TK: We’re going to visit the 2nd Gate. Cheer up, son.

YT: Yes, sir. And please, don’t hesitate to scold me soundly, should I allow myself to be foolish.

TK: I don't go that far. Well, let's go... son... Here we are. Let's get down.

YT: What is that place over there? I see a big crowd of souls hurrying, with the buffalo-headed and horse-faced demons escorting others.

TK: This is the second Gate. Let's hurry! We're going to meet the King of the Palace.

YT: In the middle of that group which is coming, I see a man of tall stature and strong body. He is dressed in a garment of ancient times similar to the ceremony-gown that people on earth used to wear for the cult of genii. He has a majestic and imposing gait, and from his entire body emanates a resplendent aureole. Generals and guards are walking by his sides.

TK: He is Ming Wang, The King of the 2nd Palace. Be on your knees, and pay him your respect.

YT: I am honored to be here before His Majesty and the Mandarins of the Royal Court.

Ming Wang: Dispense with the ceremonials. Stand up, please. You are most welcome, Buddha Tse Kong and Mr. Yang Ts'ien of the Temple of the Sages who take the time to call on me. This palace received the Celestial Edict quite early. And we know your Temple sent you here in order to write a book on hell. By the way, we just received a letter from Buddha Tse Kong, informing us of your visit. We were therefore ready to welcome you. Please, come in this way

TK: We are grateful for your warm welcome. Yang Ts'ien, let's follow His Majesty into the palace.

The King: Here it is. I'm going to explain the activities of the ten gates of hell. They are the official centers



of punishments. As a rule, the souls of the dead, after being carefully judged by the 1st Palace as to their merits and their sins, are handed over to the 2nd Palace. As for those wicked and unscrupulous souls who have participated in all types of vice from their earthly days, hell only tries, for the moment, to correct the causes of their vice, knowing perfectly that they will never improve. When they come to our palace, we collate the register of their curriculum-vitae in hell with their committed sins. Thus, everything is clear, no doubt whatsoever. Since the situation in the human world has changed, hell must also modernize itself by increasing the number of cells. You may say: "Manners change with the times". Many items of hell's penal code have to be revised and amended to meet the needs of modern times, particularly to punish the guilty more efficiently.

TK: Phenomena change in heaven, formations change on earth, and the human world also changes after nature. Heaven and hell reflect everything instantaneously. The least gesture of man, a tree, an herb, all things reflect themselves in the sky, the way they do in a mirror. Hell too, receives the reflection from that mirror with matchless purity and accuracy. Don't ever think that demons and genii are eliminated by the progress of science. The profane people, leaning upon the visible, pretend to exclude the invisible. But they soon realize that the invisible is master of the visible. It is the immortals and buddhas of the invisible divine world who direct, whereas humans on earth are all activated by an extraneous force.

YT: So, that's it. Every mortal thinks of hell as an imperceptible, therefore, nonexistent domain. In reality,

hell appears neatly before my eyes. It is as marvelous as it is formidable. I suddenly find myself in a world completely different from mine.

The King: I am terribly busy. I don't think I can entertain you any longer. I count on you, General. Will you have Mr. Yang Ts'ien inspect the prison?

The General: With pleasure, sir.

YT: Among those souls before the gate, some carry a pillory on their heads, and their hands are chained. They look like criminals on earth. How pitiful for them! Over there, the King of the Palace who is presiding over a hearing is banging his fist on the table and howling, just like a farmer shouting at his stubborn ox.

The General: Time is short. Please don't delay, Mr. Yang Ts'ien. Come with me.

TK: Don't scrutinize things too closely, Yang.

YT: At this gate, a big crowd is gathering. Not a single chirping of a bird is heard. What are they doing there?

The General: The Bodhisattva of the Underworld, Pontiff of the Kingdom of Darkness, has had a conference hall established in every palace, because by this time, the Three Tribunes are dealing with universal salvation. In principle, those sinful souls who still have some good nature left, and prove their good conduct while in detention, are permitted to come, in turn, to the conference hall to listen to the preaching of the Immortals and Buddhas. They must therefore be very careful and attentive. They walk quietly and dare not make noise. There, you see them coming in, one after another.

YT: Hell also takes care of the salvation of demon-souls by teaching them from holy books and preaching

the methods of spiritual perfection. We can compare it to the terrestrial world where temples are found everywhere. They are dedicated to the cult of saints, and their séances of spiritualism are a means to distribute the saint doctrine. Many people lead a religious life in their homes. At present, the Immortals and Buddhas are really merciful, so much so that they spare no pain to come down as far as the dusty living world and the world of the dead, to provide salvation for living creatures, and for demon-souls as well.

TK: Let's follow this group of demon-souls into the conference hall.

YT: Above the big door, I see a panel with this inscription: "Conference Hall No.1 of the Palace". Before entering the hall, every demon-soul has to pass to the next room resembling a workshop, named "Sentry house". Here, the demon-souls signal their arrival to the authorities of hell. Once this formality is done, they can enter the hall.

The General: This is the residence of the guard-officer. He is responsible for checking the entries and exits of the demon-souls. The souls without a permit to attend the conference are refused entry to the hall. Now, I'm going to announce you as visitors for the purpose of writing a book. Please, wait here. I just announced you and registered your names. Follow me into the hall, and sit on the "honor mat" while waiting for the Immortals and Buddhas.

TK: And now, here is the "Chariot of the Way" carrying Bodhisattva Kuan Yin, the Saint-Mother of Southern Seas. Yang Ts'ien, bow and salute the Bodhisattva.

YT: Yes, sir. Kuan Yin, the Supreme Goddess, has come to the pulpit and is preparing to preach. In the conference

hall with benches of the same style as the pupils', there are two thousand attendees. They all seem jolly. Kuan Yin, the Supreme Goddess, is seen sitting on her dais of lotus, clad in a white silk robe, with a twig of willow in hand which she dips in an urn of holy water and mimics the gesture of sprinkling it over the audience. Gracious Master, what does her gesture mean?

TK: That's the "religious shower" that impregnates every creature. It is called "asperges of holy water". The ones who are predestined to the Way of Deliverance will be liberated naturally from the vicious cycle of transmigration. This is the mercy of God. He practices no discrimination whatsoever among the Four Categories of Creatures and the Six Ways of Transmigration. It suffices that a mortal comes back to the good path, mends his faults and restores his body and soul, and he will be salvaged by the "Arc of Mercy". Such is also the deepest aspiration of Kuan Yin. Now, no more questions, will you? Listen to the sermon of Kuan Yin on "The Way that saves us from misfortunes".

Kuan Yin: I am really delighted to notice the presence of living Buddha Tse Kong and of Mr. Yang Ts'ien of the Temple of the Sages. Mr. Yang Ts'ien, after hearing my sermon and upon your return to the terrestrial world, I hope you will exert all effort to educate the people by giving them good advice for self-perfection. Your Temple is attempting to educate humans. Its adepts have consecrated all their spirit and vigor to the construction of the Arc of Mercy for the salvation of human creatures. Such a spirit is really admirable. In the future, they will certainly reach the place of

saints and sages. I expect they will do their best to accomplish their noble mission.

TK: Bow quickly and thank her for her infinitely merciful advice!

YT: I thank you, Mother Kuan Yin, for all you have just taught me. As soon as I get back to the Temple, I will transmit your teachings to my brethren, and we shall show ourselves worthy of your confidence.

Kuan Yin: Now, I begin my sermon: Since the times of nothingness until the present, man was born in the world, and died. Then, he was reborn and died again. In spite of his body's disintegration, his soul remains immortal.

You are now in hell, but you still do not know that your body is but illusory. Only knowledge acquired by clairvoyance is true. Love and passion are difficult to eliminate. Humans nurture grief and anger. After that, they grieve endlessly. They must therefore conceive the world as a dream and an illusion. The bonds that tie the members of the same family are also the consequences of the law of causality. As for the law of retribution and sanction, it governs a cycle of good and evil.

You should not forget yourselves by ignoring that law. If prejudices and bad actions persist in your spirit, if negative feelings remain in your hearts, you will be dragged into the infernal cycle of transmigration. We are now living in a decadent phase of religious morality. Human hearts have become deceitful and wicked. The tree of clairvoyance has become stunted; newborn babies prove themselves more clever than before, but they are more apt to learn misdeeds and guiles as well.

I do not want to divulge the secrets of God, but I have to say that the flame of the oil-lamp, exposed to winds, cannot exist much longer. Gradually contaminated by vices, man loses his pure nature. In spite of his marked intelligence, his clairvoyance is tarnished and he does disservice to the Celestial Cause. Subversive and inhuman acts multiply day after day. Anarchy reigns over the world, moral laws are disregarded. You demon-souls, who have fallen in the deep sepulchral pit of death, your carnal body is lost, and the wicked karma is pursuing you. Try to understand that the shadow follows the man wherever he goes.

Do not pretend that an image cannot be seen where there is no light. Every thought, every move, is reflected by psychic faculties, and produces its consequences to which the bad karma firmly ties you. Now, though sinking in the world of darkness, you still can preserve a minimum of your conscience which is not yet darkened. You must repent of your past misdeeds. I advise you to understand the Truth and endure the mortification of strenuous punishment, so that your past crimes can be eliminated. Suffer the pains stoically, and shake off all ill will. I shall come again to bring you my blessings. My sermon ends. (1)

TK: (to Yang Ts'ien) Present her your farewell wishes, Yang.

YT: As you say. May I humbly thank you for your teachings of gold and jade. All of the demon-souls are also bowing to salute Kuan Yin, and a great number of them, excessively moved by the sermon, have shed bitter tears...

TK: The Supreme Goddess has given precious words to the demon-souls in order to advise and console them.

Doubtlessly, she opens her “bodhi” heart, in the hope that all creatures will convert to the Way and attain enlightenment. If any of these still regret their profane life and hesitate to change, they will come down to hell and endure a wicked karma. It will then be extremely difficult to improve again. Well, time is short. Yang Ts’ien, let’s go home!

The General: Please forgive us for any shortcomings.

YT: I am a profane man among you. Why use such a word as “forgive”. You humble yourself, General— (addressing Tse Kong) One more question, Master. Has every palace established its conference hall? And finally, how much time will the sinful souls have to acquit their sins and obtain their freedom?

TK: Well, the service of conference established by the palaces of hell is a lower level. It is destined to probe the hearts and character of sinful souls, and see how deeply their regeneration reaches. Later on there will be higher level services for their betterment. Now, no more questions. It’s growing late. The dais is waiting—(to the General) I appreciate very much your welcome, General.

Here we are back to the Temple. Alight, and enter your body, son



Words From Master Luong Si Hang–Vi Kien

(1) Kuan Yin, the Supreme Goddess has explained everything in her sermon. Those on earth who are engaged in

spiritual cultivation but do not awaken their consciousness will end up as ghosts after death. Those spiritually inclined who succeed to awaken their consciousness will never go to hell as they will not cling to the karma of heart, which is to nurture vengeance and resentment and causes one to turn into a demon.

Therefore, Kuan Yin has warned us and clearly states that we must perfect ourselves spiritually in order to attain awakening. We will then understand that our soul is indestructible. Otherwise, if we do not achieve awakening, we will never know that our soul is eternal. When we know that our soul is eternal, we will not commit wrongdoings and have to endure punishment in our next lifetime.

As spiritual adepts, we understand that we can travel by our soul, and our soul is indestructible, but what is the soul? Our soul is a supernatural structure; it is pure energy, not impure energy. We must direct ourselves toward the World Above in order to be able to listen to the teachings of the Supreme Goddess Kuan Yin, and we should not nurture karma in our hearts. Our wicked character, our dark anger and passions are karmas, and we should abandon them quickly.



We have the fortunate opportunity to listen to the words of wisdom from the Supreme Goddess Kuan Yin to save and guide all souls, without abandoning anyone. Each of her words touches profoundly all three spheres.

Why do we practice the Cyclical Breathing Without Retention? We practice to unblock our energy, and thus

achieve a thorough understanding of all three spheres in our inner consciousness and inner organs. Our organism relates with the three spheres of Heaven, Earth, and Man. When we have unblocked our energy, we can read any canonical book and open our mind with a serene heart. The more we perfect ourselves spiritually and the more we meditate, the more we will develop the aura on our head. We will no longer nourish our spiritual consciousness inside the earthly heart of our physical body, but right at the center top of our head to return to the void, and we will perceive that this is our true consciousness.

We sit here, but we are not truly here. We learn about the Tao around the clock. Those who have spent efforts to perfect themselves spiritually and have arrived at this level will forgive and do positive work easily. Even if demons and ghosts want to harm us, we can still change them. We will use our compassion and serenity that we have attained through our rigorous spiritual training to save and guide them. We see that we are all brothers and sisters under the same roof. For us, there will be no more demons and ghosts in the universe if we maintain our good will and faith to learn and perfect ourselves spiritually. To return to “emptiness” means to return to “Buddha”. Those who have succeeded in this true principle have opened their consciousness of harmony.

At the beginning, you should persevere in the practice of the silent invocation of Nam-Mo-A-Di-Da-Phat. Then you will invoke the mantra regularly and come to the state of a permanent invocation. When you mentally think of it, it will be there, as this is very light. In that state, you will no longer need to invoke it mentally because your aura will develop

regularly and expand wider each day, and there is no more narrow-mindedness. Our consciousness realizes that no one can take the riches that belong to God and Buddhas. No one can steal them from us, and we have nothing to fear. We are only afraid to lose our consciousness and our lucidity to the Infernal Demon. On this earth, there are innumerable people who claim to engage in spiritual cultivation but who lack spiritual perfection. Their character is unpredictable; they cause restlessness in their family, and commit sins through their ignorance. They plunge into hell unknowingly. Once you have devoted yourselves to spiritual cultivation, you will experience by yourselves whether my words are correct.

We need spiritual practice in order to save ourselves. If we want to practice a lot, we must return grace instead of nurturing vengeance and resentment, and we need to encounter many conflicts. We are happy to see our courage during adversities, otherwise if our boat always has favorable winds, how can we know the Tao? Why do the Enlightened only succeed through patience and resignation? What motivates them to practice patience and resignation? Betrayals and adversities push them to practice patience and resignation in order to awaken their consciousness and evolve further, and to be able to guide and save others through their faith. If we are attacked, but if we are the Great Compassion, we must be the saviors. Therefore, even though God is insulted, He is the savior. Though Buddha is insulted, Buddha guides and liberates others. We should follow their examples as human beings. Be not afraid that you have nothing to do. When you are able to release your karma of heart, your consciousness of salvation will never stop working in all

three spheres. You will clearly return to serenity, and not use artificial words of serenity without truly being serene.

When you say, “I return to serenity”, you will encounter many more perturbances. If you cannot withstand these conflicts, you will fail. The tests occur immediately. Many times, during your meditation, you feel pure and light as you ascend higher. You feel very happy, but then you immediately feel heaviness by the test from the Infernal Demon. Just your desire for sensual pleasures can immediately cause heaviness. The plunge into hell happens in the blink of an eye, and we do not need to wait for the demon to capture and throw us into hell. You could instantly plunge into hell during your séance of meditation. This is called “to be demoted to a lower level”, and you should understand this point.

Chapter 11

Visit to the Prison with the Lake of Mire, Excrements and Urine

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on September 3rd, 1976. Leap Year of the Dragon.**

*Serenely, man leafs through the canonical book
With detached heart, he is free from karmic bonds
Unstained by worldly dust, like a lotus flower
He masters death and birth by imitating deities.*

Buddha Tse Kong: In a man's life, his birth into this world and his death are the two most important events. He cannot escape them, which made Chuang Tzu say: "*I did not desire to be born into this world, but I was born all the same. I hate to die, but I shall die anyway, when my destiny wants me to*".

Though aware of the fact that man can control neither birth nor death, we should not believe that he is devoid of means for mastering life and death. Every problem arises from his ignorance of where he originated, and where he will go after death. Frightened and anxious in his perplexity, he refers every incident of his life to the power of the King of Hell who he thinks will determine his destiny. Thence, this saying; "*If the King of Hell wants you to die at midnight, it is impossible for you to live till next morning*".

We are now living in a period of salvation. If only men understand the truth and follow the way of the Tao, and make efforts to regenerate, they will overcome death and



eliminate reincarnation. Men should cherish their bodies and life on earth. It is not too late for them to awaken and lead a life of spiritual perfection. Say, Yang Ts'ien, be ready for our trip.

Yang Ts'ien: You have attempted to teach of the results of sin and to instill morality in men. Your gesture is really touching, Master.

TK: My responsibility depends on how men behave. The deities, whose compassion is immense, impose on themselves the task of salvaging mankind from woes. Now, come quickly on the dais.

YT: I' m settled. Let's go, Master.

TK: Here we are, at the 2nd Gate, son.

YT: May I ask why do you take me to this place tonight?

TK: First, it's to present our greetings to the King of the Palace, then to visit the prison.

YT: Here is His Majesty the King coming out of his Palace. May I extend my respects to the King and his Mandarins?

The King: May I invite Buddha Tse Kong and Mr. Yang Ts'ien to come into the Palace for a little rest.

TK: I don't think there is any need as time is short. May you take Yang Ts'ien to visit the prisons instead?

The King: As you say. Let's all go!

The General: At your request, sir. If you don't mind following me?

YT: Oh my Lord! How nauseous and fetid the air is here. It smells of feces and urine.

The General: Before us is the prison with the Lake

of Mire, Excrements and Urine. The stench comes from there. I'm really sorry.

YT: The stench is increasing as we are approaching. My breath is going to fail. I just can't breathe, Master. I refuse to go any farther.

TK: Don't be alarmed. I've brought along this precious object. Take it!

YT: What on earth is this, Master?

TK: It's a cage to filter dust. Wear it as a headpiece, and then everything will be fine. The air is purified and all stench dissipates.

YT: Isn't it a miracle! The odor is gone! Now, I see before me a board with these words: Prison with the Lake of Mire, Excrements and Urine. From the lake of the prison I hear wailing and laments. I see human heads jerking up and down, and human arms groping on the water, as if people were swimming.

The General: We have arrived at the prison. Let's come nearer.

YT: Yes, let's go. Master, why don't you smell that dreadful odor?

TK: The smell doesn't exist for me. I've become a Buddha and it can't penetrate my sense of smell which is different from yours. You're a profane man; you still get affected and deceived by sound, beauty and scent.

YT: This lake looks like an immense sea whose shore lies out of sight. In its waters, I see people of all ages and sexes: Young and old, men and women, who submerge and emerge from the water filled with excrement and urine. Every time they open their mouths to utter a cry, they swallow a

quantity of that fetid mixture. How horrible and how nasty! I feel like vomiting, Master.

TK: Control yourself, son. Don't let the stench affect your spirit.

YT: I can't understand what those people have done to suffer such torment?

The General: They are people of a variety of classes: Courtesans who prostituted their chastity for money, female brothel-keepers who led the girls of honest families astray by selling their virginity to pleasure seekers, usurers charging prohibitive interest, and eaters of placenta for fattening.

Their feet were not soiled by the dust of labor, making a living only by deceitful words and by tricking others. Also, there are people who were excessively lustful; false witnesses who said black was white; bankers embezzling money; shareholders vanishing with the funds of commerce; mandarins and government officials accepting bribes; middlemen earning colossal profits; and building contractors exploiting workers and stealing materials. In a word, all those who had a soiled, contaminated body and a filthy mouth are condemned to this prison, so they can taste the flavor of this stinking mixture. They suffer, breathing the stench of excrement and urine every time they open their mouths.

Meanwhile, they are tormented by hunger and thirst, being given no foodstuffs of any kind. Those who fed foul things are now paid with the same. They are victims of the law of causality, and are deservedly suffering its consequences. They are immersed in this layer of excrement and urine, and the more they seek to evade it, the more they sink to the bottom. (1)

YT: How pitiable they are! In the terrestrial world, people are being provided with ultra-modern toilets that are free of odors, and they also have chemicals to destroy the refuse. Wealthy people even spray perfume to chase the stench. But some people's greed leads them to earn foul money, and their handsome appearance often masks a heart filled with feces and urine. If they are condemned to this prison, it is only justice done.

TK: You're right, Yang Ts'ien. Some humans wear fine make up and beautiful garments; they have a neat, decent appearance, but their hearts are full of guile and intrigue. Those speculators and hoarders, for instance, should be classed together with excrements and urine. Though they may lead a temporarily easy life, they will live a different life in hell, feeding on foul things, day in day out.

The General: We shouldn't pity them. These people are no better than latrine-worms which feed on excrement for growth. We advise men on earth to live with integrity and uprightness. They should never use stratagems and tricks to take advantage of other people in monetary affairs. Those who exercise dishonest trades to gain foul money will have to come to this place after their death. They will be judged according to their crimes. At least, they will have to endure punishment until their skin and flesh are disintegrated. Upon completion of their sentences here, they will be transferred to other palaces for judgement of their remaining crimes.

YT: This prison is horrible, indeed.

TK: Well, time goes fast, and it is enough for today, Yang Ts'ien. Let's prepare for the return. General, we feel much obliged for your instructions. Please, convey my thanks

to His Majesty for his warm welcome.

YT: Shall I take off my headpiece, Master?

TK: Wait until you are on the dais, otherwise, you can't tolerate the smell.

YT: Here am I on the lotus dais!

TK: Take off the headpiece, son. We'll return to the Temple. The wind is icy in the World of Darkness, the stench is prevailing, the world's desires are thickening a thousand leagues high, burying a great number of heroes and men of character. I advise human beings to regenerate so they can avoid the spectacles of hell. Here we are. Yang Ts'ien, go regain your body.



Words From Master Luong Si Hang-Vi Kien

(1) They are victims of the law of causality, and are deservedly suffering its consequences. They are immersed in this layer of excrement and urine, and the more they seek to evade it the more they sink to the bottom.

We see that people cannot evade their slyness. They could evade the laws on earth, but their soul is already polluted. If our soul becomes heavier each day, what will happen at death? When we die, we must remain in this heavy sphere, thus we are bound to live in these circumstances. When we earn a living with our guile, we are already accustomed to live in mire, and our flux of energy will automatically adapt to it. When we practice the Vo-Vi method, we purify ourselves every day and we inhale the pure energy every day. At the

beginning, you had difficulty when practicing the Cyclical Breathing Without Retention. Now you are lighter and you can feel when something impure passes in front of you. You would immediately feel the heaviness. As we become lighter every day, we are able to focus our energy on the top of the head. We see that there is neither passion nor intransigence, and we are serene everywhere.

In the future, you will have the occasion to visit the prisons of hell when you have attained purity and lightness through spiritual cultivation. You would think: *“Why do they eat these excrements year after year, but they do not die? Their soul persists.”* So we should try to eat as they do. As we did, we realized that it was really nothing, but we have learned patience and resignation to awaken our consciousness and to liberate ourselves. When we cultivate ourselves spiritually, the more conflicts we encounter, the more we see that we need to awaken our consciousness further. We need to liberate ourselves. We see that our body is impure, and we currently live inside mire, urine and excrements, which are this physical body. As you chew your food past your tongue, it is already fetid. So we already live in that mire, and we should not be afraid.

The more we practice the exercise of Cyclical Breathing, the more we purify ourselves. The impure changes into the pure. Your saliva becomes sweet. The sweet dew is like the shower of dharma. When the shower of dharma bathes your consciousness, and the aura on your head illuminates as you close your eyes within serenity, you will not even notice your breathing, so there is no more stench. When you arrive at that stage, you will start to encounter

the Tao and learn about the Tao. At that time, we will find that the canonical books are invaluable. Regardless of the type of religion on earth, a canonical book is an extraordinary achievement to guide and save mankind. But man continues to err, and nourishes the impure and forgets the pure. We should nourish purity to see our evolution.



How can we prove the impure? Currently, we all strive to perfect ourselves spiritually. Everybody spends efforts to practice the Cyclical Breathing Without Retention. We feel pure and light, we like tidiness and pureness. We like to look at bright and open spaces. We like to listen to words of enlightenment.

However, when we go to work, while we talk and feel light and pure, suddenly, we will meet someone face to face, and we will feel a heavy chest and vibrations on our head. We see how that person carries a heavy burden of impurities. He is no different than urine, mire, and excrements, as his mind harbors thoughts of destruction and wickedness.

Therefore, as Vo-Vi practitioners gradually attain purity and lightness, they will be able to understand the people facing them, measure them, and feel the heaviness in their chest. What should we do in that situation? We should continually invoke “Nam-Mo-A-Di-Da-Phat” in silence in our mind to augment our pure aura and compassionate energy to guide and help our partners. We should pray that they may soon liberate themselves from the impure enchainment in their inner consciousness.

Chapter 12

Visit to the Prison of Hunger and Thirst

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on September 9th, 1976. Leap Year of the Dragon.**

*Happily singing in the soft breeze of spring,
He capers, he dances, he has eyes of youth
The civilized earthly world has decadent roads
Damned souls are trapped in the celestial net.*

Buddha Tse Kong: Until this day, we have had much pain writing the book. For whose happiness have we endured all this pain and care? For whose sake have we consecrated our attention and anxiety? On roads heading in different directions, men and vehicles are rushing and rumbling in full animation and turbulence. This is a sign of material progress and of civilization. However, morality declines from day to day, ways and customs degenerate in depravation. Wails and laments from the souls in the World of Darkness are shaking mountains and valleys in hell. Obeying to the order of God, the Temple of the Sages has undertaken the mission of writing the book “Voyages To Hell”. By depicting the chastisement and the mournful scenes of hell, this book is for the purpose of explaining the truth and showing men the harbor of illusions in which they live. This book is not at all a fictitious novel written for men to read as pastime. They must be aware of its real significance. Yang Ts’ien! Another trip to hell. Make yourself ready.

YT: I am ready, Master. Shall we go?

TK: Remember this. For a profane man like you, it is a providential privilege to get seated on a dais of lotus. You should respect and cherish such a favor... Here we are! Let's go down. Tonight, we're going to visit the Prison of Hunger and Thirst.

YT: This place looks like a wasteland. It's so deserted. Which direction are we taking, Master?

TK: Not far from here, beyond this stretch of bumpy road is the Prison of Hunger and Thirst.

YT: This place is totally deserted. How can the souls enter the prison?

TK: Look to your left. You'll see.

YT: That's it. I see a small path. Two or three buffalo-headed and horse-faced demons are escorting sinful souls.

TK: Let's go to the right and take that path to follow them.

A buffalo-headed guard: These profane folk! Who permits you to come directly here?

TK: Open wide your eyes, and look before it's too late.

YT: This buffalo-headed guard appears ugly and ferocious. He has a spear and a steel net in hand. He seems aggressive. Is he going to attack us?

TK: Do not fear. I'm going to box his ears.

The guard: Who are you? Say it quickly or I'll bind you up like faggots and bring you to the Governor's judgement.

TK: How long have you been enlisted as a guard of hell? You don't seem to know who I am.

The guard: Over two months I carry out orders to the letter. I'm proud of myself. Every living soul without an authorization is arrested. This is my responsibility.

TK: I'm the living Buddha Tse Kong. This gentleman, a disciple of Saint Kwan-Yu, is appointed by the Temple of the Sages to visit hell, and write a book for men's education. We are on our way to the prison of hunger and thirst. If you must know, we are bearers of the Celestial Edict, and here it is. Don't try to block our way. Otherwise, heavy punishment is waiting for you.

The guard: Well, well, this is correct! It's God's order. Let me kneel down to salute the divine order. So you are the very living Buddha people used to call the Mad Monk. I quit the living world not long ago, and didn't have the honor of encountering the Great Buddha. I ask for your pardon, both you and Mr. Yang Ts'ien. If you want to go to the Prison of Hunger and Thirst, you will find it beyond those hills. I'll be your guide.

TK: Perfect. Let's follow him.

YT: Yes. This small road is covered with crushed stones and its surface is full of puddles. A real torment to walk on! The soles of my feet are pierced through by thousands of penetrating needles. Before us, two guards are escorting a woman. One would say she is a rich woman considering her attire. But her feet are chained. What crime led her here?

TK: The well-to-do people in the terrestrial world who enjoyed too good a living, wasting cereal grains and leftovers, and overate during their lives. Now, they are here to learn the anguish of hunger and thirst, and the importance of a morsel of food.

YT: That hill is not too high. It has leafy trees, reeds and climbing plants, similar to earth. On the slope I see a path only wide enough for three persons.

TK: When you come down the slope on the other side, you'll see the Prison of Hunger and Thirst at the bottom of it.

YT: I see the prison. Its four walls of cast-iron are painted black, with bolted doors. Now, we are at the foot of the hill.

The guard: Please wait here, gentlemen. I'm going to announce your arrivals.

YT: I see indistinct characters engraved on a wooden board: "Prison of Hunger and Thirst". It is securely guarded by demons on both sides. The woman we just saw is entering the prison.

The guard: I have notified the Mandarin-Governor. Follow me please.

The Mandarin-Governor: Welcome to Buddha Tse Kong and Mr. Yang Ts'ien. Your visit honors me greatly. I have been tardy in my reception. Please accept my humble apology.

TK: I pray you, Excellency. We ourselves are intrusive visitors. As you must have guessed, the Temple of the Sages received the celestial order to write a book entitled "Voyages To Hell". I was entrusted the task of leading Yang Ts'ien's soul to hell, to observe and collect information for the book. Its aim is to educate mankind. We rely greatly upon your assistance, Excellency.

The Mandarin: Our prison, named "Hunger and Thirst" is a sub-section of the 2nd Palace. I propose to take

Mr. Yang Ts'ien for a visit. Buddha Tse Kong, please take a rest and have some tea.

YT: Shall we go right away, Excellency? This prison is composed of three meter-wide cells. The detainees, though quite decently dressed, look unhealthy, unhappy and pale. They are famished people who are crying and lamenting to the extreme.

The Mandarin: Most of these people were important businessmen in their lifetime. They possessed too much clothing, spent their money just as though it was pebbles without any twinge of conscience. They were completely unfeeling and merciless to needy persons and beggars. After their death, they came to this place. Let me call some of them for you to question.

YT: May I know the reason why you are detained in this prison?

The soul: When alive, I was the proprietor of a big factory. My business went smoothly and I earned a great deal of money. In my business transactions, I associated with wealthy people. I spent most of my days in hotels, restaurants and pleasure-places. For some feasts, I paid thousands of dollars without any bad feeling about the cost. Nevertheless, things were different when I was dealing with the welfare of my employees. I was as hard as a rock. I was stingy. I counted my coins, which caused much rancour among my personnel. If charitable organizations asked for a donation, I disbursed at most 500 dollars, just to get rid of them. Such words as charity, mercy, and sympathy had no meaning to me.

To the beggars, needy friends or kinfolks who came

to my door, I had my servants chase them away, feigning an absence. When at home, I allowed myself to enjoy the rarest, most exquisite dishes, no matter what they cost.

Moreover, I maintained many concubines, affording each of them a separate house with all comforts. In this way, I spent tens of thousands of dollars monthly, viewing the fact as quite natural. Two years ago, I died of hypertension and was condemned to this prison of hunger and thirst. Although I still have my western clothing, I have no more chance to relish the delicacies of yore. Each week, I am tossed a bowl of vegetables or of porridge instead of rice. Three days without food leaves me exhausted and unconscious. The buffalo-headed and horse-faced demons bring water to resuscitate me and then the torment resumes. Now, I have an empty stomach, my bowels get twisted in unbearable fits. Gentlemen, I pray you to toss me anything to eat. I'm starving! ⁹

9 Do you see clearly the law of equilibrium? On earth, people say: *"I do not have enough for a living; I do not have enough to eat; I need to prosper and sell more; I must expand my business; I need to gain a lot of profits; I must cheat others a lot in order to keep the money in my hands instead of other people's hands."* They do not see that money ill-gotten is money ill-spent. The monetary possessions that you currently have belong to heaven, and one day, you could be penniless. Those of you who left Vietnam knew clearly. Before, you had money, but then all was taken away, and you are now penniless. Therefore, we should not scurry around because of money and fall into the sin of greediness and abandon our meditation practice and spiritual cultivation. We would have to pay for this sin in the future, and it will be difficult to alleviate it. (Master Luong Si Hang–Vi Kien)

The Mandarin: You, brute! Come here. Don't disturb people. You don't have to moan, since you had profited too much from your life. Now, do confess your crimes to Mr. Yang Ts'ien.

The soul: I was the wife of a rich man. My husband was an owner of a building enterprise and we prospered quite rapidly. We changed our houses frequently, shifting to larger ones each time. Possessing too much money and not knowing what to do, I began to play cards day and night, totally neglecting my duty as a wife. I made appointments with my male and female friends in night-clubs, and was on a spree all night long, incapable of restraining myself. As far as relief to the wretched and charity activities are concerned, I was cold and completely heedless.

After a lifetime of amusement and debauchery, I died, and the Mandarin-Governor was merciless to me. He condemned me to this prison. I am terribly hungry and am dying of thirst. It's beyond my endurance.

YT: The face of this woman shows pain and suffering. She is chewing her fingers. Hunger and thirst must be tormenting her terribly.

The Mandarin: Back to your cell!

YT: One thing I can't understand, Excellency. All these detainees, men and women in different cells, wear fine clothing. Why do they behave just like beggars on the roadside, with dishevelled hair, crying and moaning, chewing their fingers to appease hunger?

The Mandarin: All those people who destroy the properties of God, waste nutritious foods, and foolishly

lavish their money; all those who seek to enjoy themselves, giving no alms to the poor or donating no shares to charity organizations; the man who forsakes his legitimate wife to live in a nice home with his concubine or his lover; the woman who unexpectedly becomes a popular singer, as we find in many places, and who despises and drops her husband to freely enjoy ephemeral fame; and all those who change their hearts and behavior as they get richer, will come down to hell to endure painful punishment. This will serve as a warning to men in the living world.

The people endowed with wealth and honor are advised to share a little of their riches to assist other people. They should not lavish their money only for personal enjoyment. If they deal passionately in pleasures, their happiness will end and it will be followed by woe. The present-day wealth and honor of theirs are the fruit of their former lives, during which they had been known to regenerate and accumulate merit. Let them be aware of that. If they know how to behave in this life, avoiding lust, helping other people from danger, rescuing the wretched or printing canonical books for educating mankind, they not only will enjoy a good reputation but their souls will also rise to the kingdom of happiness, or they will be worshipped in a temple by large numbers of people.

TK: Well, I think it's enough for tonight, Yang Ts'ien. How about going home?

The Mandarin: In fact, it's growing late. Again, I hope you forget my shortcomings.

YT: We are grateful for your explanations. They are quite clear. We have to take leave now.

TK: Quickly to the lotus dais. Here it is, the Temple.
Come down regain your body.



Words From Master Luong Si Hang–Vi Kien

In this society, we see very clearly: People only eat a little, but they buy a lot. Then they would throw the food into the garbage bin. The waste that we see in Australia presently could save so many families in our country, a country of hunger and suffering. We must educate our character and not follow the example of waste from those who have not yet understood the spiritual Way. When we understand the spiritual Way, we are content with moderation. We should not be greedy to avoid being punished by our sin in the future. Since our soul is eternal, we will certainly be judged. If we claim that death is the end, then we can do whatever we want. But we know that after death the soul persists; otherwise, there will be no hell to judge and condemn the souls.

Chapter 13

Visit to the Bridge over the Pit of Snakes and to the Burning Dancing Ground

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested on September 19th,
1976. Leap Year of the Dragon.**

*Sinful souls, gone astray, gather beneath the bridge,
Falling into the karmic net for not going straightway.
They should have followed the right direction
Toward self-cultivation and good deeds to avoid dismay.*

Buddha Tse Kong: The disciples of the Temple of the Sages have recognized the path of truth and have converted to religious faith. In spite of pain and trouble, they persevere in their devotion, and this is a most encouraging sign. They have received an order from God to write a book on hell to educate humans. I am happy to participate in Yang Ts'ien's sacred mission by accompanying him.

YT: I express my deep gratitude for what you have taught me, Venerable Master. All of the disciples of the Temple of the Sages have been offering soul and body for the recovery of virtuous culture, by printing books to teach morality to men. I pray to God to provide protection and reduce the pains for my co-religionists.

TK: A devout religious person is always thwarted by obstacles. From the remotest of my hiding places, I have

always tried to alter and soothe the scheme of the celestial mechanism in order to help you proceed with less discord. Now, we're going to have a visit in hell

YT: I am on the dais, Master.

TK: Here we are. Get down.

YT: Where are we, Master? Why those unceasing wails, cries, and laments? Before us, there is a bridge. People walk on it. They slip and fall, uttering deafening cries.

TK: This bridge is called "Bridge Over The Pit of Snakes". Most of the dead have to pass over it.

YT: But it's swinging terribly. One could say it's a suspension bridge. Buffalo-headed and horse-faced demons are seen escorting sinful souls to the middle of the bridge, and pushing them off. Why, it's cruel!

The General (guarding the bridge): I've just received a message from the Pontiff-King of the Underworld announcing the visit of living Buddha Tse Kong and the saint scribe Yang Ts'ien from the Temple of the Sages. Excuse my delay.

TK: Don't mention it, General. We are the ones who disturb you.

The General: Follow me, please. I'll lead you to the bridge.

YT: I shall not come up. To look at it from below is enough.

TK: Come, come! The General will not push you, you know that. You have nothing to fear.

YT: So be it. But hold my hand securely, will you, Master? This bridge is swaying. I may fall.

TK: Of course, I hold your hand. Let's go!



YT: Mercy upon me! Here below, vipers and serpents are teeming. There are thousands and thousands of snakes of all kinds! I also see a dragon the size of a pillar. It is gaping its steel-like jaws, and sticking out its blood-red tongue. As soon as a man falls in the pit, the snakes rush and devour him in no time. The screams of the victims are horrible. I can't stand it. Can we go Master?

The General: Calm down, Mr. Yang Ts'ien. Below this bridge is a pit full of venomous snakes. All those people with wicked hearts who misused other people's money, or damaged young girls' chastity, created scandal or intrigue, killed or caused disasters to others for amusement, have their entrails transformed into vipers, after their death. Sinful souls who reach this bridge are petrified and paralyzed, and two guards push them down as prey for the serpents. The victims struggle to find a means of escape, but the dragon is there to snatch and crush them to shreds with its iron jaws.

YT: It's frightful. The mere sight of those vipers is enough to make a timid man swoon at the middle of the bridge and fall into the pit. Any push would be superfluous. He can't control his senses, and fall down the way a ripe fruit does.

TK: Let's walk to the other end. Today, there are too many sinful souls. They fill up the bridge, some crying, others lamenting; the sight is sickening. Well, it's their own fault. They committed sins when alive, and now they are seen trembling and falling into the vipers' jaws.

YT: Let's hurry to the other end. I am chilled with fright. Now I know about the bridge over the pit of snakes. There is no bannister to lean upon; the sinful souls, with

numbed hands and tottering legs, have no strength left at the sight of the vipers.

TK: Your liver and your bile are too weak. I'm going to give you three of my soothing pills. Swallow them and you'll regain your color, and you will stop perspiring. Say goodbye to the General. We are to go elsewhere.

YT: Your information is really interesting, General. We have to go. And thank you, General.

The General: Good bye, gentlemen.

YT: I'm ready to follow you, Master.

TK: We have arrived. Get down. This prison, called "Prison with Burning Dancing-Ground", was recently constructed. It is under the administration of the 2nd Palace.

The Mandarin Governor: My greetings to the living Buddha Tse Kong and to the saint scribe Yang Ts'ien. I've just received instruction from the Pontiff-King of the Underworld about your visit. Please come in.

YT: Please accept our thanks, Excellency. This hall is well-lit by a soft colourful light, and I hear the noise of feet jumping, accompanied by piercing shrieks and heart-rending cries. May I ask you what it is about?

TK: The people detained in this prison were professional taxi-girls and inveterate dancers. Let's go have a look.

YT: The house is full inside. I see men, young and old, decently dressed in western clothing, and young ladies in thin, gaudy silk gowns. There are also many foreigners of different nations and races. Each time they set their feet on the dancing ground, I see them bounce up, screaming at the top of their voices. All those couples are clinging to each

other and they hop, and jump the best they can. May I ask who they are?

The Mandarin: Well, the women were professional dancers in their lifetime. They did not behave correctly and made dancing a means for illicit behavior. After they died, they were detained in this prison where they can enjoy the pleasure of dancing in hell.

The difference here is that the dancers don't have the same feelings of ecstasy and self-satisfaction nor the rapture of enjoying feminine beauty and bewitching perfume as they did before, in the living world. In this prison, the dance floor is made of iron heated to a high temperature which produces a red glow. The men and women setting their feet on it bounce and gambol pitifully while roaring with pain. They had enjoyed such a good time in their dancing nights on earth. It's quite normal for them to dance here, in hell. They don't have to give up their amusements of yore. The soles of their feet are roasted on the dance floor, swelling and putrefying. They are doing wonderful dance-steps.

YT: You have repeated the teachings of morality, Excellency. If people adore dancing when in life, they can dance to their heart's content when in death. Justice is done. But there is one thing to notice: As times change, vogues change accordingly. By itself, dancing is no crime. It is also an exercise to preserve one's body and spirit.

Now, if every dancer is to come here for chastisement, don't you think the laws of hell are unjust!

The Mandarin: I said it. Not every dancer has to come here. Only those people are punished who dance in debauchery, not as a means for exercise, but rather for

enjoying women's beauty are punished. Those young women who adore mundane flirtations, offering their bodies to the embraces and caresses of men and gaining foul money; those who accept offers after dancing, to go to hidden dens for fornication; also those young girls who disobey their parents by frequenting ill reputed amusement-houses and spending whole nights dancing and forgetting themselves in lust and love games.

On the other hand, for the practice of good styles of dance, choreography, ballet, and quadrille, for instance, for the sake of fortifying the body and spirit, or for esthetics, this prison is not for them. In a word, the detainees are lustful people and had elements of immorality. I advise the human beings to reserve their money and health for wholesome entertainment, if they want to avoid dancing on this burning dance floor.

YT: Well said, Excellency. As fashions change with time, one should adopt them with lucidity. We have our methods of strengthening our bodies, and foreigners in various nations have their own. Only detained in hell are the people who take advantage of dancing for dishonest acts.

TK: Time is up, Yang Ts'ien. Well, I appreciate your hurry up to the lotus dais, Yang Ts'ien. Yang Ts'ien, the dais.

YT: I'm coming. My sincere thanks to you, Excellency.

TK: Here is the Temple. Come down, son. Your body is waiting.



Words From Master Luong Si Hang–Vi Kien

Many people superficially read the book “Voyages To Hell” and say that every deed is a sin. This is not correct. When we act in a righteous manner, in accord with the circumstances, there is no sin. On the other hand, if we are overly greedy and profit from others, this is a sin. There are also moral rules for doing business. Similarly, there are moral rules for conducting government, and for undertaking military actions if the direction is based on a righteous principle.

When we are ignorant, we would say: *“Oh dear! Whatever I read in this book is terrifying, and I dare not read anymore.”* As indicated clearly in the book, there is no sin when we dance as an exercise to be healthy and to regulate our nervous system. The tailors here do the same. After sewing for a while, they stand up to jump, to dance, and to move a little bit. There is no sin! Many people say after reading the book “Voyages To Hell”: *“Oh, what they do looks like dancing, so they will go to hell.”* This is not correct. I dance to be healthy, so that I can continue my work and help society. This spirit is worthy of praise.

We should maintain the spirit of sacrifice to help society and preserve the health of our body, which is a gift from God. We should regulate our body and not break it. When you work too much, when you overwork like an ox till death, you only destroy your body, and do not truly do constructive work. Suppose that one can live normally for another ten years to help mankind, but if one shortens it

to three years, what can one do? You must have a regular schedule and all activities must be moderate. We set aside time to meditate, to practice the exercises of Concentration of Spiritual Energy, Cyclical Breathing Without Retention, and Meditative Contemplation to develop the energy in our inner organs and inner consciousness. Every day, we go to work with the spirit of full dedication and service to mankind, and not with the thought that we only work if we are paid a salary. No, we should not think that way.

As Vo-Vi practitioners, we must serve others with full dedication. When we promise to do something, we must do it with full dedication. This means to practice the Tao; otherwise, we will descend to hell. If we only work a little, but want to gain a lot, we must be re-educated, and in order to be re-educated, we must descend to hell to learn again.



Chapter 14

Visit to the Prison of Ice

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on September 29th, 1976. Leap Year of the Dragon.**

*The chill winter grips him, shivering and shaken,
With unswerving will, he is beatified and firm as rock,
Green mountains and valleys change to white-carpeted
Progressing upward, his will for perfection is undeterred.*

Buddha Tse Kong: Autumn is passing, rigorous winter is coming around. The weather seems to change unusually this year. A host of people are ill because of it. Today, I'm going to take you to the Prison of Ice. We are to encounter squalls of wind that freeze your bones. Do you think you can stand that?

YT: Gracious Master, I've just caught a cold. It's frosty today. Maybe we can postpone our trip to the Prison of Ice until some later day, and visit some other place. What do you think, Master?

TK: Don't joke, son. We have already announced our visit to the Prison of Ice, haven't we? It is impossible to change our minds at the last minute. If it is the bitter cold that frightens you, I'll give you three warming-pills. Take them, and stop worrying.

YT: I'm greatly thankful, Master, for your miracle pills. I've taken them. Good gracious! I feel as if I were sitting by the fire place. The cold is gone.

TK: Fine. Now, the lotus dais is waiting.

YT: I'm on it. Shall we start?

TK: Here we come. Get down, son.

YT: Before us, there is no one, except for a snow-capped high mountain. The snow seems fresh. No vegetation except some skeletal trees, leafless, are found here and there. Where are we, Master?

TK: We are a short distance from the Prison of Ice. The mountain you see over there is crowned with snow all year round. It is extremely cold. Since we didn't take the path to hell, we see no one. Besides, we sat on the lotus that flew in space. Follow me to the left slope of the mountain and you'll see the Prison of Ice.

YT: This deserted area has no single path. All vegetation dies because of ice. Everything has withered and died. I feel colder as I come nearer. Is it because the miracle pills have lost their effect?

TK: By no means is their efficiency reduced. Remember this: The deities' miracle-pills all have a back-and-forth effect. Just wait a little while, and you'll feel warm again. You have enough stamina to endure the cold for three days. Rest assured. You don't think I'm going to let you freeze to death, do you?

YT: I see a row of cells built of wood and painted black. On the roof is the immaculate white of snowflakes. In front, two stakes support a board with this inscription "Prison of Ice". Opposite the prison, I see a narrow alley that joins with the cells. Why don't I see any furniture in the cells?

TK: This prison is furnished with ice. The sinful

souls are benumbed and frozen in it. There is no means of escape, which explains the absence of furniture.

YT: On the alley, I see some guards escorting ten men and women. Are they led here for punishment?

TK: Nothing is truer. The Mandarin-Governor and the General are coming. Make yourself ready, Yang Ts'ien. We are going to greet them.

YT: My respects to His Excellency and to the General. I have received the order to visit hell and I rely on your assistance.

The Mandarin: Welcome to you. I've just received the Pontiff of Hell's instructions announcing the visit of Buddha Tse Kong and Mr. Yang Ts'ien. You are writing a book to teach men about morality. Please, come this way to the reception hall.

YT: Thank you, Excellency.

TK: We'd rather go straight to the prison, General. No need to enter the reception hall.

The Mandarin: If that's what you want, gentlemen.

YT: The Prison of Ice is located between two mountains. In the background, there are lakes which look like swimming pools stretching long distance. In the lakes, many men and women are seen in underwear, the lower part of their bodies immersed and hidden by ice. One and all, they look blue with cold, their lips are black, their arms trembling. They have no strength left for crying, nor for groaning. In front of me, two elderly men are staring at me with imploring eyes. They seem to have something to say. Please, Master! Don't you have any means of rescuing them from the icy cold that stiffens their bodies?

The Mandarin: I will have some of them come up to answer your questions.

YT: Please do. Now, respectable old man. How do you feel in this lake?

The soul: With all that ice on the tops of mountains, and this snow on the ground, I have only this thin underwear, I don't have the strength to speak. All my body is frozen. I think I'm going to faint.

The Mandarin: General, bring him some ginger water to help him recover his vital essence.

The General: Drink this, and confess the crimes of your life. They are going to write a book to advise the living men not to imitate you, if they don't want to avoid falling in hell.

The soul: When alive, I had the hobby of collecting stamps, ancient coins, and antique items of all kinds. At the age of 45, I made friends with a man who had the same hobby as mine. We were a pair of close companions. We spent hours drinking tea, making confidence and discussing things. Our friendship was very intimate.

One day, as he had to travel abroad, my friend proposed to entrust me with his treasure of stamps, ancient coins and antique objects, lest they should be stolen during his absence. In a moment of greed, I took possession of all his fortune and hid it at a place away from home. Upon his return, the man came to reclaim his entrusted properties. Quite brazenly, I told him: "I am really sorry and confused, dear friend. Just a fortnight ago, a burglar broke into my house and stole all your stuff. All of my precious collections are gone also". My friend was thunderstruck upon hearing my words. He pulled

his hair, pestered me, fretted day and night, and cursed his fate endlessly. In the long run, he resignedly accepted the loss of his treasure.

At the age of 56, I died of liver cancer. Arriving in hell, my soul found out that the Mirror Revelator of Past Crimes unveiled my every act even identifying the place I concealed the collection. With bent head, I had to admit my misdeeds, and the King of the 2nd Palace condemned me to 5 years of imprisonment in this Prison of Ice. Day by day, I suffer the cold that freezes and numbs my body. It's extremely painful. I have deep remorse but I think it is too late. Could you by chance intervene with the Mandarin-Governor to deliver me from this torment?

YT: May I solicit from you some reduction for his pains?

The Mandarin: We are dealing with the laws of hell, you know, Mr. Yang Ts'ien. Without the King of the Palace's instructions, I have no authority to do anything. All I can do is to give him another gulp of ginger water and that's all. Let him be satisfied with that, and cease his supplications. Now, interrogate this old woman on the action that led her to this prison.

YT: This elderly woman is stiff with cold. She lets herself drop on the ground. How can I ask her questions? I propose that she should be given a gulp of that ginger-water to get revived.

The General: Drink this quickly then answer Mr. Yang Ts'ien's questions. Should you disobey, your punishment would be more severe.

The soul: Alas! I suffer more than I can stand. This

piercing cold is akin to freezing corpses in the morgue of the living world. Look at my body. It is all green with cold, and my blood is clotted. In my life, I was a brothel keeper. I accommodated a dozen young girls, and we lived in a den with shabby rooms. Among the girls, there were professional whores, daughters of reputable families, and students playing truant.

Daily I forced them to entertain the clients and if they refused to comply, I locked them up and had the hooligans punish them. Many of the girls had been ransomed by their parents and by the clients who sought to deliver them from the yoke of prostitution and restore their freedom. From the ransomers, I demanded handsome amounts of money, and those who did not have enough money to pay for their liberty were required to leave their youth in my den of carnal pleasures.

At the age of 51, because of debauchery and excess use of opium and alcoholic drinks, I died of cerebral hemorrhage. Only upon arrival in hell did I know my longevity had been curtailed by ten years by the Pontiff of Hell. My karma was too weighty; I was first condemned to five years in the prison with the Lake of Mire, Excrements and Urine, then transferred to this Prison of Ice for another 31 years. Upon termination of my sentence, I don't know if I will be sent to other prisons. My present is disastrous, my future may reserve other pains for me, and I hate myself enormously for having created such a bad karma.

The Mandarin: Now, it's your turn to narrate your crimes. Make her drink some ginger-water, General, so she can regain a little of her vital essence and talk coherently.

The General: At your request. She has drunk her cold proof water.

YT: Young lady, may I ask why you are here.

The soul: I blush while telling you this. When I was 18 years old, I was a member of a group of singers and dancers. We gave performance at various places. Usually, I performed my show of striptease to attract the spectators. Afterwards, in a period of crisis, the group was disbanded. I became a wench and entertained my clients with my old striptease show. I made acquaintance with a wealthy businessman who rented a separate house for me to live with him as his concubine. When I was 36 years of age, we did not live in perfect harmony; my husband and I were separated. At one time, sadly discouraged and depressed by my solitude and incapacity, I committed suicide with poison.

Upon my death, I was detained in the Citadel of Premature Death for 5 years, then transferred to this Prison of Ice where I have lived for 3 years. I still have 20 years to go. At present, my pain is unbearable. Each day, my body and limbs are frozen; the icy cold pierces my heart. I am deeply repentant, but there is nothing I can do. I advise young girls in the terrestrial world to never take the path I have taken.

The Mandarin: This sinful soul did not pursue an honest trade in her life. She lived on her nude body and sexual intercourse, therefore, she destroyed the ways and customs of society. She did not like to wear decent clothing. After her death, she was condemned to this Prison of Ice to experience the icy cold temperature. She is trying to get more clothing against the cold but she can't find any. When people commit a sin, they pay for it. She committed other sins too. Upon

expiration of her sentence here, she will be sent to other prisons for judgement. Let the girls on earth consider her example! General, take these souls back to the prison.

YT: I see a white veil of fog evaporating from the prison, just like smoke. And the air begins to grow colder.

TK: That is the cold smoke and air emanating from the prison.

The Mandarin: All those who steal properties entrusted to them by others; keep brothels and prevent loose women from changing their life to be respectable citizens, disregard local produce, and wear only imported silks to show off their wealth. The money they spend lavishly and foolishly can be given to provide needy people with warm clothes against the cold. Women whose dresses lay bare their backs, bellies, and thighs, intentionally exhibiting the secret parts of their bodies to allure the male sex, and all these people who don't fear the cold and are slaves of ornaments will have to come to the Prison of Ice and experience some coldness.

TK: Time is running short. We have to return to the Temple.

YT: My deep thanks to His Excellency and to the General. I hope to see you again.

The Mandarin: So long, gentlemen.

TK: To the lotus dais, Yang Ts'ien.

YT: All set, Master. Shall we go?

TK: Here is the Temple. Go re-occupy your body.



Words From Master Luong Si Hang–Vi Kien

When we finished reading this passage, we clearly understood: All things come from our will, and once they are born, we must carry the consequences.

Why do we cultivate ourselves spiritually today? We perfect ourselves spiritually so that we may understand and wisely educate our twelve viscera. We practice the Cyclical Breathing Without Retention to thoroughly understand the original principle of our five organs, which represent the five elements Metal, Wood, Water, Fire, and Earth. They contain the five colors morphing into myriad characters: anger, passion, sadness, and self-pity, etc. If we do not use the original energy of God and Buddhas to regulate our inner organs, we have no hope to correct our character and our consciousness. If we speak of spiritual cultivation, but do not practice to regulate our inner organs, we do not truly practice spiritual perfection.

You have a very good opportunity now with the practice of the Vo-Vi method. Whether anyone claims to practice better than you do, whether that person can sit and meditate for three or four hours, and whether he or she practices the breathing exercises a lot or a little, you should make efforts at any price. You will develop yourselves a little bit every day. You will see your dark characters more clearly every day such as your anger and passions. Do not expect to see your good characters. Let's see our bad characters. Then you will point the finger to yourselves, and know that you have to correct your bad characters. Doing so, you will make

constant progress and you will advance toward infinity. You will not fail. It will be valuable if you succeed to find your bad characters. Hell will not need to fill up with many people in the future. You do not need to be locked up in hell because you already repent your mistakes. We must find our bad habits and bad characters. We must sacrifice them. We should no longer nurture them, and then we will no longer fall prey to them in the future. Our Vo-Vi method is a method of prevention, but we must practice. Don't say that since I perfect myself spiritually, I can avoid my bad characters. If you do not practice with your own efforts, how can you avoid them? We must practice because we are in a school to learn to be a human on this earth. We undergo the stages of birth, aging, illness, and death, or materialization, stabilization, destruction and annihilation, but we are unaware of our inner consciousness and our inner organs. We possess this physical body, but we do not understand the original principle of this body.

We have learned at the seminar "A DI DA" how to analyze and dissect our inner consciousness and inner organs. They are not at all ordinary, but infinitely subtle. There are the twelve viscera, and thousands of sentient beings to cooperate with you. But your soul or your lucidity carries the responsibility. Therefore, your soul is important. The soul is the sinner. When your body is agitated, the soul is the sinner. Hence, we must regulate our body, rectify our mind and our character to enlighten our mind and see our character. We must see our mistakes, so that we do not repeat them, and we must strive to advance further and to learn more in order

to perceive the supernatural civilization and its constant development.

Have you seen how the material develops on earth? A piece of wood becomes an object of decoration in a home. Similarly, our consciousness should also transform itself. We must advance. Our commitment to achieve spiritual virtue and regeneration should advance in accordance with the modern times. When you practice the Cyclical Breathing Without Retention, you inhale the pure energy to fill up the navel, the chest, up to the head. Every day, you exert yourselves a little bit more, and your breath will become longer each day. The longer you can inhale and exhale, the greater serenity you will achieve, and the more serene you are, the easier you will be able to propel your energy. You are no longer jammed in the impure sphere and do not need to register in hell. You will advance toward the sphere of purity exactly as the canonical books have explained the way of spiritual cultivation.

How can we return to serenity? We must release the karma of heart to return to serenity. If you do not use the original will of Heaven and Earth to release the impurities in your inner consciousness and inner organs as well as in the center of your five organs, how can you return to serenity even if you claim to release your heart-karma? Isn't it correct that we must practice? We must work in order to liberate ourselves. If we do not spend efforts, we cannot release the impure. There is neither a Saint nor an Immortal who will descend on earth to release the karma for you. You create your karma on your own. To be violent, angry or resentful, means to create karma. Now if you liberate yourselves and

are no longer violent, angry or resentful, you will already have released your karma.

What do we aim to achieve? What are we holding? We hold on to the karma of purity from God and Buddhas, the karma of love and forgiveness. This is the eternal weapon of love and compassion, and we will no longer be blocked.

You have been either a father or a mother, and see that all mothers love their children. There is no mother who would not forgive her child, even if she scolds her child, she would forgive and love her child immensely. In her deep consciousness, she is aware of her highest power. Today, we cultivate ourselves spiritually and practice the Cyclical Breathing Without Retention to deeply explore our highest power, i.e., our ability to return to our true nature and our inherent aura. When your head is brightly illuminated, is there a reason for you to fight and argue with an ordinary person? No, you know about love and compassion, you have suffered a lot before achieving your aura of wisdom; you have suffered a lot before being able to see the serenity in your inner consciousness, so you must nurture patience and resignation.

When you see your kind mother, you realize how much patience and resignation she has had to endure to welcome you into this world. As a baby, you lay next to your lovely mother, and your mother has had to be extremely patient to raise you into a responsible adult. It is not an easy task to raise a child into a wise adult. Your mother has learned patience and resignation. She represents the virtue of patience and resignation in your family in order for you to have a comfortable life presently. Now we look at God and Buddhas

and realize the extreme patience and resignation they had to endure so that we may learn and discover the supernatural philosophy. For example, we are currently listening to the “Voyages To Hell” and practice a spiritual method to analyze and understand our own mistakes. Isn’t it the patience and resignation of God and Buddhas, which allows us to repent our mistakes to return to ourselves, and eventually we will offer a beautiful lotus to them, which is our serene heart?

We cultivate ourselves spiritually in order to return to a serene heart. At first, you meditate for 5 minutes, then 10 minutes, 20 minutes, and then, at times, you meditate for one hour, 2 hours, or 3 hours. You have attained the serenity of the low sphere in order to be able to sit quietly. If the low sphere is agitated, you can only sit for 5 minutes and want to stand up. Many young spiritual adepts encounter such challenges. When they want to sit for one hour, sensual desires would force them to quit. In this way, we can clearly distinguish the low sphere and the high sphere.

With our Vo-Vi method, you mentally invoke the mantra “Nam-Mo-A-Di-Da-Phat” to focus on the top of your head, which is the center of the true consciousness, while the heart of flesh and blood is the profane one. The Shakyamuni Buddha succeeded when the aura developed on his head. At that time, he was free of sorrows and worries. He practiced in an agitated forest surrounded by ferocious animals, and everywhere, impure energies could overcome him any time while even eating and drinking were not available. He had to endure innumerable humiliations, and persevered in extreme patience and resignation, in order to become enlightened.

Today, we have the support of civilization and lack

nothing. We have tapes to record our sounds to remind us. If we practice a little every day, we will also gradually advance on the path to meet Buddha. The World Above always wants to guide and save us, and only waits for us to practice. From day to night, we inhale the pure energy of God and Buddhas, and this is not an ordinary fact. Without the pure energy, how can we be alive? This energy is an infinite wonder. The more we inhale, the more we can take in, and the more we breathe in, the more serene we become. The more we breathe in, the more we become conscious of our mistakes. Isn't it light that enters our inner consciousness? The more we cultivate ourselves spiritually, the more we see our mistakes. Isn't it the sacred fire that burns our impurities, and forms a perfumed altar in our inner consciousness?

The more we cultivate ourselves spiritually, the more we see from the canonical books that we just walk like toddlers while others have gone very far. Let's practice to go forward, and then we will be able to write from our results and our successes for the future generations to follow. They will be saved through their own spiritual practice and not by praying and asking for help. They will not cheat themselves and betray themselves any longer. You have already marched partway, and I wish that you would continue to spend efforts to practice further. This book is a precious resource to help us clearly comprehend that we must correct ourselves to be free of sins. We must correct ourselves to attain wisdom and we must correct ourselves to attain serenity.

Chapter 15

Visit to the Third Gate

Meeting with The King of The Palace

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on October 9th, 1976. Leap Year of the Dragon.**

*The spiritual path is expanded by means of books
Portraying hell with lively descriptions
Honored guests are welcomed to the underworld
Why be intimidated if our conscience is faultless*

Buddha Tse Kong: We visit the Third Palace today. Among the prisons of the ten palaces, we need to visit only the main ones, those most typical. If we want to visit every prison of every palace, it would take us many, many years, but the “Voyages To Hell” has to be published as soon as possible with a view to warn and educate human beings. We are to write only the most important parts. Yang Ts’ien, are you ready?

YT: I’m coming, Master. Shall we go?

TK: We have arrived. Get down.

YT: Ahead, I see a placard hung up high in front of a storied house just like an advertising board before a store. On the board I see a red bulletin. Many people, civilians and servicemen are reading it. Let’s go and see what it is about.

TK: I know what it is about. Go and see if you want to.

YT: Why were those people frightened at my approach and they seemed to move away?

TK: Because they knew you were a profane man coming from the living world and you brought with you the Celestial Edict. They moved away for fear of jostling you. What did you read on that red bulletin?

YT: It was an Order of God that read as follows: “By proxy of the Celestial Emperor, the Pontiff of the Kingdom of Darkness prescribes the following:

This day, I, Celestial Emperor, from my Kingdom in the Ethereal Heights, administrator of 3000 worlds, exercise my power of life and death over the nine regions of darkness and the six ways of transmigration. I recall the time when original souls began to incarnate on earth. In prehistoric times, man was so simple and ingenious, endowed with a mild and sincere nature. He lived and returned to the heavens after his death. Hell, in those times, was nonexistent.

During the Middle Ages, man became more cruel, his celestial heart was day by day soiled by the impurities of the earth. Natural law was upset, unsound amusements multiplied and thence hell was created. With the exception of the people who know how to preserve humanity, fidelity, civility, rationality and loyalty, the rest of the people are wallowing in the six ways of existence, namely, the world of deities, world of human beings, world of combatant devils, world of hungry devils, world of hell, and world of brute. Now we are in a phase where human beings are extremely depraved. Their hearts are obsessed by passions. They commit many atrocities. Villainy, guile and lust increase. The natural original essence of their souls gifted by heaven and earth has degenerated, and they attract to themselves disasters and unending woe.



I, Supreme God, am merciful. I can't look helplessly at the human race sinking in perdition. I have had an authentic religious way disseminated in an effort to minimize catastrophes, and to salvage the honest men. The Temple of the Sages in Tai Chu dependent on the administration of the Heavenly Southern Sector, received my order to propagate the religious faith, on one hand, by inheriting and perpetuating the morality of Confucius-Mencius, on the other hand, by embracing orthodox Buddhism for the sake of redressing virtues and religious culture for the salvation of human beings. So far, this temple has acquired magnificent results. My goal is to help human beings recognize the realities in hell, so I order the Temple of the Sages to edit a rare book entitled "Voyages To Hell".

To enable it to accomplish this divine mission, I commanded the living Buddha Tse Kong to lead saint-scribe Yang Ts'ien's soul to hell, visiting its ten palaces, and depicting the horrors he will have seen and heard. While travelling to hell for his discovery of truth, Yang Ts'ien will also contribute to the elimination of men's superstition. During all the time they are dedicated to their divine task, the living Buddha Tse Kong and Yang Ts'ien must be warmly welcomed by the civilian and military officials of the ten gates, and provided every type of necessary information for the preparation of the precious book.

This edict must be obeyed to the letter of every division of hell. Any infringement upon it is submect to severe punishment. This day, I give my order.

The 15th day of 8th month, year of the Dragon."

YT: It is thus an order of the Celestial Emperor to the gates of hell.

TK: Nothing truer. For a book of the caliber of

“Voyages To Hell”, a single order of God to the living world is inadequate. Hell, too, must be aware of it. Let’s hurry to meet the King of Third Palace.

YT: Is the Third Palace far from here? On the road, I see only sinful souls and guards coming and going. No gate in sight.

TK: Not very far. To save time, come quickly on the dais.

YT: I am up, Master. Let’s be going.

TK: Here we are. Get down, son. The Third Palace is right there. Go present your greetings to the King of the Palace and his retinue of civilian and military dignitaries.

YT: My respects to His Majesty and to the dignitaries of the Third Palace. We have come here in search of information for our book and hope to be honored with your assistance.

The King: Be on your feet, Mr. Yang Ts’ien. Please, don’t act ceremonial. I have often heard of your Temple which is wholly devoted to the propagation of holy laws. It has converted a large number of bad elements, and guided many honest people in the religious way. My admiration for your temple has always been great. Well, gentlemen, if you care to come in for a little rest and some talk.

YT: I am really touched by your compliments, sir. From the time our temple came into existence, all disciples have combined their efforts, representing God in the role of educators and have done their best to accomplish this divine mission. We are still far from deserving compliments.

TK: Don’t be so ceremonious, Yang Ts’ien. Let’s come in for some rest.

The King: Won’t you take a seat? These tables and chairs of wood are certainly not comparable to the soft easy



chairs in the terrestrial world. Serve some tea, General.

YT: I am really thankful, sir. This room is furnished with antique pieces of furniture. They look very simple. On the walls are hung pictures drawn in Chinese ink. I see many religious books, too.

The King: Right. In their moments of leisure, the dignitaries of my palace used to come here for day-long discussions. They were virtuous, regenerated personalities in their life who were designated to serve in hell. They are free to do what they want. To come down to hell does not necessarily mean to be forced to suffer pain and misfortune. Hell is similar to a jail on earth. The transgressors are the only ones to undergo punishment. The personnel under my power are identical to those of the living world. They work as freely as possible. The man whose heart was not wicked and who performed charitable deeds in his life, has his soul welcomed in hell with all the honors that are due to him. I suggest living men be aware of that. If they ventured to do dishonest acts that deviated from religious laws, they would be chained by the demons, mercilessly flogged by the guards, and forced to carry pillories on their heads.

TK: We don't have much time left, Yang Ts'ien. We should think of going home. I am grateful, sir, for your instructions, and we hope to have the honor of seeing you again.

The King: The pleasure is mine.

TK: Now, let's return to the Temple.

YT: We are constantly in haste. We can't do much with fragments of time, Master.

TK: No prattling, will you? There is the Temple. Go to find your body, son.

Chapter 16

Visit to the Prison of Eyeball Wrenching

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on October 19th, 1976. Leap Year of the Dragon.**

*The chilly Styx River makes one quiver
In hell there are hideous howls of pain
Karma of mind can direct one to the sea of miseries
O man, be prudent and keep yourself upright.*

Buddha Tse Kong: Winter is coming around. The cold is bitter, but the disciples of the Temple of the Sages have their hearts wrapped well. The cold means nothing to them. Once the book “Voyages To hell” is finished, it will be handed down to posterity, other disciples will continue with the task. It will be an uninterrupted mission. Yang Ts’ien, this is our promenade day. Don’t you remember?

Yang Ts’ien: It’s icy today. The paths in hell are all the more dismal and deserted. Can’t you give me one of your miracle-pills to raise my vital energy?

TK: All right. I’m going to give you three warming pills that will increase your vitality and help you perform your task to perfection.

YT: A thousand thanks, Master. I have taken them and now I ‘m all warmed up. I am on the lotus dais.

TK: We have arrived.

YT: Where are we? Here are some generals, in civilian clothing, climbing the flights of steps to the palace.



TK: On that verandah, is the Third Palace, administered by the King of the Palace. A bit higher is a long row of prisons and cells. Go ahead and greet the Generals.

YT: My greetings to you, Generals. My Master and I have been ordered to come here to help write a book for educating mankind. We hope to receive instructions from you.

One of the Generals: I am delighted. Would you mind coming into the hall for a little rest? This hall looks after all affairs pertaining to the prisons of the palace. Behind it, are the prisons.

TK: Our time is quite short so we can dispense with rest. It is good enough to have Yang Ts'ien inspect the prisons.

The General: So much the better! We are aware of your Temple's mission. Now, the living Buddha himself expresses his desire to visit the prison. The honor is ours. Therefore, come this way, please. To the left.

YT: My word! This plot of ground is huge. All prisons and cells are constructed of wood. Resounding screams and cries of pain come from somewhere. In front of us is a prison with a board written: "Eyeball Wrenching".

The General: I'm going to have you visit the Eyeball Wrenching Prison. First of all, I must go to warn the Mandarin Governor.

The Mandarin: Welcome to our honorable visitors. I invite you to come in for a look. If anything worries you, just ask me, Mr. Yang Ts'ien.

YT: The inmates of this prison all have their eyeballs extracted from their sockets and blood is streaming out. One after another, they cry and howl bitterly, closing the hollows

of their orbits with their hands. But that's cruelty! To the left, a guard, with his spear, is perforating the orbit of a middle-aged man and wrenching out his eyeball. The victim tries to dodge aside vainly, and the eyeball of his left eye is extracted and drops on the ground. He utters a muffled shriek, his soul in delirium, his body sagging, his head bent forward. He faints but can't fall down, being tied fast to a stake. The guard, impassively, is preparing to extract his other eyeball. I feel out of breath at this sight! That's barbaric.

TK: Careful, watch what you are saying, my son. This is the law of cause and effect in the world of darkness. You have no right to be disrespectful.

The General: We are not surprised in the least. Mr. Yang Ts'ien, please act naturally, and ask me what you want to know.

YT: Words slipped away from me. I beg your pardon, Excellency and General. Now, can you enlighten me on the situation of this prison?

The Mandarin: Willingly. When a soul is judged and condemned to our prison, it is first tied to a stake upon its arrival. Then, it has the two eyeballs extracted. The pain is beyond expression. The torment is repeated three times a day. Before repeating the process, the eyeballs are readjusted in the orbits and washed with resuscitative water. After that, the torment is to start again. This is the only way to make the guilty suffer.

YT: What crimes did they commit to suffer such torment?

The Mandarin: Some sinful souls will be led here to tell you the truth. General, have three sinful souls brought

here. They have their eyeballs readjusted and washed. Their stories will be greatly helpful to the contents of your divine book.

The General: Your order is carried out, Excellency. This one will narrate his crimes for our visitor from the terrestrial world. He will also express what it is like to be tormented. Mr. Yang Ts'ien will relate his story to teach mankind.

The Mandarin: General, make use of your water to pacify him.

TK: Leave him to my care. With my divine power, I will get him steady. Look here!

The soul: I feel much better. My sincere thanks to you, Venerable Monk. When alive, I was a very haughty man. After graduating from university, I got married and lived as a man of high society. I scorned the people in misery and those who did not attend a university. I looked at the world with half an eye, immersed myself in wealth and honors, and associated with aristocrats and fashionable people. I had an abominable and scornful eye for all that was below my level. After I died the Pontiff of Hell judged me, accusing me of having a supercilious view of things, despising the ordinary people, and possessing a pair of eyes that kept looking only toward power and gain. I have been in this prison for two years, and three months or more. I will have two more years to go, because I committed other sins too. I know after my discharge here, other inauspicious things will be waiting for me. I pray you, virtuous men, to advise people on earth not to show contempt for other people, even if they are rich and powerful. Their scorn for others will bring them to a fate like

mine. I implore you, gentlemen, to intercede with the King of the Palace to mitigate my penalty.

YT: General, this sinful soul has been frank in confessing his past crimes, and he also wishes to warn the living people of his fate. He has thus acquired some merit, and an amnesty would be favorable for him.

The General: I just can't act as I wish. All this is beyond my power.

The Mandarin: I will report this affair to the King of the Palace. The sinful soul might be granted some leniency. Now, take him back to the prison, and send two other souls to talk of their crimes.

The General: Here are two souls whose eyes are washed with resuscitative water and whose bodies are recovered. First, that soul on the right.

The soul: My crime in life was my passion for feminine beauty, which is quite common in the living world. I had the mania of peeping at women and girls in the neighbourhood when they were bathing. I also went with friends to dark rooms to watch pornographic films. My passion increased day after day, I couldn't help looking for exciting amusement, so I followed my friend to a hotel where dancers performed striptease acts to entertain spectators.

A year ago, I was killed in a traffic accident. Arriving in hell, I learned that I had not yet attained the fullness of my longevity, but it was curtailed by the laws of hell. The Pontiff of Hell ordered my detention in the "Eyeball Wrenching Prison". My children and grandchildren know nothing of all this. I regret my actions but it is too late. I wish Mr. Yang Ts'ien to relate my story to the living world, upon his return.



Please tell them this: All acts we do in privacy, thinking they are neither seen nor heard, will be revealed, down to the last detail, when we stand before the Mirror-Revelator of Past crimes.

The General: This soul, elderly in age, did not know how to behave properly. With quite sufficient money, he failed to enjoy his old age and complete his longevity. He contented himself with unsound amusement and found pleasure in peeping at nude bathers. His two eyes are wicked; therefore hell helps him wrench them out to cleanse them. Now, to you the soul on the left, confess.

The soul: I was condemned to this prison, because while I was a student, I peeped at the test paper of a candidate in an exam. I also glanced at my textbook to copy the answers. Moreover, I used to read pornographic books, collected photos of naked bodies, and saw erotic films. Upon my death, I was sent to this prison. I have endured pain for six months and have three more years to go.

YT: But that's frightening! When I was a student I peeped at the test paper of a neighbouring candidate. Fortunately, I was not caught in the act by the examiner. Do I come here, after my death?

TK: You have cheated in the exam. That's a shame! But don't panic. God is merciful. He forgives the man who repents. You have already been baptized as an adept of the Temple of the Sages; you have taken His place, and have served as His messenger. You acquire merits to compensate for your wrongs. You won't come here, for sure!

The Mandarin: Take them back to the prison, General. Please excuse our mistakes, if there were any.

YT: Don't mention it, Excellency.

The Mandarin: Anyone with wicked eyes, who loves to contemplate feminine beauty, reads pornographic novels or looks down on others, will be condemned to this prison, after their death.

TK: Time is getting short and we have to take leave. I appreciate your assistance, Excellency and General. Yang Ts'ien, we have to go!

YT: I thank you sincerely for your help, gentlemen.

The Mandarin: Let me accompany you to the dais.

TK: Are you seated? Well, here we go. Here is the Temple! Your body awaits you.

Chapter 17

Visit to the Prison of Face-Skinning With Steel and Copper Knives

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on October 29th, 1976. Leap Year of the Dragon.**

*What a pity that lust prevails over mankind
Their crimes like those of beasts are piling high
O people, mad with foolish desires,
Awaken yourselves and eliminate all wrongdoings.*

Buddha Tse Kong: The religious path is eventful and hard for the adepts. They are constantly tested. No one can reach Nirvana without tests and trials. On his way to Buddha sphere, man must keep firm his faith, even if he dies for it.

By dying as a martyr for his faith, he acquires the most important religious merits. Should difficult events arise, he has to bear them stoically. As the Sages put it: “If you think that something is strange then it is stranger; if you don’t then it isn’t”. The adepts who encounter obstacles and difficulties should overcome them with courage and lucidity. They have to bear the bitter cold of winter before they can pick the fragrant plum flowers in spring time. Trials are necessary for them to progress on the spiritual way. Yang Ts’ien, we’re to take a trip to hell. Be ready. Raise your morale, try your best to go through hardships and to show that you’re worthy of being called a disciple of God.

YT: I thank you for your teachings, Venerable Master. I know perfectly that I have a heavy karma, and it would be hard for me to avoid unending calamities if I didn't know how to perfect myself spiritually. Please he reassured that I will try, Master. I'm ready to go with you.

TK: Come down from the lotus dais. We have arrived. Tonight, we visit the Face-Skinning Prison.

YT: Here are the Mandarin-Governor and the General. I am Yang Ts'ien, disciple of the Temple of the Sages, and this is Buddha Tse Kong, who leads me to visit your prison. We need documentation on torment inflicted upon sinners in order to write a book. I count greatly on your assistance.

The Mandarin: Do not be so formal, Mr. Yang Ts'ien. You are most welcome. Please come into the prison.

The General: Our prison takes charge of punishing those brazen faced, impudent people who fail to honor the skin of their faces.

YT: The guards are escorting a large group of sinners, girls, boys, young and old. One and all, they bend their heads and look terrified. They are first led to the prosecutor's office for declaration formalities, then locked up in jail.

TK: Don't waste your time watching them. Let's follow the Mandarin and the General into the prison.

YT: Heart-rending sobs and cries are heard from within the prison. The sinners are tied securely to iron stakes. Buffalo-headed and horse-faced demons are tormenting them by peeling off the skin on their faces with a cutlass, exactly as butchers do in a slaughterhouse. The victims howl with pain, their faces covered with blood. People hear their cries, but they are virtually unrecognizable. With the skin peeled

off, their skulls are laid bare. What an atrocity! Excellency, can you tell me what crimes they have committed to undergo such torment?

The Mandarin: It's a long story. I will have some of the sinners come so that they can tell you.

YT: It would be better, indeed. I will have concrete testimonials.

The General: You, there! Come here, and tell your crimes to Mr. Yang Ts'ien who comes from the living world.

YT: Tell me why you are condemned to this prison.

The soul: I was an orphan and didn't receive any kind of education. I felt miserable while working under orders of other people. It occurred to me to quit my job and become a beggar. Supposing that each household gave me a dollar, I would earn a hundred dollar a day, if I begged from one hundred households.

In doing so, I could live easily and have money for my expenses without having to work as hard. Afraid that people wouldn't give alms to a young, robust man like me, I abstained from food for two months, eating only a little porridge each day and drinking some water. I became thin and feeble.

Moreover, I smeared my face with mud, wore torn rags and feigned poverty. With a like disguise, I went everywhere begging for alms, invoking pity from the people. I told them how unhappy I was, a homeless, crippled fellow, and I managed to arouse their compassion. Some months I obtained as much as four to five thousand dollars. Daily, I came home, happy about my easy gains, and at nightfall, putting on brand new clothes, I went to a restaurant for a

feast, or to pleasure-dens. I often went to night clubs where I got drunk and enjoyed lewd music. Later on, I grew more and more greedy. Wishing to get rich much quicker, I only accepted gratuities higher than ten dollars while refusing smaller ones of two or three dollars. The donors were vexed; the more stingy ones insulted me and turned away when they saw me. After death, the Pontiff of Hell condemned me to this prison to have my face skinned as a punishment. I have repented but it is too late.

The Mandarin: In your former life you had not regenerated. You were reincarnated this time in a poor family, and led the life of a fatherless and motherless child. When people are young and strong, they must work to earn their daily bread. Shameless as you were, you did the reverse by disguising yourself as a disabled beggar.

A brave man should face life fearlessly and accept hardships by toiling. He never humbles himself to the extent of stretching his hands for alms. You did something worse. You wasted the donations of charitable people in drinks and amusements. What you did was really immoral. Since you didn't know how to love the skin of your face, hell now helps you peel it off. I hope men will avoid committing the same sin. Now, back in prison. (To Yang Ts'ien) I'll have another soul called for your questioning.

YT: Thank you, Excellency. (To the sinful newcomer) You must be 30 years old. Why did you die so young? What have you done to be sentenced here?

The soul: I am ashamed to tell you my story, and I say I have disgraced my ancestors. At the age of 17 or 18, I attended high school. I often led my friends to the parks to

court and tease young girls. They called us names, referred to us as hooligans, ill-educated, brazen faced boys, and all that sort of thing. Without feeling any shame, I was even proud of their insults. I took advantage of the moments when nobody was seen at deserted places to run after the women and girls, molested them, held them in my arms, or touched their hidden bodies while riding past them on my motorbike. I even raped a woman one time but I was never caught by the police.

One day, while riding my motorbike, I tried to pet the breast of a girl. In her instinctive reaction, she shouted so loud that I was startled, lost control of my vehicle, darted forward into an abyss and died. The Pontiff of Hell was furious when he saw me. He scolded me and informed me that he had cut short my life by ten years, because I was cruel, and did not try to change. He condemned me to this prison where I have been for five years. I still have over 13 years to make payment. After that, I will be transferred to other prisons for other crimes. I am too unhappy. I pray you, Mr. Yang Ts'ien, have pity on me. Intervene with the King for a lessening of my sentence.

The Mandarin: That's enough! It's your fault if you attract this punishment, because you led a life of debauchery and idleness. You committed the sin of lust which is one of the cardinal sins. Since you did not know how to honor your face when in life, you have to bear the wicked karma of your act of rape. After your sojourn in this prison, I will send you to another prison for other condemnation. General, lock him up.

The General: At your request.

TK: It's quite late, Yang Ts'ien. Let's leave the prison and return to the Temple.

The Mandarin: Please forgive us if we made any mistakes.

YT: The apology is ours for disturbing you. I say farewell to you.

TK: The lotus dais is waiting, Yang Ts'ien.

YT: I am on it. Shall we go, Master?

TK: The Temple is in sight. Prepare for your re-entry into your body.



Words From Master Luong Si Hang—Vi Kien

On earth, some people always think that God and Buddhas do not know everything, and they believe that their soul exists for the present lifetime only. Therefore, they hide their actions from others, they are lazybones, and by applying their laziness every day, they will sink into vice unknowingly.

Young people should search for a path for spiritual cultivation. Why do we perfect ourselves spiritually? We perfect ourselves spiritually to restore our equilibrium, and then we will perceive the grace of God and Buddhas who have nourished us. We are all sinners because in the past, we did not know, we did not understand and made mistakes. Now we repent our mistakes to see our sins, and we should not say: "The other person is a sinner, not me." Everybody has sins. Why have we committed sins? Because of our ignorance and our darkness. However, God still loves and



guides us, and He gives everyone a chance to repent. We have the opportunity to cultivate ourselves spiritually, to awaken our consciousness, and to return to our true nature of a sage, which is inherent in our inner consciousness. We have the opportunity to restore our equilibrium, so that we could eventually redeem our sins from many past lifetimes, as we reincarnate on earth and keep learning without end.

As you cultivate yourselves spiritually, you often feel agitated even during your meditation séances. This is caused by the karma which invades our consciousness, and which we are not yet able to release. Therefore, we must persevere. How can we release our karma? We must persevere and be arduous and patient in our spiritual practice. We should steadfastly maintain our indestructible faith in hope of unraveling our karma. Similarly, if we are serene in darkness, we will see a light in our inner consciousness. We must persevere and remain faithful in order to attain this light. If halfway, we start doubting this Way or the other Way, then we will not succeed with any. When you travel around the world, you can see many Ways, but you may not succeed with any. Each Way speaks of spiritual liberation, but if our heart lacks perseverance, we will never enjoy the true dharma, which appears in our inner consciousness. Therefore, you should strive to persevere and remain faithful, as a human existence is very precious. Today, we are fortunate to be a wholesome human being, to listen to the words of the Sages, to research the truth to find the righteous path and to follow it with our own efforts.

Today, if we turn toward goodness to find peace in our inner consciousness, we must have sufficient patience

and resignation. As the days, months, and years go by, we look back and see that in the blink of an eye, we have turned gray and our eyesight has become weak. We are aging, but where will we go? As a human being, we still have not repented; we still have not returned to our true nature, and we have not seen clearly our sins yet. We should repent and amend ourselves, and we should give up the bad habits and bad characters which we embrace every day in our inner consciousness. We should abandon them, we should leave them behind, and we should return to the knowledge of goodness from the World Above. Only then will we find a clear liberation for ourselves.

Every person must practice by himself, and he will obtain results by himself. This is a personal achievement, and there will be neither a Buddha nor an Immortal to help us. They already gave us all the help needed. When we descend on earth, we have a functioning body divided in three spheres (low, middle, and high). We even know how to judge God and Buddhas, and we possess intelligence. However, if we do not utilize our ultimate power to correct ourselves within the cycle of evolution, which is love and forgiveness, we will remain blocked and unable to develop our lucid mind.

Many people say: *"Oh, I have a talisman, so this is enough"*, or *"I have a bonze to protect me, so this is enough"*, or *"I can recite this incantation, so I will not fear demons."* If we recite an incantation, but do not correct our diabolical character and heart, we will be a demon ourselves, and neither talismans nor incantations are useful. The more we recite the incantation, the more demons will appear. The more we recite, the more karma will pull us down. Reciting incantations does not end

our karma. Only by cultivating ourselves spiritually and by repenting and amending ourselves will we end our karma.

Many people do not understand and put their lustful character first. They will then devise these affairs and other affairs. Even though they only perfect themselves spiritually a little, they believe to have reached the peak of the Way. Enlightenment is infinite. Even today, Buddha does not claim to have reached the peak. He only prays to reach enlightenment, but does not proclaim to be enlightened, as the Way is an infinite path. Everyone must learn and advance in order to arrive at lucidity. Many people do not understand and err at this point, and then they would disregard God, Buddha, and the Immortals, and nurture their treacherous character. Eventually, they will only bury themselves alive.

On earth, people have a face and limbs, but they behave violently with others. Then someday, they have to descend to hell and have their faces skinned. With a horrendous face, who will they look at? However, this is also a final opportunity of the Lord to show His Grace and let everyone see clearly why the souls of the dead have to go to hell and be tormented. This is the infinite love of the Lord to awaken the consciousness of His children. They descend to hell to encounter sufferings, and they will regenerate after awakening their consciousness. Today, we sit here as human beings, but we have already experienced these painful torments. When we listen to these sufferings and miseries, our hearts are also touched, but if we refuse to awaken our consciousness, when will we be able to save our souls?

As spiritual adepts, you have access to many spiritual materials to awaken your consciousness. You have the

occasion to see your true nature, and you clearly realize that everything on earth is temporary. We must detach ourselves from our characters of darkness, anger, passions, and return to our true nature of love and forgiveness. We should develop ourselves more and more each day. We should expand our consciousness of harmony wider each day and develop it everywhere, in every domain, in order to transmit the words of purity and the original principles granted by God and Buddhas, so that everywhere, people of all walks of life could have the opportunity to cultivate themselves spiritually, to correct themselves and advance with their own efforts.

Now, I continue to read Chapter 18.

Chapter 18

Visit to the Prison of Upside-Down Hanging

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on November 9th, 1976. Leap Year of the Dragon.**

*Below there in the deep, damned souls are hanging,
Impure blood flows as a flooding river,
Morality was overturned, sinners are now dangling,
Their descendants inherit the fruit of their sins.*

Buddha Tse Kong: We are in mid-winter, and the cold is almost unbearable. With thick woolens and furs, the wealthy people feel comfortable near their fireplaces, relishing hot meals and exquisite dishes. Meanwhile, the needy and the wretched are exceedingly miserable.

They shiver in their thin, ragged clothing, their teeth chattering. Their present suffering results from a malevolent karma they created in their former life, and they will suffer the cold of each winter during this life. The people who are living in affluence should think of providing for the miserable homeless. By so doing, they practice their virtue of charity, amass merits and will acquire happiness and wealth in their next reincarnation. If they are content with their lot, and lead their lives egoistically without doing any good actions, the happiness and wealth they are enjoying from the good karma of their previous life will disappear, preparing them for an unhappy life as children of poor families. Let intelligent, wise men be aware of this fact. Yang Ts'ien, come along to

the dais. We go to hell... Here we are. Get down, son.

Yang Ts'ien: Sharp screams and wailings are heard resoundingly from here, they remind me of the cries of a hog which the butcher ties up by the legs for slaughtering by throat-cutting.

TK: Keep quiet, son. Here come the Mandarin-Governor and the General. Let's go greet them.

YT: Our greetings, Excellency and General. Buddha Tse Kong and I are coming here by God's order. Please assist me to write a book entitled "Voyages To Hell".

The Mandarin: Please, don't be too formal. For a long time, we have been admiring the renown of your Temple with its merits in propagating religion, printing precious canonical books that teach virtue and salvation for mankind. Its achievements have stirred up the three worlds (heaven, earth, and hell) and awakened man from ignorance. It is great to meet you here. We invite you to come in and have a look.

YT: Thank you, Excellency. So, this is the prison of "Upside Down Hanging" as it is written on the panel above the door.

TK: Yes, it is. Let's follow the Mandarin and the General inside.

YT: I hear loud cries just as at a funeral. The grass on the large prison grounds is covered with blood.

The Mandarin: This is our prison, placed under the administration of the Third Palace.

YT: On the grassy ground, I see a row of stakes. They are joined to each other by high-strung steel wires. The sinful souls are hung head downwards, their feet pierced through by the wire, from where blood is streaming. They

howl and writhe, which makes their pain worse. Several of them have their blood dripping from their faces. They remain motionless. The sight of these rows of suspended bodies evokes the image of noodle drying. Excellency, for what sins are these souls being punished?

The Mandarin: They are the people who overturned morality and corrupted virtues, disciples who despised their masters, people who disregarded the traditions or disdained the five cardinal precepts of ethics (humanity, fidelity, civility, rationality and loyalty). They come here in increasing numbers. Their contaminated, dripping blood gives birth to a species of bacteria which produce a kind of red mushroom. This same kind of mushroom can be found on earth.

YT: It's shocking, that nauseous smell of blood. I just can't stand it, and feel like vomiting.

TK: Try to be as calm as possible and get rid of any feelings that might jeopardize your writing of the book.

The Mandarin: I will have some sinful souls come here to tell you of their crimes.

YT: I am obliged, Excellency.

The Mandarin: General, bring down one of the sinners and have him come here.

The General: At your request. He is untied now.

YT: Sinful soul, what have you done to be hung upside down in this place amidst icy blasts of wind?

The soul: O God! I'm suffering from intense and unbearable pain. This hanging upsets my bowels and makes me feel nauseated. In my lifetime, I lived in the southern region of Formosa. My uncle, who was childless, adopted me as a baby, and I took him for my father. He fed me, brought

me up, sent me to school where I finished my secondary studies. As his only son whom he loved dearly, he entrusted me with the management of his big grocery store.

When I was 37 years of age, one of my neighbours revealed to me that I was only a foster-son, not a legitimate child of my uncle. I had a sudden idea of going to live with my proper parents, and at that time, I began to embezzle my uncle's money and transferred it to my parents. My proper father did nothing to prevent my misdeed. I found ways to sell all of my uncle's valuable wares, and signed many checks to pay the suppliers. After that, I joined my parents and prepared to live an easy life. When my uncle learned of my dishonesty and my evil doings, he went into a rage. He dwelt on his losses, insulted heaven and earth and grew somewhat insane. When the checks bounced, the creditors came in throngs to reclaim their money from my uncle whose bank account bore his name.

Confronted with such a situation, and not being able to pay off his debts, my uncle committed suicide. Arriving in hell, his soul lodged a complaint against my father and me. The King of Hell accepted his request. One year after his death, my father and I were possessed by malicious spirits and we paid out all our fortune. In the end, the spirits impregnated our hearts and lungs and we died. Arriving in hell, we learned that our life span had been cut short because of our crime. The King of the Palace was in a fury. He condemned me to this prison of "Upside-Down Hanging". As for my father, I'm told he is being detained in another prison.

The Mandarin: How ungrateful you are! Your uncle had fed you and brought you up. You should have felt

indebted to him. You betrayed him instead. You deserve the torments of this prison. What are you pleading for? General, send him back to the stakes, and bring down two others on the left so they can tell their stories to Mr. Yang Ts'ien who will describe them in his book.

The General: At your request.

The Mandarin: Here they come. Confess your sins to Mr. Yang Ts'ien who is from the Temple of the Sages in the living world.

The soul: Right now, I experience much pain. Every day, I undergo this torment of being hung by the feet. I have a mouth, but I'm not allowed to complain, my eyeballs are protruding from their orbits. I was a married man, and we lived in Tai Chu. However, I was also involved with a young girl. After a certain time, our romance was discovered. The girl was fatherless. Her mother lived alone, and though the latter was already in her forties, she looked quite attractive. Using various excuses, I managed to pay her frequent visits and seduced her with sweet words. I conquered her and slept with her. At last, we lived together openly, fully enjoying our carnal pleasures. I was somewhat blinded by pleasures, and could hardly control myself. And then, in a traffic accident, I was run over by a car and lost consciousness.

At that moment, my soul was tied up by the chains of buffalo-headed and horse-faced demons. With their spears in hand, they escorted me to the Mirror-Revelator of Past Crimes where I shamefully witnessed the totality of my vile acts. I dared not look anybody in the face, as I was so ashamed of myself. The King of the Palace, very angry, condemned me to 30 years' imprisonment in this jail with the punishment

of upside-down hanging. I have had two years, and still have many lengthy years to suffer. I try not to think of the time I shall be delivered from my woes.

The King: You are no better than an animal. Lust is the gravest sin of all. The fact of committing adultery with a young girl was already a crime. More than that, you sought to destroy the chastity of her mother too. You are worthy of capital punishment. After you serve your term in this prison, you will be condemned again to the Eternal Prison. You can no longer reincarnate in the world of the living.

TK: You have violated the natural law of social relationships and corrupted the ways and customs. Those who disrespect their masters, are rude toward their superiors, commit adultery with both mother and daughter, are condemned to this prison. The punishment here is easy compared with those of the Eternal Prison, where they will never return. May human beings awaken as soon as possible and may they avoid committing the sins that lead them to this prison of upside-down hanging, after their death. Yang Ts'ien, it's getting late, think of going home.

YT: My deepest gratitude to His Excellency and to the General. You have taught me a great number of things. We would like to say goodbye.

The Mandarin: Please forgive our mistakes.

TK: The lotus dais, Yang Ts'ien!...Go fetch your body.

Chapter 19

Visit to the Palace of Soul-Resuscitation For the Four Categories of Creatures

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on November 19th, 1976. Leap Year of the Dragon.**

*Man regresses to animals' forms with horns and hair
Karmic debts! Causes and effects come in pairs
All creatures reincarnate as to their natural share
Into four categories for violating the divine care.*

Buddha Tse Kong: Come along, Yang Ts'ien. To hell we go!

Yang Ts'ien: Fine, sir. Where will it be, tonight?

TK: Our visit tonight is different. We're going to see something special. Lift up your spirits, and don't be nervous, because your attitude may impair the preparation of the book.

YT: I obey you, Master. Let's depart! But look there! Far below, I see the glitter of aureolas from human heads. They sparkle in the dark of night.

TK: Hey! What's the idea of opening your eyes? I told you to keep them closed, didn't I? All right. That's the glitter of aureolas emanating from the Temple of the Sages which we are flying over. The aureolas are from the genii-protectors of the Temple and the adepts who are practicing meditation. This exercise unifies and focuses the "K'i", the vital breath energy of the Yin and the Yang. In order to attain

such results, the adepts have to go through long and patient training in meditation.

YT: Can their aureola be preserved for a long time?

TK: Even if the adepts don't come to the temple anymore, but continue practicing meditation assiduously with zealous hearts, their aureolas will certainly become brighter and brighter.

Reversely, if they neglect their meditation practice, and act impulsively to commit vile acts in secrecy, their aureolas will blacken and their sheen will disappear. In that case, they cannot see the brightness of the aureolas of the highly evolved beings of the three worlds which emanates from the temple! The malevolent spirits are afraid of such brightness and dare not approach it. Now if after leaving the Temple, the adepts act immorally or cruelly, their aureolas will be completely extinguished. The malevolent spirits and demons, who are fond of obscurity and are abhorrent of luminosity, will penetrate and possess them. It is necessary that humans know all this and be on their guard. Now, close your eyes, right? We start the trip to hell...

YT: I see many flocks and herds of animals, fowls and birds. Shall we take this path to go see them?

TK: They are the beasts of the four categories. After their death, they come to hell. Look over there! It's the frontier between the living and the dead worlds.

YT: The other day, when we came here, I didn't see this spectacle of beasts.

TK: Since you are profane man, I didn't want to let you see too many things at one time lest you should be confused. I exercised my divine power to blindfold you to

prevent you from seeing these beasts while we were on our way to hell.

YT: So that's how things are. I know nothing of your intention. But why are these creatures so terrified when coming to hell? They bawl, they fly, and they jump as if the men were hunting them.

TK: These four categories of creatures which were reincarnated on earth are mostly killed by men. Thence, they are still in a state of panic and terror. As soon as they died, they were cut off from the terrestrial air, and wrapped by the infernal air which drew them straight down to hell, for another reincarnation.

The karma of these creatures is pretty heavy, their souls are gloomy, their vital energy is weak, so they are automatically driven downwards by hell's attraction, without need of being escorted by infernal guards. Nearly all mankind ignores this fact.

YT: Nothing is truer. This is the first time I've heard of such things. Shall we go forward, Master?

TK: Yes, let's follow these herds of buffalos, horses, goats and fowls. As regards the creatures of metamorphosis birth (worms, insects) and those of humidity birth (molluses, fish), their physical forms are infinitely tiny. Upon their death, their minute souls, just like grains of dust, invisible to the naked eyes, fly scattered everywhere at the blowing of the wind, and they will assemble in hell, waiting to be judged for their eventual reincarnation.

YT: How interesting! Thank you, Gracious Master. I could have known nothing without your explanation. Ahead of us, is the Portico of Demons. Why don't the creatures of

the four categories enter the main door?

TK: The Portico of Demons is reserved for humans. Because of their karmas, the creatures of the four categories have to go in by the side doors.

YT: Why don't they come to the Service of Public Relations for declaration?

TK: There's another service, not far from here, to take charge of them. Let's follow them.

YT: In front of us, there stretches a verdant land similar to pasture land. To the right, I see a gate with the inscription "Gate of Soul-Resuscitation for the Four Categories of Creatures". All of the beasts are grouped here, crying pitifully, turning toward the gate, lowering their heads, as if they were saluting somebody and pleading for their sins.

TK: That's the gate. These creatures, after having acquitted their karmas in the world, come to this place for regaining their human forms. Let's go.

YT: I see three dignitaries coming out of the gate. Who are they, Master?

TK: That's the king and his mandarins. Let's go greet them.

YT: My reverences to His Majesty the King and to their Excellencies the Mandarins.

The King: Dispense with etiquette and ceremonials. Be on your feet. You are welcome, Buddha Tse Kong and Mr. Yang Ts'ien of the Temple of the Sages.

TK: We solicit your permission to visit the gate, sir, and feel obliged to receive your information.

The King: With great pleasure. First of all, I invite



you to come in for a little rest.

YT: We thank you greatly for your warm reception.

The King: Please, take seats. General, please serve us some tea, if you don't mind.

YT: This place seems to be remote and desolate. We wish to be fully informed on this subject.

The King: This palace is very little known by the human world. But we open our doors especially for you who are bearers of the Celestial Edict. This gesture of mine must cause a flurry to the Kingdom of Heaven.

YT: That God and the Deities be blessed! Now, please give us your information.

The King: I am the Governor of this Gate. I am called by the name of "T'ien Sue" which means a thousand years. This, because among the beasts belonging to the four categories, there are some which live as long as a thousand years, the tortoise, for instance. This is why I bear the name of "Thousand-Year King" instead of "King of the Palace". Now, this is what happens:

The people who committed too many crimes in their life have to go through the ten Gates of Hell in condemnation, before they are transferred to the six ways of transmigration and take the forms of one of the four categories. They return to the living world, transformed into beasts, renouncing their human forms. The four categories of creatures procreate in the following ways: birth by matrix or by way of fetus, birth by eggs, birth by humidity, and birth by metamorphosis. They are classed in four echelons, respectively the creatures of the first, the second, the third, and the fourth. They have to return to the living world to work out their heavy karmas

and endure the consequences.

Upon their death, the souls and astral bodies of the first and second categories are unscathed, because they are close to human forms. As for the creatures procreated by humidity and metamorphosis, their karmas were very heavy. Resuscitation of their souls is extremely difficult, and they have to wait until all the tiny fragments of their souls are reassembled before they can be restored to their human forms. All this takes time.

TK: We don't have much time left for hearing your precious information. We have to go, and with your permission, we shall come back another time.

YT: I learned a lot of things thanks to your teachings, sir. I am deeply grateful.

The King: Forgive our deficiencies. Please, come back, gentlemen.

TK: Let's leave, Yang Ts'ien.

YT: I'm ready, Master.

TK: Here we are. Go find your body.



Words From Master Luong Si Hang Vi-Kien

Today, we have read up to Chapter 19, and see that a sinner soul has to be jailed in numerous prisons, then returns on earth as an animal, and continues to reincarnate according to the six ways of transmigration. Their sufferings are innumerable.



Today, as human beings, we have deeply felt our miseries. We deeply feel our miseries through birth, aging, sickness, and death. You live thanks to this physical body, and are infatuated with your body. But this body will become older each day, and miseries will come very close to you. Therefore, you must spend greater efforts to cultivate yourselves spiritually. You should strive to mentally invoke the name of Buddha more often, and practice the mental invocation of the six words “Nam-Mo-A-Di-Da-Phat” in your mind more often in order to develop and clarify your consciousness and see your sins clearly. On earth, if terrestrial people devote themselves to spiritual perfection, The World Above will erase their sins immediately. However, in order to practice a spiritual method correctly, we must be arduous and perseverant, and not use the spiritual training as a way of entertainment, to show off and impress others. We must perfect ourselves with a sincere heart; we rectify and improve ourselves to restore equilibrium in our own inner consciousness.

We understand that our impure body is still more fortunate than that of an animal, but we still hold on to heavy intransigence and rivalries. We should abandon these thoughts and this character to return to purity and lightness. Your purity and lightness are your liberation, your guidance and your ascension. Only then will you have the opportunity to guide and save mankind.

Today, you cultivate yourselves spiritually in the sphere of energy, and you practice the Vo-Vi meditation exercises to focus the energy in your organism and clearly see the sphere of energy. Every day, your eating and drinking bring

the elements of Metal, Wood, Water, Fire, and Earth into your organism. Then you practice the Cyclical Breathing Without Retention, and focus your energy right at the top of your head; when you mentally invoke “Nam-Mo-A-Di-Da-Phat”, you clearly feel the circulation of pure energy on your head. Every day, your consciousness will feel lighter. The more you practice the exercise of Cyclical Breathing Without Retention, after many hours and many days, you will feel how you have unblocked yourselves gradually, a little bit each day. In the past, you had difficulty to ponder upon a subject. Now, you can understand instantly. What will the future be? When you practice the mental invocation of “Nam-Mo-A-Di-Da-Phat” regularly and achieve the state of constant invocation, you will no longer remember the sensual scenes on earth, but you will remember the spiritual evolution and ascension to guide and save yourselves and influence others; you will develop yourselves steadfastly toward infinity. When we descend to hell, we see that the souls are condemned through the ten gates of hell, and then they have to reincarnate as animals, and undergo more trials before being attested by the Word Above to deserve the opportunity for spiritual training and elevation. Only the attested animals have the opportunity for spiritual training and ascension.

Today, we are wholesome, our soul and vital spirit are wholesome; we have a physical body capable of walking and lying, we enjoy a favorable fate on earth, we have families; we know about love and compassion, and we know the Way of spiritual cultivation. Why don't we persist in our spiritual practice to advance further? We should not betray ourselves and continue to deceive ourselves. In our body, our lustful

desires are strongest, but many people defend their lust, and turn lust into a sacred religion on earth. They will have to be judged after death, because they refuse to recognize the existence of the soul. They do not know what the soul is, and they do not see that their soul is reincarnated in a physical body, and wrongly believe that the body represents paradise on earth. No, your body is a prison for your soul, and controls your soul. This body relates with the whole universe. Isn't it true that you need to breathe the pure air to be alive? Isn't it true that you need to eat and drink from the five elements of Metal, Wood, Water, Fire, and Earth, and the energies of Yin and Yang, in order to function properly? Therefore, the relation between your microcosm and the outer universe is one, and your body is controlling your soul. Who is holding the key? The Great Serenity is holding the key. Just a small motion of the Lord is sufficient to let us reincarnate through innumerable existences before returning to the existence of a human being. Just a small motion from Him and our souls will turn into dust, and we would have to wait seven eons before having an opportunity for rebirth; we need to satisfy all the necessary conditions to become a human being. These conditions are beyond the reach of an ordinary civilization and provide you a means for spiritual guidance.

Now you listen and understand; you analyze and ponder, and you are able to propel your spiritual energy. You are in a sitting position while meditating, but your energy is pulled upward in the void. When the Immortals fly above this house, they can see the light emanating from this house, and everyone directs his mind to the Way to clearly see his inherent original capacity. Our wealth is emptiness, our wealth is our

aura; our wealth is infinity. We must hold onto this capital to return to our origin. Only this part can travel at the fastest speed and helps us in our spiritual development according to the celestial mechanism of the whole universe. The Lord has granted us an opportunity and given us a body formed by the supernatural, as no one is capable to creating a human being. You should be aware of this beauty and your good fortune; you should preserve this extraordinary opportunity and return to purity. The lightness from the World Above is your true self; this is your soul. You are capable of communicating with all three spheres (hell, earth, paradise), and you cannot ignore the presence of a soul. To ignore the presence of the soul means to err on the wrong path.

People on earth cannot construct a book like “Voyages To Hell” with their imagination. This book resides within the supernatural principle and allows you to see that paradise comes from the heart, hell comes from the heart, and demons also come from the heart. Today, you have awakened your consciousness, and you cultivate yourselves spiritually to release the impurities in the three spheres of your microcosm. You see that your energy is more focused day after day, and when you have attained sufficient purity and lightness, you will realize that your spiritual communication is infinite, and it will not be difficult to travel in other spheres.

You have seen a computer on earth, and you praise the computer and rejoice that with a computer, you only need to press some keys to let it find what you ask for. But you have only shared a portion of your brain to the computer. On the other hand, if you return to purity and lightness, your brain would be an infinitely powerful computer. Materials on earth



are limited and cannot fully contain the human computer brain. It can only contain a portion only. However, without energy, the computer screen will remain blank.

Today, you have the necessary brain and energy. This type of energy is infinite purity, and relates with the Lord and the universe. But if you do not know how to return to the Way in order to fully utilize and enjoy this potential and would run instead after the material, then you will remain blocked. Do you see it? A computer without energy cannot show anything. However, you do not need to be plugged into an electrical outlet and are still able to realize all kinds of things through what the earthly world calls “thoughts”. In thoughts, there are visions. When you think of a person, you can also visualize that person. The more serene you are, the more clearly you can see. How do we open our own “Wisdom Mirror Revelator of Past Actions”? Through our efforts, and by rectifying ourselves and purifying ourselves from the impure to the pure, we will achieve the necessary conditions to harmonize with the universe, and will be able to communicate with the Great Serenity. Then the World Above will shine their energy upon us, and we will see the Wisdom Mirror instantly just by thinking about it.

Many people wonder why even though they never visited a pagoda, never read canonical books and never attended church; they would immensely appreciate the Bible when they read it after practicing this Vo-Vi meditation method continually. They realize that for many existences, they have ignored the precious golden words granted by the Lord. They realize that there are innumerable canonical books in the pagoda, and one single word is worthy thousands

of gold coins to provide them spiritual guidance. However, they would ignore them, they would scorn them, and think that this is a religion to betray and steal from others. I am a thief myself, if I do not understand the Tao. If I am a thief, my mind is dark, but I reinforce my darkness and do not understand the Way. If I refuse to analyze the Way, I will lose my spiritual consciousness. Losing the spiritual consciousness means to lose one's roots. Your consciousness can change into a myriad of states, and whether they are good or bad depend on yourselves. Do you see it clearly? We must see this point clearly, and repent our mistakes to return to our true selves. You only live some decades on earth, and this is the last opportunity. The actions and reactions in life help to push you to return to true knowledge and serenity, to perceive the Great Serenity, the value of the Great Serenity, and how The Lord is working for you.

You will no longer hold to superstition. You clearly see each step of your itinerary. We cultivate ourselves spiritually to return to serenity, and we offer all the serenity we achieve to follow the course of serenity. When you turn toward the Great Serenity, your task is not insignificant. Everywhere you go, you will be a savior. When you visit a family and direct your mind toward the World Above, you will bring good news to everybody. You see that your consciousness of harmony will expand in the whole world, and you can go to any place.

Each of us perfects himself or herself spiritually for all, and we do not cultivate ourselves spiritually just for our personal benefit. What does it mean to perfect oneself spiritually for all? We return to our supernatural structure.



Seven eons are necessary to create this supernatural structure, which is your present body. If you can return to your soul and astral body, what does it mean? You have an extraordinary task, an infinitely large task: You must go out and release the impure; you must unblock and guide all creatures. At that time, it is not too late for you to love and respect the Lord. Once you accept to cultivate yourselves spiritually, you will prostrate before the Lord and see that His 72 sacred physiognomic features are infinite. On the other hand, we only have an ignoble physiognomic feature, but dare to disdain the Lord. We dare to despise Jesus, we dare to despise Buddha, and this is an immense sin. God and Buddhas serve us with great dedication; the shower of dharma constantly bathes and freshens our cells. God and Buddhas humiliate themselves immensely in order to provide us infinite guidance; they guide us in our spiritual evolution, but we still refuse to follow because of our darkness. How pitiful!

You have visited hell through the sounds of my voice during my readings, as I described to you the various sceneries. We march together to research and understand the sufferings of all creatures, the miseries of the sinner souls who admitted their crimes in the hope of liberation. Today, we cultivate ourselves spiritually and we also hope to truthfully admit our sins to have the opportunity for liberation. We hope to accomplish an oeuvre beyond an ordinary civilization in the future so that mankind will no longer suffer. You see that each day, earthly civilization advances and the material progresses quickly. The sounds we recorded with a machine remain lively and keep reminding us years and months later.

The material has already progressed, but why is our spirit still procrastinating?

Let's strive to perfect ourselves spiritually so that we can fully utilize our brain and aura where the supernatural civilization resides. This civilization is one that can truly contribute peace to mankind, and will clearly bring human rights to you. Your soul descends on earth to reside in this microcosm, but you do not know the divine law of human rights. Do you see where it resides? You have a body, a heart, a liver, a stomach, two lungs, and two kidneys; each organ constitutes 250 bhikkhus who follow you, but you have never cared for them and never understood them. You only turn outward and worry about external matters; you busy yourselves with intransigence and rivalries, and temporary profit-making affairs, which are senseless and lead you nowhere. Now, we should repent soon and return to be the master inside our organism. We should regenerate ourselves and restore the human rights to all creatures in our microcosm to guide and save them, so that all beings may perfect themselves spiritually and advance together with us. We no longer turn our minds toward the wrong kind of human rights of killings and thus, we are unable to reach the shore of self-awakening. The Lord has granted us all we need. You could master all 8 directions: East, West, South, North, Southwest, Northeast, Southeast, and Northwest, if you do not forget your true nature.

Let's spend great efforts to perfect ourselves spiritually to attain serenity and return to this true knowledge. Then we will analyze and dissect ourselves inwardly to return to our true abilities; at that time, you will work on one

all-encompassing task. When you succeed, all others will also march with you towards success and fully enjoy the felicity that God and Buddhas have granted us in our inner consciousness.

Today, we take a promenade through a part of hell to clearly understand the power of laws on earth, in hell, and in heaven; how hell and heaven have served mankind and how they love the souls and guide them. Isn't it correct that they provide us infinite guidance? Thus, we should turn toward infinity on our spiritual path. Without our head, we cannot accomplish any work. Our head is able to concentrate all the pure energy. It would be a great waste if we refuse to direct our minds toward the World Above to fully enjoy serenity and focus on the Great Serenity to receive infinite guidance and ascend to lightness and purity.

Therefore, you should spend efforts to listen again and again to these recordings. It is a great blessing for us to be reunited today. All minds turn toward the World Above; we concentrate ourselves on spiritual cultivation; we listen to the truth and practice to contribute our inherent pure energy to all three spheres: heaven, earth, man. Every day, we rectify ourselves a little bit, and then we will awaken our consciousness, the sooner the better.

Chapter 20

Another Visit to the Palace of Soul Resuscitation

For the Four Categories of Creatures

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on November 29th, 1976. Leap Year of the Dragon.**

*How profound and indescribable is the divine principle
Man's destinies weave with his awakening level
Why not avoid the six gloomy paths of transmigration
And not trap yourself in that spider's web.*

Buddha Tse Kong: The people who pretend or believe that the divine law doesn't apply, need simply cast a glance at domestic animals (such as buffalo, horses, fowls, molluscs, and insects). All these creatures have varied physical forms, because they were tied to different destinies in their previous incarnation. Humans are of a superior class and they are the most intelligent creatures. They must take good care of their physical bodies, and behave in a virtuous way if they wish to avoid reincarnating in the form of one of the four categories of creatures. In their life as a beast, these creatures can perceive a path of light that will enable them to return to their human form. Humans should not, in error, weave a spider web and entangle themselves in it forever. Yang Ts'ien, be ready for another trip.

Yang Ts'ien: Yes, I am ready, Master.

TK: We have reached our destination! Here is the



Palace of Soul Resuscitation for the Four Categories of Creatures. The King and his retinue are waiting for us.

YT: Our humble salutations to His Majesty and to their Excellencies, the Mandarins. We have come again to bother you.

The King: Please take it easy. Last time, we did not have enough time for discussions. I am delighted to see you again. Your trip must have been tiring. Please, just step in for a little rest.

YT: Thank you, sir. We are not in the least bit tired. Seated on the dais of lotus, I felt nothing but the winds that whizzed past my ears.

TK: Let's follow His Majesty inside to have some rest.

YT: We thank you for your warm welcome.

The King: Please have some tea.

YT: Our Temple received the divine order to write a book. I am greatly honored to pay visits to hell. My knowledge of religion is limited and I'm particularly ignorant of the situation here. Please give us more information about your palace and I hope that my accounts will give human beings a good understanding so they will try not to commit sins.

The King: I'm going to accompany you to different places and explain everything to you.

YT: I am deeply grateful, sir.

The King: Please follow me to the main hall.

YT: Yes, sir. But look! There is a stag which appears to want to salute you. Could it be that he solicits some favor from you?

The King: He certainly does. This stag was a human and a disciple of Buddha in his former life. As he fell seriously sick, he was angry with his master, thinking that the latter did nothing to protect him. Afterwards, he renounced his religious beliefs, his vegetarian diet and abstinence. He set up a home and had a family. He slandered religion and made fun of deities. Upon his death, he was incarnated in the form of a stag, and this time is his third reincarnation. Stags live in the confines of forests and mountains and feed on fresh herbs and brook water. They lead a painful life by being exposed to winds and cold, in the way an ascetic does, to pay for the karma of their past life. At present, this stag has paid the debt of his karma. He is led back here by the infernal pull. He comes to ask me to restore his human form.

YT: Just one wrong thought is enough to create a negative karma. It's not easy to escape the infernal law. One thing I don't understand, sir. Why is it that the four categories of creatures are automatically drawn to hell upon their death, while human beings are not?

The King: Heaven, earth and the universe were created by the same mutating energy which is the "K'i". The Tao teaches that each "K'i" (original vital breath) gave birth to three "Tsing" (quintessence energy). In reality, a K'i is not transformed into three Tsing, but into thousands of Tsing. Heaven owns its celestial "K'i", the earth has its terrestrial "K'i" and men possess their human "K'i". Heaven, earth and men incessantly inhale then exhale. Once deprived of the "K'i", heaven will collapse, the earth will disintegrate, and men will die. Men's "K'i" resides in their hearts. Scientists have discovered the force of gravity. They still ignore the gravity

of both heaven and men. All that is pure and light rises to heaven, drawn upwards by the heavenly force of attraction. All agitation refers to the earthly force of attraction.

These three forces are combined to create all phenomena and substances in the world. The four categories of creatures (birth by matrix, birth by eggs, birth by humidity, and birth by metamorphosis) bear a heavy karma from their previous life. They are pulled by the gravity of earth, so automatically appear in hell.

On the other hand, the soul of a religious adept whose spiritual energy is purified and light, rises upwards to heaven. Even if the infernal guards want to, they can't pull down such a soul. It's like a hydrogen-filled balloon which soars up, anyone who tries to drag it down will risk being lifted up into space. Humans can become Immortals and Buddhas, or spirits and demons. Their status depends on how they behaved and regenerated in their last life. If the descendants wish to bring forth salvation and liberate the souls of their ancestors, they have to acquire merits in life. I advise them to lead their life toward spiritual perfection and to print canonical and ethical books for the education of mankind. They will obtain great merits. Deities' pledge is to save mankind from suffering and to teach them to follow the right path.

The publication, distribution and publishing of canonical books are the deities' wish. The merits people acquire will also benefit the souls of their ancestors. If they want to recite prayers for the salvation of their ancestors, they must have authentic prayer-books. In addition to the above meritorious deeds, charity work also contributes to the development of a beneficial karma.

YT: Your precious words correspond to the teachings of the Tao. The sermons of the deities are inscribed in canonical books and the publication of these is the will of God. Thanks to these great merits, the ancestors' souls are naturally drawn up by the celestial force of attraction to a higher plane of evolution.

TK: What you have just said coincide with the teachings of the "Celestial Bible" or "Great Justice". Man must lead a perfect life. Enriched with virtues, he will have his place on the higher plane of evolution.

The King: This stag has undergone three successive reincarnations on earth because of his bad karma from his previous life. I am going to acquit his sins and order the General to lead him to the Palace of Soul-Resuscitation for restoring his human form.

The General: Your order will be carried out, sir. Mr. Yang Ts'ien, if you don't mind following me.

YT: Thank you, General. I'm following you. Well, I see a nearby palace with the inscription "Palace of Soul-Resuscitation". Inside, an old man gives drinking water to the animals. They immediately regain their original human forms of boys, girls, old and young.

The General: Mr. Yang Ts'ien, stand by my side and look! I'm going to give some resuscitative water to this stag.

YT: Please do. I'm excited! Well, well, that's magic! The wild stag has transformed into a mature man in his fifties. On his close-shaven head the scar of a joss-stick mark which he had on his baptism-day to Buddhist can still be seen. Is this his appearance after he became a layman?

The General: Yes, that's right. This religious man

renounced his religion and returned to the life as a layman. He abandoned the vegetarian diet and no longer observed abstinences. It is for this reason he was condemned to incarnate in the form of a stag. The resuscitative water has transformed him to human form now.

YT: What are you going to do with him?

The General: Well, the mission of our gate is accomplished once we restore his human form. We are going to transfer him to the 10th Palace which takes charge of reincarnation. The King in charge will examine the karma of his previous life before having him reincarnated on the terrestrial world. To my knowledge, all of the souls transferred by our Palace were reincarnated as children of poor families or as handicapped persons. The reason is because they still have to suffer the consequences of their earlier karma. If they know how to regenerate and lead the life of spiritual perfection, they will proceed to a superior plane of evolution.

TK: Yang Ts'ien, we are limited by time. Let's say goodbye to the General, and return to the Palace to salute His Majesty the King. We thank you greatly for your information. This Palace of Soul-Resuscitation for the Four Categories of Creatures is so far unknown to the living world. I plan to visit it another time for Yang Ts'ien to learn more details. Please anticipate another visit from us, sir.

The King: You are welcome anytime, gentlemen. General, please escort our guests out.

TK: Quick to the lotus dais, Yang Ts'ien. Here we are.

Chapter 21

Third Visit to the Palace of Soul-Resuscitation

For the Four Categories of Creatures

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on December 9th, 1976. Leap Year of the Dragon.**

*Crustaceans and molluscs can't keep themselves alive
Birds fly, quadrupeds run when wind and cold drive
They violated karmic law through lust and vice
Ephemeral dreams go, souls yield up, and bodies die.*

Buddha Tse Kong: In the bitter cold of hell cries and laments resound; lawless humans cry with affliction, dead beasts utter their complaints. The four categories of creatures are being massacred in too great numbers on earth. Throat-cut, disemboweled, they have not yet recovered from the terror of the slaughter. In vain, they struggle against death, weak and helpless, they submit to their destinies, supplicating and imploring like a death-sentenced convict weeping under the gallows. Their spiritual energy disperses in the winds and falls dust-like in hell where the Palace of Soul-Resuscitation for the Four Categories reassembles it, waiting to reconstitute it to human form. They are judged according to their karma and the debts they incurred in their earlier life. It is common knowledge that the people who don't follow the right path, who do perverse acts counter to celestial reason without caring for the consequences, and whose hearts are wicked,

will be transformed by the law of metempsychosis into the forms of the four categories of creatures, viz. the viviparous, the oviparous, the marsh animalcules, and metamorphosing insects. Yang Ts'ien, make yourself ready for a tour to hell.

Yang Ts'ien: Please, Master, the father of an adept of the Temple of the Sages has just died, and I still feel inconsolably afflicted. Why can't a man as honest and meek as him survive a little longer in order to serve the noble cause of the Temple and progress farther on the religious way?

TK: It is imperative that every mortal pass through the phases of birth, old age, sickness and death, no matter how high he is placed in the hierarchy of society. Take those sovereigns, noblemen, and heroes of battles who had onetime grasped the whole of a kingdom, or of an empire, in their hands. One and all they ended up lying motionless, their bodies stiffened, their arms along their sides, their faces waxen, their eyes closed. Dust-born, they returned to dust. The death of an ordinary man is but a natural event. The important thing is whether or not he led a virtuous and meritorious life. When a man dies, his physical body alone disintegrates while his virtuous soul perpetuates eternally. This explains why the dogmas and doctrines of the sages and virtuous men exist immortally after their death. Have you ever seen anybody on earth who chanced not to die? Don't be that chagrined, my boy.

YT: I am so eager to see that dead man again. His descendants said he had been warned of his death two days before the term of his terrestrial sojourn. They all knew he would rejoin the sphere of buddhas. I ask myself to what extent of spiritual perfection can one acquire such prescience?

TK: To see him now is impossible, since the time is not propitious. Those premonitory signs against his death were forwarned by the highly evolved immortals who felt touched by the sincerity of the person. This fact demonstrates that the genii and demons really exist, and that they are not creatures of fiction. If a man applies himself seriously to spiritual perfection, every incident of his life is outlined on the palm of his hand. All he does is to read it. The matter is as simple as that. Now, make haste, or else we'll be late. Quick! Embark on the dais.

YT: Here I rush, Master. Start off...

TK: Arrival! Now, let's disembark.

YT: Look! The Thousand-year King and his mandarins are there waiting for us.

TK: Go ahead with your reverences.

YT: Please accept our most profound expression of respect. You are going to be disturbed again, as I wish to know further of your palace.

The King: No ceremonials, please! I am happy to learn that you two are not disgusted by the spectacle of the flocks of beasts that populate my gate. You have come here three times and it's an honor to me. Please come inside.

TK: I thank you, sir. Since time is pressing, I appreciate your favoring Yang Ts'ien with your personal guidance so he can collect adequate information.

The King: Please follow me to inspect the different places.

YT: How marvelous! This place is equipped in the way of a vacuum-cleaner on earth. Swarms of mosquitoes,

sucked from nowhere, are falling into snowflake-white heaps, floundering ghastly.

The King: They are the mosquitoes swatted or killed by men's insecticide sprayers on earth. Attracted by telluric emanations, they fall down here in heaps of 500 each. Their souls which were scattered everywhere in the world are now regrouped in many heaps which fall apart. If we sprinkle resuscitating-water on them, they recover their human form.

YT: Amazing equipment, indeed! It would be wonderful to see how it operates.

The King: It is the effect of the centripetal force exercised by the core of the earth. Since the souls of mosquitoes are frittered away and their nature is impure, they are naturally sucked down to this place. Their vital energy was disseminated like grains of sand, now it gets fused together in a single mass. This is where the marvel of the resuscitating mechanism lies. Let's go elsewhere.

YT: This large ground serves as an enclosure for beasts. Ordinarily, we seldom see all these animals gathered together. Tigers and lions are seen here as in a zoo, whereas hens, ducks and hogs are extremely abundant. Here we are, back to the palace. Is there any information you can give me, sir?

The King: For the moment, I am examining a complaint lodged by that cock you see over there. I'm going to give you his file. During his lifetime on earth, this cock was the son of a rich man in northern Formosa. Being vain about his father's wealth, he committed adultery with other people's wives, and made use of his money to seduce many young girls and gratify his carnal pleasures. He also satisfied

his sexual demands with prostitutes. Therefore, he had contracted a heavy karma. In payment for his misdeeds, he was transformed into a cock for five consecutive incarnations. Now, he has completed his punishment, and his soul comes to our palace to solicit his resurrection to human form.

YT: How terrible! Cocks descending from humans! Now, what would happen to chicken-eaters? Is that a crime?

The King: All creatures have a spirit of the same nature. Only the apparent forms differ. They possess the same spiritual stock as men's. It is customary that men like to eat the meat of animals. Nutritively speaking, meat, and eggs provide a high extent of nourishment. People get a lot of strength while eating them. Yet, it is expedient to know that these species of creatures are nothing but faulty human souls who expiate their crimes through a reincarnation. Their bodies contain a sinful vital essence.

By the way, at the moment their throats are cut, and in their ultimate struggle for survival, they are seized by panic and terror, which causes serious disturbance in their blood, and toxic substances are secreted from their viscera. By killing and absorbing their flesh and blood, men get fed with adequate amount of nutrients but at the same time, they consume harmful substances. The same phenomenon occurs among humans. Those who are victimized by terror, or submitted to continual or repeated torment, have their blood denatured. It then results that they suffer from physiological diseases which derive from a psychological source. A healthy man with a ruddy complexion when alive, is colorless when lying on his death-bed. It is therefore evident that the sanguine composition changes. The eaters of slaughtered

animals are more likely to absorb the noxious substances than the nourishing ones in the meat. In a word, advantage and disadvantage are on a par. A number of scientists have studied this subject on food nutrition. For the people regenerating to the religious way, it would be impossible to deprive them immediately of meat. Nevertheless, it is advisable they eat less and less meat, in order not to be impregnated by impure blood. Otherwise, it would be difficult for them to reach the Way. As regards the sin for eating meat, let's delay the topic until another time.

YT: What you said conforms to the principles of science, sir. It depends upon each one's will whether to adopt the meat regimen or not. The pro and con of such a decision is well exposed. Now, permit me to ask you a question: I see over there an ape and a parrot. They seem to be clever. The ape mimics man's every gesture and the parrot speaks in a man's voice. Do they belong to a higher class of beasts?

The King: That ape has identical gestures with men's. He is pretty clever too. In his early life, he was a religious man. However, he had followed an unorthodox way and is now incarnated in an ape. The parrot was a fine speaker who caused ruin and death to other people. It's a pity that a fine speaker fails to avail of his talent. The men of the living world should be prudent in each of their gestures that might damage morality. If not they will be incarnated in the forms of birds or animals, not knowing when they will be delivered from their karma. This is a piece of advice which should not be neglected.

TK: Time is running short, and we have to end our visit here. In brief, it is clear that your palace takes charge

only of restoring human form to the creatures. The decision on the fates of the four categories of creatures, whether or not they are permitted to recover their human form, is the responsibility of the King of the 10th Palace. This fact should be known to humans on earth. Yang Ts'ien, get ready to go home.

YT: May I express to you my profound gratitude for the teachings you have given me. I have to leave now.



Chapter 22

Visit to the 4th Palace

Interview with King Yu Kouan

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on January 16th, 1977. Year of the Snake.**

*Like flickering lights, so short a life is seen
Time elapses, youth advances to old age
Regenerated, he is revived in a thousand ways
For the year coming, he transcends away.*

Buddha Tse Kong: The year of the Dragon has passed. Between the 15th of the 8th lunar month and now, six months have passed. It was the day when the Temple received the Celestial Edict bidding it to prepare the book, “Voyages To Hell”. Human beings spin and turn just like the silhouettes of a Chinese lantern in mid-autumn.

A man’s life is comparable to a flash of lightning. How many moonlit nights of the lunar 1st months can he hope to see during his life? His age advances rapidly. He sees children playing before him, lanterns in hands. That’s boyhood, that’s youth. Then, he looks at himself in the mirror: His hair is greying, his complexion is pale. That’s old age. If he fails to regenerate right away, how long can he wait?

In the human body, the vital flux of heaven and earth are focused at the frontal psychic center to form an immortal-embryo. When reaching the stage of maturation,

this immortal embryo, like a ripened fruit, becomes the dharma-body, which is the soul of the adept, who will soon be able to detach from its physical body for astral travel to higher heavenly planes.

A plan is usually drafted in spring, that is, in the beginning of the year; likewise, a man should prepare his life early in his youth. He should regret the time he wasted, respect his life, adopt a strong faith, and know how to overlook the misfortunes that surround him. He should look forward to a brilliant future, walk on the right path in search for the Way, and advance in full confidence. He should persevere in keeping his soul upright and particularly maintain his belief in the success of the Tao. Yang Ts'ien, we're going to pay a visit to hell. Lift up your morale, sonny.

Yang Ts'ien: On this occasion of lunar new year, may I wish you many riches.

TK: My best wishes for a happy new year. But since I am an ascetic, riches leave me cold. I have plenty of them in my celestial home. What I desire most is to have a lot of "beloved" children.

YT: Why is your desire like that of a profane person? Isn't it contrary to monastic rules of a monk like you?

TK: You misunderstand me, son. What I mean is this: If God can increase the number of intelligent and wise children who aspire to do good, and decrease the number of evil-doing offsprings, then peace will prevail among human beings, and I will be free from wandering over the world to rescue them. They are the "beloved" children that I alluded to.

YT: Your sayings are sublime, Master. At the present

time, all humans are expecting to have pious heirs who will supply them money and riches in abundance. We will cheer them by wishing them to have a beloved son or success.

TK: We should say the “beloved” sons aren’t the only children on earth. There are the lovely fairies too. Ha! Ha! I feel a bit jolly tonight, and I incur the “karma of the mouth”. That’s a shame! Really a shame! Now, prepare yourself. Here we go.

YT: But...it seems to me that the dais of lotus looks much bigger this new year. I wonder why, Master.

TK: Our responsibility is much heavier, while the Tao is still limitless. The lotus dais increases its size to encourage us to regenerate. This dais of lotus, which will be your seat in the future, aggrandizes itself to show that you have advanced on the way of the Tao.

YT: The honor is too great for me. I know I’m still loaded with heavy karmas. How could I expect to reach a seat of honour that high?

TK: The lotus grows in the mud but preserves its immaculate purity. Such a similarity is reserved for you, no doubt. Now, let’s go on board. We’re going to visit the 4th Palace tonight.

YT: I’m ready. Shall we depart, Master?

TK: Tonight, I’m carried away by an unwanted inspiration. My blood is buoyant in my veins, and I’m going to recite some rhymes dedicated to mankind.

Mankind! Why are you so hurry-scurry?

Do three daily meals keep you busy?

Mankind! What is your desire?

Are you preoccupied all day with honors and gains?

*Mankind! What on earth makes you so passionate?
Are you plagued with desire and your body disagrees?
Mankind! Of what are you thinking?
Do illusions almost drive you mad?
Mankind! What have you obtained during your existence?
Will a burdened life leave you with empty hands at death?
Mankind! What will happen to the lascivious?
Bad karma: Family virtue lost, greed begets hate.
Mankind! What are you waiting for?
Return to the right Way and regenerate continuously.
Mankind! What are you doing in the way of religion?
Rise from the mire and take excursions that are fun.
Mankind! Where will you go on your excursions?
Profound enjoyment awaits you aboard the "Arch of Mercy".*

Here we arrive! Let's disembark. The 4th Palace is before us.

YT: Indeed, it is.

TK: The King and his retinue have left the palace. Let's hurry to meet them and present our greetings.

YT: May we present to His Majesty and to Their Excellencies our most profound respect. Disciple of Saint Kouan Cheng of the Temple of the Sages in Tai Chu, I have come with my master, Buddha Tse Kong, to visit your palace. May I solicit as much information as possible.

The King: No ceremonials. Stand up, please. On the occasion of new year, you are going to inaugurate your brush-pen, as I can see. This is the reason why you give yourself much pain to come to hell for information. Such a spirit of the Temple of the Sages is worthy of praise. Would you mind



coming in for a little rest and some conversation.

YT: My deep gratitude for your welcome, sir.

The King: Please, be seated. The wine of immortals will be served.

YT: I thank you very much, sir.

TK: Yang Ts'ien, consider yourself lucky to be offered this wine of the Immortals which is reserved for His Majesty's personal use. It is a kind of precious wine for the special disposal of immortals. It is used to strengthen the drinker's spirit.

The King: Please serve yourself and be without reserve.

YT: The exquisite taste and aroma of it fills my body and creates a sensation of warmth. I am deeply grateful for the favor you grant me. I promise to accomplish my mission satisfactorily.

The King: Help yourself to more wine which comes from the Celestial Palace of "The Pond of Jade". All of the ten palaces receive it. It is a beverage that strengthens your vital energy and brightens your aureola. The mandarins and court-judges have at their disposal that immortals' tea. The infernal guards have only green tea. It is natural that those of different rank receive their respective treatments.

YT: May I inquire about your work on the judgement of sinful souls, sir?

The King: Under my administration, there are 16 prisons. In addition, new ones are being constructed. Crimes are increasing and the number of sinners grows. Hell is divided into many branches, and each of these is subdivided into different services. Every guilty soul has to pass through

the Portico of Demons. He will have to look at himself in the Mirror Revelator of Past Crimes which reveals his karma, that is, his past misdeeds.

This procedure provides tangible proof of his guilt, all his past being shown in the mirror. And then, the sinner will be sent to respective palaces which take charge of different classes of sinners, according to the category of sins as listed by the magic mirror. The sinner will be placed under the jurisdiction of the palace that imprisons him. Right at this moment, I am going to preside over a hearing. If you mind following me to the court.

YT: But, that's an unprecedented chance! Two buffalo-headed and horse-faced guards are escorting a prisoner who looks like a director or an inspector in the terrestrial world. His complexion is ruddy, he is bald-headed... He manifests great fright. What sin has he committed?

The King: This man, quite a smart person, was a pharmacist in his lifetime. He specialized in the sale of western drugs. Seeking to get rich quickly, he took advantage of his pharmacologic knowledge to prepare fake medication to the detriment of many people. At present, coming to the term of his life, he is led to hell by the infernal guards.

TK: It is time for us to leave the palace. We shall come back another time to interview the prisoner in his cell. We beg to apologize for our deficiencies toward Your Majesty.

The King: Never mind. Officers and guards! Present the honors to our visitors.

YT: Thank you very much. I hope to see you again.

TK: Quickly to the dais, son.

YT: At your request, Master.



Chapter 23

Visit to the Prison of Forcible Drug-Drinking

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on January 19th, 1977. Year of the Snake.**

*Consuming counterfeit medicines may be homicide
Because of greed, losing his conscience, man sows
karmic vices*

*Great Master, Hwa To, saved man with his medical
expertise*

So compassionate and selfless, he is enlightened.

Buddha Tse Kong: The world of humans has many people deprived of moral conscience and passionate for dishonest money who fabricate false medication, totally disregarding morality and man's life. Parallel to the charlatans who kill the patients out of ignorance, and primarily, out of thirst for gains, the pharmaceutical forgers are champions of criminals.

Human laws, rigorous as they are, make but scarecrows to them. They set their life and liberty at stake and defy the authorities' punishments. After they die, all kinds of punishment are waiting for them in hell. I am going to inform the unbelievers by taking Yang Ts'ien to this prison where tangible proof can be found. Yang Ts'ien, a new trip to hell.

Yang Ts'ien: What is tonight's destination, Master?

TK: We'll go to a prison under the administration of the 4th Palace. Get ready.

YT: I am, sir. Shall we go?

TK: Here we arrive. Disembark.

YT: From the entrance of the prison are already heard the noise of men belching, accompanied by pathetic moans and cries. The door of the prison bears an inscription: "Forcible drug-drinking". Two buffalo-headed and horse-faced guards are pushing the prisoners into the jail by force. There is the mandarin-governor together with his officers coming to meet us. I'm going to present them my reverences.

The Mandarin-Governor: Delighted to welcome you, Buddha Tse Kong and Mr. Yang Ts'ien. A few moments ago, I received the King of Palace's instructions about your visit which consists in collecting information for your book "Voyages To Hell" that reveals to humans the real existence in hell. Would you mind following me?

YT: I appreciate greatly your hearty welcome, Excellency. On both sides of the door, I see piles of pharmaceutical items of all types. Coming nearer, I find trademarks in various languages: Chinese, English, Japanese, etc... They are pretty well presented. I wonder if this is hell's warehouse for the storage of pharmacy products? If it is not, what else could it be? Even the biggest pharmacy on earth wouldn't display such a quantity of drugs.

The Mandarin: This prison has nothing to do with the commerce of pharmaceutical products. What you see here is nothing but sham drugs fabricated by men. As soon as a certain item appears on the world's market, the same item is found in hell. As you can see, quantities of pharmaceutical

specialties are exhibited here as evidence of men's culpability. They are identical with original items. May this detail be known to humans. They should not fabricate fake articles in the privacy of their lodgings, believing their counterfeit may go unnoticed. Let them be aware of the fact that even in remotest, most secret spots, the deities are exercising their implacable surveillance.

Otherwise, we can't track the culpables and catch them red-handed. The canonical teachings state it thus: "Happiness and misfortune are doorless. Man attracts them by himself. Good and evil pursue him shadow-like". It is the law of cause and effect which manifests itself in the case of fraud.

TK: Most humans simply don't believe in the law of causality. They should be warned of this: Every meritorious act calls forth a benevolent effect for the doer; every perverse deed attracts misfortune. It's like an object reflecting its shadow when it is under a source of lights. While in a hermetically closed room, one doesn't see one's shadow. One thinks everything can be done without the knowledge of the deities. But it is in the very obscurity the deities select their favorite dwellings. The defrauder jumps of his own volition into the net. Of what can they complain?

The Mandarin: Please come this way to see things more closely.

YT: In the railed cells of the prison, I see many prisoners crying bitterly and wailing at the top of their voices. Infernal guards are pouring into their mouths pailfuls of a blackish liquid which they seek in vain to dodge.

TK: I'm going to show you the different stages a

sinful soul has to pass through in this prison.

The Mandarin: Now, I'll take Mr. Yang Ts'ien inside for a better view of things.

YT: How surprising! The man I saw the other day has lost his rosy complexion. Only three days have passed, and he looks wan and disfigured. His face, nose and cheeks are smeared with dirty liquid. What could that liquid be?

The Mandarin: In his lifetime, this man specialized in producing imitation medicines which did much harm to other people. After his death, we treat him by giving him this black and bitter liquid, blended with injurious ingredients, disgusting to the taste, which twists the guts, causes colic and vain attempts to disgorge. The punishment is equal to his skill in fabricating false medicine.

YT: The man in his European garb, is soaked with the dark liquid. His filthiness is repulsive, his eyes are morbid and haggard.

The soul: Grace! Grace! O Venerable Monk! O! Man of the terrestrial world! Save me, I beg you, I can't stand it any longer. I prostrate before you, promising to incarnate in a buffalo or a dog to serve you by way of payment for my debt. At this hour, I have lots of riches on earth. Should you like it, my children will repay you generously.

The Mandarin: Shut up! He is the living Buddha Tse Kong. He isn't a monk on earth. What do you want him to do with your money? I grant a momentary break-time for you to confess your crime to this man-of-the-earth. He is a disciple of Saint Kouan-Cheng, named Yang Ts'ien, an adept of the Temple of the Sages in Taiwan here to get information

for writing a book. Be sincere in your confessions, you can possibly obtain some leniency.

The soul: Please accept my expression of profound gratitude, Excellency. I am really ashamed to make my confession, but I hope it will help people consider my fate and try to improve.

In my lifetime, I was a druggist, specializing in the sale of Chinese and foreign medications.

After sometime, I became a connoisseur in pharmacy. The idea of getting rich came to me, and to do so, I had to resort to foul means. I bought a device that helped produce pills and tablets. As for the ingredients, I made use of a mixture of flour and colored powder. I fabricated the most demanded and rarest medicines. I had small bags, sachets, and labels printed which were exact copies of the authentic items. I produced enormous quantities of this spurious merchandise and distributed them to other drug stores. My earnings were incalculable.

In the beginning of this year, I suffered from a deadly disease and died at the age of 52. I was escorted by buffalo-headed and horse-faced demons to the Mirror Revelator of Past Crimes which reproduced, as in a motion picture, all of the time I had busied myself with fabricating and trafficking bogus medicines. I was terrified at the efficiency of such a miraculously ingenious mechanism. The proof was incontestable, I had to confess my crimes. The King of the 4th Palace condemned me to 30 years of detention in this prison of forcible drug-drinking. I was at first awe struck at the sight of the heap of drugs at the door of the prison. It was all of my own making. The power of hell is really formidable.

How could I deny before such irrefutable evidence? Three days later, I was forced by the guards to drink this black liquid. It is impossible for me to consume it. If I try to refuse, they flog me with canes and whips. I have to drink it, which causes me unending colic. I feel like vomiting but I just can't do so. I am much repentant of my past crimes, but I know it is of no use. I make an appeal to the drug sellers on earth not to do as I did. Those who have already committed this sin must try to change. Otherwise, they can't complain about punishment of this sort.

The Mandarin: Scoundrel! You have committed other crimes but you are reluctant to confess them. Try to hide them, and your punishment will be all the more severe!

The soul: Here, here they are! I am about to tell them. In my business, I sought to earn as much money as possible by selling drugs and narcotics to young boys and girls, destroying their youth and upsetting their lives. I deserve capital punishment, really. One time, a friend of mine offered to lend me a book of ethics, titled: "Religion of immortals, buddhas, saints and sages". He had the good intention of having me read it, meditate on its contents and do good. I thumbed through a few pages, found the book treating of immortals, buddhas, geniuses and saints who preached morality through mediumnistic séances and composed poems for the salvation of humans. I tossed it aside, thinking it absurd to believe in deities in this era of sciences and inventions.

All of the tales in it would be good for superstitious folks who worshipped the deities and listened to their preaching. How greatly surprised I was, upon my death, to

find myself accused of blasphemy against the book of ethics and of tossing it. This gesture added five years to my sentence. So, that's you, Mr. Yang Ts'ien, of the Temple of the Sages. I didn't recognize you, and it's stupid of me. I implore you, Buddha Tse Kong, to mediate with the Mandarin-Governor so I can be discharged sooner.

YT: Please, Master. This soul has known to preserve an atom of morality. He is still able to understand the words: Temple of the Sages. In my opinion, he deserves a little amnesty. Could that be possible?

TK (to the prisoner): During your lifetime, you didn't believe in God. You swore by nothing but modern sciences. Now, after your death, you are remorseful. You are in the hands of the deities, and it is too late for repentance. However, your frank confessions could possibly afford you some grace, since your confessions provide information for the book "Voyages To Hell", that will educate humans, once its publication is done. I take into consideration this merit of yours and will help you soothe your pain.

The Mandarin: Every crime results in a chastisement. Severe punishment is reserved for law-transgressors. All supplications are in vain! Although fabrication of false medicines doesn't cause direct harm to a man's life, it entails distressing consequences to his viscera. That's murder, indirectly but delayed murder all the same. Now, you understand why the King of Hell had inflicted that weighty sentence.

TK: Time is up. Think of our return trip. We'll come back if chance wants us to.

YT: I am deeply grateful, Excellency and Generals for your precious information.

TK: The dais is this way. Go ahead.

YT: I am seated. Shall we depart, Master?

TK: The Temple is in sight. Prepare to regain your body.



Chapter 24

Visit to the Prison of Arm-Bath with Boiling Water

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on January 23rd, 1977. Year of the Snake.**

*Robberies and crimes are the strings of vice
So is filthy lucre which will soon be worthless
Descendants, why not preserve your ancestors' values?
Sad are the leaves fallen from its trees, undesired.*

Buddha Tse Kong: There are hundreds of occupations in this life. A proverb goes like this, “Endeavor is the mother of success”. If people made their living in all honesty, without breaking the laws of their country, there would be no starving human on earth. Unfortunately, there are people who make a dishonest living by stealing, cheating, plundering, and slaughtering. If the children of a family are ill-bred, who is to blame? It is sorrowful for the parents who devote themselves to the raising and educating of their children, and these at last turn out to be vagrants, hooligans, doing evil and destroying social security. These malefactors deserve death sentences. When alive, they boast of themselves as lords, adventurers, gang leaders, and they spoil the reputation of their parents. When dead, with crossed arms, they cower in a corner of hell’s prison. They are struck and insulted by the infernal guards. If humans are still unbelieving of such stories, I’m

going to take Yang Ts'ien for a visit to these malefactors and he will see clearly. Yang Ts'ien, the picnic is to begin. Come up the dais.

Yang Ts'ien: Thank you, Master, for having enlightened me. Your teachings are useful for humans and touch them to the depth of their hearts. People used to ask me this question: Suppose you are on a trip with me. Meanwhile, some people wish to call on you in a séance of spiritism. Could you double yourself to respond to their wish? Please, explain this matter to us, Master.

TK: Yes, that's what humans used to ask themselves. Now, I explain it to you in this way: A limpid pond reflects the moon just as a looking glass does. You can't grasp the moon in the pond, can you? "As illusory and unreal as pretty flowers reflected in a mirror, or the moon reflected in water" goes a saying. The Buddhas have taught: "The Buddhist law is infinite". The Immortals said: "Psychic powers are limitless". Buddhas and Immortals are emancipated beings who can transform themselves indefinitely. They are in heaven, just like the moon which reflects its image wherever water is available, in rivers and in oceans. Thus, it is said that the thousands of rivers have thousands of radiating moons, and the thousands of cloudless leagues of the sky are always the sky. The moon has a unique light, how can it divide itself so miraculously? It's because it shines its light from above in the high, and gets united with the sun.

If one exercises virtue, performs good deeds, and engages in the Great Way, just as the Temple of the Sages does, for instance, which exhorts humans to do good, the words "Temple of the Sages" are engraved in the memory

of many persons, just as the light of the moon is engraved in thousands of rivers.

Take another example: You see the president of the Temple on a TV show. At the same time, thousands of other watchers see the same image as if there were thousands of presidents. That marvelous illusion is created by a common thought. If the humans want to conjure me up, they simply think of me, my heart and theirs are spiritually bonded, telepathy operates, and I am manifested in their hearts and before their eyes. They should know this fact.

Tse Kong is but a single entity, but since I am up there in heaven, I can divide myself into thousands of Tse Kong, and am seen by thousands of people who have attachment to me. In the canonical books, it is written: *“Don’t look elsewhere. The Buddha resides on Mount “Ling Chan”. Everyone has this Mount in himself. Let him concentrate upon that precious “Ling Chan Tower” (cranial psychic center) for his regeneration and enlightenment.”* Well, we shouldn’t delay our trip. Yang Ts’ien, on the dais.

YT: Let’s set off, Master.

TK: Destination! Let’s step down.

YT: Yes, sir. Already I hear shrieks and wailing. Before me, a row of cells with the inscription “Prison of Arm-Bath with Boiling Water”.

TK: This prison belongs to the 4th Palace.

YT: A group of men have just come out. They must be the mandarin-governor and his personnel. We greet you, Excellency and Generals. Buddha Tse Kong and I are here to ask for your permission to visit your prison. I wish to receive much information from you.

The Mandarin: Welcome to you. I have received instructions from the King of Palace announcing your visit. Please excuse us for any negligences.

TK: We have been a little delayed at the Temple. Please forgive our tardy visit. Yang Ts'ien, go in with His Excellency for your observation.

The Mandarin: Please, follow me.

YT: Thank you, Excellency. This room is filled with steam of boiling water and resounds with deafening screams. The demons are drawing pailfuls of boiling water and pouring it on the arms of chain-bound sinners. The latter howl with fright and get whipped by other demons at each of their screams. The sight is disheartening. What sins did they commit? Among them, there are also teenagers. They are too young to suffer such torment.

The Mandarin: They committed in their life the sin of theft, and are now paying for it. I'll call some of them here to relate their misdeeds.

YT: Very fine. I will interrogate them and write their stories in my book to serve as a warning for humans.

The Mandarin: I shall set three of them temporarily free. I command the first to tell his crimes to Mr. Yang Ts'ien.

The sinner: Aie, aie! Both of my hands are ulcerous. O, Master, save me, give me some ointment to soothe my pains.

YT: Yellow pus is seen trickling from his infected arms. Just like a rotten slice of pork. Give him some remedy, Master.

TK: Moderate your sympathy, will you? This man

created a bad karma with his hands. For his wicked arms, no remedy is possible.

The Mandarin: Villainous animal! I forbid you to ask for help from whomever. Narrate your crimes, quickly!

The sinner: My parents were rich people, I had been brought up in easy circumstances. Being free from any type of work, I formed a gang with other idle boys, and we led a loose life in cafes or in the company of other gang members. I didn't listen to the advice and scoldings of my parents who were at last forced to disown me. They had an announcement printed in the newspaper. I left the parental home, terribly discontent, and went to join and live with my companions, the vagrants and pirates. The latter taught me the profession of a pickpocket. Since then, I have practiced my trade in buses and crowded stations where I could make use of the skill of my "genius hands".

The Mandarin: Filthy beast! I forbid you to use the term "genius". You should say "monster's hands".

The sinner: Afterwards, as I found that stealing wallets was not lucrative enough, I began to break into apartments and buildings to steal more valuable objects. During my lifetime, I managed to steal millions of dollar worth of merchandise. One time I was surprised while stealing, chased and caught by the folks of the neighbourhood who handed me over to the police. I was judged and sentenced to imprisonment. Upon my release from jail, I resumed my activities as a burglar, without thinking even once of repentance and regeneration.

Finally, at the age of 41, I fell sick and died of a tumor which is the consequence of my debauchery, of excess

alcohol and sexual abuse. Another cause for my death was my disappointment to see none of my gang members at my sick-bed. The buffalo-headed and horse-faced demons escorted me to hell, thrashing me fiercely. After judgement and condemnation, I was told that my longevity had been reduced by 9 years. Now, I find any complaint useless, as I have to reap the bad karma of my crimes.

The Mandarin: It's too late for you to repent. If you had known to convert since your discharge from prison, to behave honestly and do charitable acts to redeem your sins, you wouldn't have been condemned to this prison after your death. In addition to your sin of theft, you committed the gravest sin of all, that is, filial impiety. This is what induced the King of Hell to condemn you to 32 years of imprisonment. You can't do otherwise but try to endure the punishment and pay your debts. The second sinner will make his confessions to Mr. Yang Ts'ien.

The sinner: I dealt in the commerce of mechanical apparatuses and metals. In earlier years, I worked diligently and earned lots of money. And then, I gave myself up to debauchery, gambling, and prostitutes. I maintained a concubine and founded a home with her without the knowledge of my legitimate spouse. Later on, my business was failing, so I bought large quantities of hardware from two important firms in town and signed false checks for payment. I sold the merchandise, collected big amounts of money and took to my heels.

On the date the payment was due, one director of the two firms who failed to cash his check, came to claim his money and lodged a complaint against me. After much

search, the police found me in a friend's house. They arrested me and I was condemned to imprisonment.

After completion of my term, I collected all the money I had swindled which I had entrusted to an intimate girlfriend for keeping. With this money, I could live an easy and tranquil life. My creditors, spiteful and infuriated, called me all kinds of names: rotten, heartless, and panderer. Six years ago, I became ill and died of debility of internal organs. Buffalo-headed and horse-faced demons escorted me to the King of the 2nd Palace. He insulted me, charged me of swindling, thieving, and gaining dishonest money, and condemned me first to the prison with the lake of mire, excrements, and urine, then sent me to this prison of arm-bath with boiling water for having signed checks without sufficient cash, and used my faulty hands to harm other people. My concubine, who spent my foul earned money foolishly, is now condemned to another prison.

After having served my time, I will be sent to the prison of reincarnation for additional lives as follows: in my first existence I will be handicapped, but well-gifted in industry. I will be employed by my creditor (reincarnated) whom I will help enrich with my talent while I will earn just enough to make ends meet. This, to pay for the karmic debts of my former life.

In my second existence, I shall be the son of wealthy parents lacking conscience. I shall be born in a puny, sickly physique, and my wealthy parents will be ruined by the medical costs they will spend for my treatment. Day after day, I shall be given medicines and treated by a physician who will be one of my reincarnated creditors reclaiming his due.

He is the physician of my karma.

The people who become rich through dishonesty, and take other people's money have to make compensation to their victims. In my case, I shall pay for medical fees to my karmic physician. The people in commerce must be honest in their dealings. If they gain their money dishonestly, they will not profit by it in their following life. Such is my case. It is too late to repent now.

The Mandarin: Vile beast! You exercised a foul commerce, and your wares now become dust. You have swindled other people's money, and your hands will be empty in your next life. More than that, you have bequeathed a bad reputation to your descendants who will not dare look people in the face. This sinner has told of his sins in all frankness. No one is capable of escaping the justice of karmic law.

After the judgement of the palace, your creditors were all honest people, and they will recover their due in future reincarnations. Marvelous are those karmic bonds among humans which tie them together in the pattern of a cobweb. It is useless to speak of slipping through the karmic net. These examples serve as a warning for humans and exhort them to return to honesty. They should avoid creating bad karmas which they induce by concentrating on their personal interests and ignoring the harm they can do to other people. It is not surprising to find so many people who keep complaining about their misfortunes in life. They simply don't realize they are reaping what they sowed in their previous life.

TK: It's growing late. I think the stories of these two sinners are enough.

YT: They are, indeed. But, Master, I would like to ask the Governor a question: where are they detained after their death, those pirates who slaughter and pillage and are condemned to death-sentence by human laws?

The Mandarin: We reserve special prisons, with more severe punishments, for those heavy sinners. We shall have you visit them next time.

YT: Thank you, Excellency and Generals for your information. We say goodbye and hope to see you soon.

TK: Come on the lotus dais.

YT: I am ready. We can go, Master.

TK: Here we come to the Temple. Come down and go back into your body.



Words From Master Luong Si Hang—Vi Kien

Reading this chapter, we clearly see that there is no way to deny or hide our guile in hell. Even this is not possible to hide on earth where people could temporarily hide their guile, but eventually, they will be uncovered. What kings had done in the past are still recorded and examined today. For ordinary people, if we steal others through our guile, people could see and understand everything. One cannot hide sly plots, and people will understand all. They will avoid getting acquainted with us, and simply leave us. Then, our greedy character will increase day after day and we will increase our speculations. But eventually, do you see the punishments?

Money that was acquired easily will be spent easily, and illnesses will occur easily. We have clearly seen the sly way of criminals, but are they happy after stealing? No, stolen money is ill-gotten and spent easily, and they become ill easily too. Do you see it clearly?

Those who smoke drugs are usually spoiled children. They only need to shout once to get money from their parents, and then they will buy heroin and smoke it. On the other hand, those who cannot find even a penny at home do not fall into this addiction. Therefore, parents should not necessarily be too severe with their children, but they should know how to guide them in a serious and disciplined manner, and let them understand that money is not earned easily. The children must earn money with their own efforts to appreciate its value and not waste it meaninglessly. Parents should know how to guide their children; excessive spoiling will harm both parents and children, and also harm society. It would also dirty the pure air of the whole universe. This is a major sin.

Today, we know how to cultivate ourselves spiritually, i.e., we know how to purify ourselves. When we practice the Cyclical Breathing Without Retention, we purify ourselves; we purify our sinful state, i.e., our darkness and blinded passions. We expose them more and more in order to open our consciousness. We are solely responsible for ourselves. Therefore, when you meditate each night, you are responsible toward yourselves. You see the pain and efforts: When you cultivate yourselves spiritually, Heaven and Earth have arranged the mechanics to make it easy for you, and you say that you will practice in earnest, but you still complain about

the difficulties. You would say: *"I have difficulty in practicing the breathing; I have difficulty in meditating"*, but do you know its purpose? We meditate to restore our equilibrium, to bring back our inherent wisdom and see our sins clearly; then we will become strong and courageous. Once we have learned the spirit of courage to unblock the low, middle, and upper spheres of our body, we will be strong and brave to uncover our sins and see them clearly. Often, you commit many sins without seeing them. In one day, you can commit sins without seeing them. Why so? Our darkness hides them, and we cannot see them. Therefore, we must spend great efforts to develop ourselves.

Many of you perfect yourselves spiritually and practice the silent invocation of "Nam-Mo-A-Di-Da-Phat". Once this single principle is mastered, all others will be understood. When we return to our true heart with the practice of "Nam-Mo-Da-Di-Da-Phat", we will see clearly that Buddha appears when we think of Buddha. When we are in equilibrium and return to oneness, we are Buddha, we are one with heaven and earth, we no longer harbor personal matters in our minds, we think about all creatures, we work so that all living beings develop themselves uniformly, and we will develop our souls very clearly. Therefore, the more we perfect ourselves spiritually, the more we see the spiritual benefit, and not the monetary one. Many people say: *"I engage myself in spiritual perfection, but now I am asked to donate for this or that project, so I lose all my money."* They do not know who owns this money. God and Buddhas have given them money to do charitable work. They do not know that what belongs to Heaven is returned to Earth. We should help others and work

constructively in order to open our spiritual consciousness.

Before, you were miserly; you dared not spend a penny. Today, when you see people suffering, you help them improve their lot, you provide them housing, and you rejoice yourselves immensely. When these people earn a good living, you are very happy. Thanks to you, these people now earn an honest living, and when they prosper and know how to do charitable work themselves, your mind opens up even more, and you feel even greater felicity. We help only one portion, but our knowledge increases two-, three-, four-, five-, six-, seven-, eight-, nine-, ten-fold. Our consciousness develops infinitely, and at that time, we clearly see that what belongs to heaven returns to earth. Money belongs to heaven, and not to terrestrial people. However, the Lord tests our hearts a little bit, and if we keep clinging to those coins, and reinforce our unrighteousness, if we nurture our impure character and narrow-minded way of thinking, our anger and passions, we will distance ourselves further and further from the will of heaven.

When we clearly see that all possessions belong to the Lord, Buddhas, and all living creatures, and that the will of the people is the will of heaven, we will harmonize with all living creatures and work constructively for the evolution of all. Our virtue of sacrifice will rise higher each day, and we will become more and more aware of the virtue of a Bodhisattva. When you eat a vegetable, it has sacrificed for us; when you eat a piece of meat, it has also sacrificed for us. Their sacrifices expand wider and wider each day in order to awaken and guide mankind. However, we keep our narrow mind, and claim that this belongs to me, and that belongs

to you. No, they belong to no one. They belong to God. Remember that they belong to God.

Today, we sit in this beautiful house thanks to the grace of God. We have the fortunate opportunity to harmonize with everyone and be reunited within brotherly love to direct ourselves towards our own sphere of purity. Each of us has the right to return to his or her true self, and each of us has the right to abandon his or her ignorance, darkness, impurities, greediness and lust. When you perfect yourselves spiritually, you know how to give up these bad habits and bad characters, and then there is no need for you to enter hell. It has no space for virtuous people; it is reserved for wicked people. Do you see it? Wicked people are ignorant people; their minds are dark and not wise. Brutal people have a dark mind, not a wise mind.

You see that among your children, there are those who listen to their mother; they would still respect and obey their mother even if she is wrong; and there are those who swear immediately in their mother's face even before she opens her mouth. Do you see it? You see that their sins appear clearly in front of them, and what is the meaning of this rudeness? Does it help them evolve? They will become angrier and more passionate each day; they isolate themselves more and more and they will be pushed into a dark sphere; they will fall into more debauchery each day, and they will torment their bodies more and more unknowingly. They use heavy drinking as their goal, look for sensual pleasures, and become more and more emaciated each day. They smoke drugs and so on, and fall further into turpitude and destroy their bodies further. This physical body is a supernatural structure; God

and Buddhas have arranged for us to reside in an organism to learn and advance, but what kind of sin would it be if we destroy this classroom?

When our parents see our sorrows and illnesses, they grieve deeply, but they do not know how to save us. What would God and Buddhas think? They wait for the day to judge our sins. Therefore, we can commit sins every day and we should admit that we are an incomplete sinner soul on earth. We are not good people; we are not at all classy! We all have sins. We must remember that we descend on earth to learn and awaken our consciousness to return to true knowledge and leisurely contentment, and we must abandon all our sins. Where do they come from? Our sins start from greed and lust. The more our greed and lust build up, the more they will seduce our mind and body, and we will never be able to develop ourselves. We know that birth, aging, illness, death – are temporary. We clearly see the transience, but we still have not awakened our consciousness, we still have not detached ourselves. If we still hold on and carefully hide our bad habits, we will never develop ourselves.

Many people who perfect themselves spiritually have awakened their consciousness. They honestly talk about their mistakes. If they robbed people before, they did not say so, but now, they no longer steal. Now even if they are offered stolen goods, they are resolute and no longer desire them. Now they clearly see that this is not their mission and not their gains; they search for the true mission and true gains. Their mission is to be healthy to guide and save suffering people. Their mission is to devote themselves to spiritual perfection to influence evil people to become benevolent. Every day,

they cultivate themselves more spiritually to accumulate the pure energy of heaven and earth, and disperse this energy to others. **This is the mission of mankind on earth: To learn courage and harmony to evolve further, and not to learn violence to descend to hell.** It is senseless that God sends His children to earth to learn brutality and descend to hell. There is no room in hell. God wishes that everybody would arduously engage himself or herself in spiritual cultivation to return to true knowledge and that we will become intelligent and release agitations to advance. Once we are successful, we will be able to influence others anywhere. Why? We were criminals ourselves, so those who are not yet saved are also criminally minded. We should not despise them, and refuse to speak Tao with them. Once we have attained the dharma, we should harmonize with all kinds of people and guide all people to evolve higher.

With our spirit of courage and patience, we accept ordinary people who torment us. Today, we explain to them a little bit, tomorrow a little bit more, and we contribute our part so that all living beings may enjoy the same felicity as we do. This is the spirit of courage to ascend higher; this is great compassion to save mankind from sufferings. Every night, we recite the name of the great compassionate Kuan Yin, but our consciousness has not yet learned great compassion. Therefore, we must abandon and erase all jealousy, hatred, and suspicions in our inner consciousness. We must eliminate them immediately, and should not nurture them. They are a clear calamity, and your sacred soul will never be able to return to paradise. If you still harbor jealousy, hatred, and suspicions, you will be unable to advance; you should strive

to open your consciousness of harmony to have the fortunate opportunity for spiritual advancement.

Those of the same voice respond to each other, those of the same character seek each other. Today, we come here to learn the profound truth from our predecessors. We follow each of their steps to search for the truth and clearly see the law of cause and effect, which allows us to learn lessons. They have contributed many months and years of hard work for us; today, we have the occasion to listen and understand thoroughly; we should strive to hold to it and continue our analysis; we should listen to the words of truth many times. God has said that we have the ears of an ox; we listen, then forget, and do not awaken our consciousness. Therefore, we should listen often to clearly see our sins, and then awaken our consciousness.

We must spend efforts. Don't say that I am now of an old age, so I do not need to listen to these words, I already know too much. Not at all! You know, but you have not taken any action. When you listen and take action, when you abandon your bad habits and bad characters, you are working for yourselves. If you still embrace your bad characters and bad habits, you will never save yourselves by an inch; you will only be mired in a miserable situation.

I sincerely thank you for your attention today.

Chapter 25

Visit to the Prison of Throat-Staving

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on February 6th, 1977. Year of the Snake.**

*The backbiting saliva flows as billows
A wicked tongue brags to hurt other fellows
Flattery once showers, then fades
Falsehood too, will soon die below.*

Buddha Tse Kong: Human life is a combination of joy, sadness, anger, and pleasure that takes shape, then vanishes. The religious man finds it hard to educate the people because of such constant change of things. In order that his speech influences men's hearts, he has to practice contemplative meditation and possess a serene spirit and great virtues serving as the basis for his cause. For want of such conditions, his words are nothing but withered flowers floating on the river currents. Good! It's time. Be hasty. We're to go.

Yang Ts'ien: Master, I just caught you sighing. You don't seem happy tonight either. What's amiss?

TK: Well, it's because the men's hearts are not in perfect harmony, the religious tongues are not agreeable. To one, a prune is bitter to the taste, to the other it is sweet. In the long run, religion is discussed in vague terms,, which sows confusion among the adepts who don't know which way to turn.

YT: I think that a regenerated man should keep his heart flawless. Even if the outside ambiance can be upsetting, he should remain calm and peaceful.

TK: Well said. You're pretty smart as you are. With only one single erroneous thought we can fall into a maze. The great religion, I mean to say the universal religion, is unique, it is always clear and radiant. Now, no more discussions. Climb on the lotus...Look! We've arrived.

YT: Here are the Mandarin-Governor and his officers coming to welcome us. This is my Master, the venerable Tse Kong, and I am Yang Ts'ien, a disciple of the Temple of the Sages. Tonight we pay a visit to your prison. We wish to be given detailed information.

The Mandarin: Certainly, with pleasure. Our prison, named "Throat-Staving" is placed under the administration of the 4th Palace. The King of the Palace has instructed me of your visit. Please forgive us for any deficiencies.

TK: Your welcome is thorough, Excellency. Our visits to hell enable us to acquire facts for writing a book on hell. We will be deeply grateful if you can lend us your assistance.

The Mandarin: Very good, Venerable Buddha Tse Kong. Please follow me to witness the torment and listen to the accounts of the sinful souls.

YT: The sign-board "Throat-Staving" really turns me head over heels. I am truly at a loss for words. As we advance nearer, the moans, cries, and howls of pains are deafening. The demons are rushing ferociously upon the stakes where sinful souls are fastened, and staving their mouths with iron stilettos. The victims yell frightfully. The spectacle is identical

with the sight of cutting hogs' throats in a slaughterhouse. May I ask what crimes the sinners have committed?

The Mandarin: Tell us your criminal acts.

The soul: My mouth and throat are heavily injured, so I can't speak. Besides, I already made my confessions to the King. Why do I have to repeat them again?

TK: We are here, by order of God, to communicate with you. Why do you refuse to tell us the misdeeds of your life?

The Mandarin: We are in the presence of the Venerable Living Buddha Tse Kong. He is carrying out a divine mission that consists of writing the book "Voyages To Hell". If you refuse to talk, you oppose God's will. Do you think you can endure the torments of the Eternal Prison? In other words, do you want to go there?

The soul: I have been impertinent, and I humbly apologize, Venerable Buddha Tse Kong. I had heard of you in my life, and my lack of respect deserves a death penalty. Now, I am going to relate the bad karma of my life. I was gifted with an excellent voice and the talent of singing. I gave frequent performances at the opera and in renowned restaurants. The drugstores often invited me to sing for the publicity of their drugs...In my activities as a singer, I tried to satisfy the vulgar taste of the audience with lewd songs composed by myself, and performed interludes with obscene gestures. I was warmly applauded by the spectators. After my death, the King of Hell let me know that my songs were neither patriotic, nor educational. They were incapable of evoking noble and sublime feelings in mankind. Their lyrics were shocking, harmful to society, and corruptive to the ways

and customs. He condemned me to ten years of torment in the Prison of “Throat-Staving”. The Mandarin-Governor also told me that I led a depraved life and committed other sins...I will have to undergo other punishment in another palace. I am greatly remorseful now, but I think it’s too late for remorse. I propose that the singers be on their guard not to follow my example. They should participate in charity work and sing educational songs. Otherwise, their mouths and tongues will taste something bitter and painful.

The Mandarin: What she said is true. The evolution of mankind needs the songs that raise the youth’s morale, and inspire courage and beauty. Whimpering and romantic lyrics are good only for weakening men’s good will, creating a karma of the mouth and entailing corresponding punishment. Good. Now, the second soul. We are all ears.

The soul: O! My mouth is still suffering from bloody wounds. In my life, I was a housewife. Instead of caring for my household, I preferred to meddle in others’ affairs. I picked frequent quarrels with my husband and my neighbors. I cursed heaven and earth. I libeled the people of my neighborhood and sowed discord in their families. I had a next door neighbor with whom I was in constant conflict. One time, to revenge the wrong done to me, I gave him the hint that his wife had a lover, and that I had seen the two together. The rumor spread fast, multiplied by ten, by the hundreds, and a storm took place in the spouse’s family. I had also disrupted the engagement of many other couples, I said the false for the true and reversely. After my death on earth, I was condemned to eight years of imprisonment in the

“Throat-Staving” Prison. I also committed other misdeeds which I prefer not to discuss.

The Mandarin: As a matter of fact, your venomous tongue has created a lot of bad karmas.

TK: Do you have any more questions to ask?

YT: I would like to hear from another soul before we go.

The Mandarin: Very fine. Go ahead, the next soul.

The soul: My father was an oriental physician and a pharmacist of Chinese medicine. I used to watch him do his job, noticing the methods of preparation, the dosage utilized, also the way he treated the patients. Little by little, I acquired much experience in the treatment of various diseases. After my father’s death, I replaced him. Then, I busied myself with diluting my drugs rather than thinking of my professional conscience. I overcharged my clients instead of treating them. I raised the cost of my medicines, asserting that they were rare and difficult to find. I charged extravagant amounts to my clients for my medical care, pretending a high cost of living. I kept secret the formulas of drug-preparation and only made them available for large sums of money. As you can guess, I got rich rapidly and never did I think that, after my death, this punishment would be reserved for me.

The Mandarin: The present punishment is the consequences of your selfishness, misuse of confidence, lack of professional improvement, and excessive publicity. The fact that you did charitable deeds has partly reduced the gravity of your sins

TK: It’s growing late. Yang Ts’ien, be ready for the homebound trip. Excellency and General, my deep

appreciation and goodbye.

YT: We are grateful, Excellency.

The Mandarin: In case you need something else, just come back. You are always welcome.

YT: I'm ready to go, Master. Shall we go?

TK: The people who like to pretend, falsify stories to libel others, whose words do harm to others' matrimonial peace, and who show little respect toward superiors, should improve their conduct. Otherwise, the torment of throat-staving is waiting for them. If they know to repent, they will obtain happiness instead of misfortune. We've arrived. Get down, Yang Ts'ien, enter your body.



Chapter 26

Visit to the Prison of Sinew-Cutting and Bone-Chopping

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on February 16th, 1977. Year of the Snake.**

*Wholly, by man's insatiable lust for gain
They all begin their course of shame,
Turned gamblers, they became parricides, possessed,
Greed prevailed rather than merits and efforts.*

Buddha Tse Kong: It's time to visit hell. Yang Ts'ien, come on the dais quickly.

Yang Ts'ien: Master, I am ready.

TK: We arrive to the destination. Let's go down.

YT: I see before us a placard written "Prison of Sinew-Cutting and Bone-Chopping". The Mandarin-Governor and his officers are waiting to welcome us at the door. My greetings, Excellency, and Generals. I am Yang Ts'ien, accompanied by my Master, Buddha Tse Kong. We visit your prison tonight as reporters. Your information is highly appreciated.

TK: By order of God, I take Yang Ts'ien to hell for writing a book titled "Voyages To Hell". At the present time, religion is in decadence. Materialism is in vogue, whereas spiritualism erases itself into oblivion. All stratagems and guiles are utilized to satisfy men's greed. They refuse no crimes to amass as much money as possible. Where is the

conscience God had given us? It is really sad to hear these words every place “conscience surrenders to money”. The Temple of the Sages had received the order to proceed with the expansion of faith by publishing religious and ethical books in order to save the men in perdition and lead them back to the right path. Its masterpieces of morality have been appreciated by our Father, God the Almighty, who recently issued a special edict bidding it to prepare the book “Voyages To Hell”. I have the mission to accompany Yang Ts’ien and show him the realities in hell. We would feel greatly obliged if you would assist us in our task.

The Mandarin: Perfect. I see you are dedicated to the accomplishment of your task. Besides, I have had a message about this matter, and I think everything is ready.

YT: Look, Master! Those cruel demons are cutting the sinews of the souls’ arms and they shriek appallingly. The victims are tied securely to stakes in the form of crosses, and they can’t budge an inch.

The Mandarin: You are in the prison called “Sinew-Cutting and Bone-Chopping”. With sharp-edged, hard cutlasses, the demon-guards begin by cutting the sinews of the arms, dissecting the flesh which they throw to “steel dogs”, finally, chopping under the arm-bones. This torture makes the sinful souls suffer to the extreme.

YT: I see many souls fall unconscious and a little farther, black dogs are crunching their arms. In the living world, the dogs never eat human flesh. At mealtime, they used to crouch under the dining table, and content themselves with the bones of chickens, pork, or fish their masters tossed to them.



Excuse me, Excellency, where are these black dogs from?

The Mandarin: They are called “steel dogs”. They are terribly ferocious and eat nothing but the flesh and bones of sinful souls, a fact which is never seen in the human world. They are raised in all palaces of hell to punish the souls who are devoid of any sense of morality and virtue. The Asian people used to say “wolf’s entrails and dog’s heart”. They allude to this kind of dogs in hell. On the contrary, the dogs of the living world are much different from these. They are loyal and intelligent. Some dogs of rare breed have their intelligence so highly developed that they behave like men and even sleep in their masters’ beds.

YT: I understand perfectly. Disloyal and dishonest men are inferior to these dogs of precious breed.

TK: I’m going to use my miracle fan to revive these dying souls. Look!

YT: How miraculous! These sinful souls recover their initial body form and come back to life.

The Mandarin: I have at your disposal three sinners. They will tell the reason for their condemnation here after their death. Now, you are the first to speak. We are ready to hear you.

The soul: O! What a poignant pain! Right at this moment, my children and grandchildren on earth can’t imagine what is happening to me in hell, especially how atrociously I am suffering. They all think death is the end of everything, and beyond it there is nothing but a void. I was a tea-dealer in my life. I had the dark thought of increasing my profits by cheating on the weight.

With my skill in maneuvering the balance, I succeeded to weigh 14 ounces instead of 16 for each pound (Chinese) and thus gained two ounces. I continued to perform this trick throughout my life, though I knew perfectly that measures should be accurate, and that the one who cheats half-a-pound in this life will have to repay 8 ounces in his next life. I heard neither the voice of my conscience nor the advice of my friends, and I paid no attention to the punishment that was waiting for me. At last, death befell me. My soul was arrested and escorted to hell. I was led to stand before the mirror revelator of past crimes where all the dishonest acts of my past were reflected. The King of the 4th Palace inflicted upon me a sanction of ten years of imprisonment in this prison of “Sinew-cutting And Bone-Chopping”. Day after day, the torment repeats itself. The demons sever my sinews, chop my arm bones and slice my flesh in the way a housewife scales a fish. I am remorseful, but I know it’s too late. I appeal to the merchants of the world to conduct their business honestly. Weight cheating is heavily punished in hell. The most trifling misdeed can’t pull the wool over the eyes of the deities. The King of Hell hates the cheats like us. He watches us closely, and the demons are merciless.

The Mandarin: You are well aware of what you did, aren’t you? Now, the demons help you reform your hands one and for all. Now, the second soul.

The soul: Yes, Excellency. When in life, I missed schooling because I was poor. I made a living by buying old objects and used items for resale. Every day I rode my tricycle in the streets, bought pieces of waste paper, iron scraps of all types, worn out clothing, torn footwear, etc...One of my

companions told me that the gain on waste copper, bronze and iron would be small if I was too honest, and that I should cheat on the weights to gain more profits. I did as I was advised and with dexterous hands, I succeeded to play my trick without being caught. A ten kilo weight item weighed only seven kilos on my balance. The dealers of used wares knew nothing of my magic. They were content to clear out their rubbish. I lived a fraudulent life and earned a lot of money.

Upon my death, my soul was led before the infuriated King of Hell who vehemently accused me of cheating in commerce and corrupted virtues. I was condemned to 15 years of imprisonment. The torment is renewed every day, the infernal guards despise and insult me mercilessly. I am really miserable. Have pity on me, Mr. Yang Ts'ien. I beg you to mediate for my grace so I can be released a little sooner. I prostrate humbly before you.

YT: Please, Master, this soul seems to have confessed in all frankness. He deserves some mercy. He is in tatters, which moves me a lot. Can I do something for him?

TK: All this is of the authority of the Mandarin-Governor. We'd better not meddle in what concerns him

The Mandarin: Your hands are unclean, remember. The demons cut your sinews, chop your bones and slice your flesh to teach you the accuracy of weights, even the lightest ones. Don't moan, be stoical in your suffering. Show yourself worthy of a man and cease your supplication. Now, to the next soul, the third one. We are attentive.

The soul: My husband was a government employee of high grade. While he was busy in his office, and my children

were at school, the women of my neighborhood taught me how to play mah-jong. At first, I was ignorant of the rules of the game, but little by little I became well-versed in playing not only mah-jong but also all types of cards. The money I lost in card-playing was not important. More deplorable was the fact that I gave no care whatsoever to my husband and my children, and I left my household without a mistress. I spent nearly all my time in gambling-dens. My husband tried to persuade me to stay at home, but to no avail. I turned a deaf ear to him, and frequent quarrels occurred in my family.

Four years ago, I suffered from heart disease and died. The King of Hell's judgement sent me to this prison. I still have 6 months to go. I appeal to the women of the living world, advising them to think of virtue, particularly of their task as homemaker. They should try to remain as "home-angels" instead of imitating my example, if they don't want to taste bitter things in hell, with their bodies mutilated and their arms chopped off.

The Mandarin: A housewife is the mistress of a household. She has a sacred duty. It's a pity that you neglected your duty as a housewife and gave yourself up to gambling. You had corrupted the manners and customs of society. The only thing that saved you was that you didn't cheat in gambling as did a professional gambler and the King of Hell granted you reasonable punishment.

YT: And the professional cheats, where are they detained?

The Mandarin: They are not of my province. It is the job of King "High Mount" of the 7th Palace. I advise humans to change in time if they have the passion for gambling. Their

sins will be forgiven if they print and distribute the volumes of "Voyages To Hell".

TK: It's rather late. Let's think of returning to the Temple. Yang Ts'ien, extend your thanks to His Excellency, then hurry to the dais...Here's the Temple. Your body is waiting for you, son.

Chapter 27

Visit to the Prison with Venomous Wasps

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on March 6th, 1977. Year of the Snake.**

*O God, in whom man's hopes securely dwell
The butcher's cutlass frightens, even the devil himself
When man is advancing through meditation
Immortal's sphere is opened, splendor is felt.*

Buddha Tse Kong: It is no easy thing for a man to regenerate until he attains the plane of genii and immortals. More difficult is to know how to keep his heart pure and his soul sane to attain it.

In the world, the different religions open wide their doors to spread religious teachings. Magnificent churches, synagogues, pagodas, and temples are constructed to propagate faith. In these places, lectures of holy scriptures are given, religious dogmas are discussed, adepts are trained, meditation is practiced to illuminate men, in a word, every effort is exerted for the salvation of humans. They are a kind of minute paradise in the bosom of the earth.

Unfortunately, a number of people recently took advantage of God's name to commit perverse actions. They commercialize the geniuses and saints, make up wooden statues, and utilize all kind of stratagems and guiles to cheat the trusting and gullible folks just to earn money. By so doing, they disgrace the deities and their crimes are innumerable.



For having scorned the world and done harm to the people, they will be punished by the laws of hell, as their crimes are unforgivable. Yang Ts'ien, I accompany you to hell tonight so you can see with your own eyes what is going on and relate the facts that serve as examples for men. Come quickly on the dais.

Yang Ts'ien: I'm seated, Master. Where shall we go?

TK: To the Prison with Venomous Wasps. Close your eyes and let's go!

YT: The prison of venomous wasps is over there. Sinful souls are numerous. The demons are driving them in with heavy blows of whips and canes along the road. The souls yell terribly and shed bitter tears. It's heart-breaking to look at them. What sins have they committed?

TK: These souls made their living at the expense of deities. They enjoyed their dishonesty so fully that they are now at the mercy of the laws of hell. Let's come in to see things more closely. The Mandarin-Governor and the General are waiting for us. Let's go greet them.

YT: I have the honor to present myself as Yang Ts'ien, a disciple of the Temple of the Sages. I received the order to visit hell with my master, Buddha Tse Kong, in order to write a book. I hope to be granted your assistance.

The Mandarin: With great pleasure, gentlemen. This prison called "Prison with Venomous Wasps" is newly constructed and placed under the administration of the 4th Palace. Because the number of sinners has been increasing rapidly these recent days, the Pontiff King of Hell ordered the construction of this prison to reform and reeducate them. Please come inside for a better look.

YT: Thank you, Excellency. Help, Master! All these redoubtable wasps! I just can't go farther. There are so many of them, as black as ebony, as big as a thumb, they look like tiger-head wasps in the world. They fly in all directions, attacking the sinful souls with their stinging. The latter are moaning painfully, and try in vain to dodge. At last they succumb in the corners of the rooms.

Here are some of the wasps flying in our direction. I think we'll have to find some shelter for hiding, Master. These wasps are dangerous. Their sting could be deadly.

TK: Don't be panicky, Yang Ts'ien. These insects have souls. They know how to discriminate between good and bad men. The trunks of these souls exhale a vicious odor that attracts them. They are like the flies which alight on dirty things, and fly away from what is clean. These wasps are coming to greet us. Just relax, son.

YT: Queer, isn't it? They are just like firecrackers which burst without hurting anybody. They are noisily welcoming distinguished guests.

The Mandarin: Just come a little nearer to see better. Have no fear. If these wasps attack anyone who is in their way, we would be the first ones to flee. They are different from those of the world. They are genius-wasps. They only attack the swindlers who hide behind the saints and immortals to do bad acts for a living. Now the sinners try to flee but they can't. The more they seek to hide, the more the wasps chase after them. Look at their bodies swollen with lumps, especially on the heads. The venom tortures them to the extreme, they utter ear-splitting shrieks, covering their heads and running like ducks.

YT: I find this torment cruel. The cell is quite narrow, the souls try to get away, but they have no means, neither a door nor an exit. They don't have anybody to turn to. Excellency, what have they done to endure this torment?

The Mandarin: I shall have the door opened and some of the souls come out to tell you their stories. This will help you take notes for your book and warn humans.

TK: It's perfect. Say, Yang Ts'ien, it seems to me that every prison of hell is instructed of our mission. They all know that we come to hell to gather information to warn humans. Please, Excellency, we would like to know the crimes of each of them.

The Mandarin: This is precisely the job of our personnel to help you know. I'll have two souls come, and you are going to hear their confessions

YT: What had you done in your life to be condemned to this prison?

The soul: I am really bashful, and I lack the courage to look other people in the face. I was a disciple of the Temple of the Sages located in Central Formosa. After many years of study the Tao, I was elected assistant to the President of the Temple.

At one time for the sake of religious expansion, I had written and published several books and distributed them to believing circles. I exerted great effort in persuading the virtuous hearts to pool money for printing these books. In over two months, I succeeded in collecting more than 30,000 dollars.

At that time, I had incurred a debt and the creditor pressed me to pay it on the day it was due. Having in hand a

big amount of money, I used it to pay my debt. Finally, I only gave 20,000 dollars to the President, keeping for me 12,456 dollars. My debt paid up, I kept the reminder for my personal expenses, thinking my deed was unknown. From then on, however, the voice of my conscience often reproached me, remorse racked me and I didn't feel comfortable with my boss. The latter made no reference whatever to my crime when we were together in mediumistic sessions.

Three years ago, I died of stomach disease. Buffalo-headed and horse-faced demons came to arrest me and led me to hell. Right then, I saw my chief come and he teased me in these terms, *"You had had dark thoughts, and you didn't repent until the day you died. Why didn't you confess your problems and errors to me? The Immortals and Buddhas manifested on earth to exhort men to do good and shun evil. The entire truth consists in practicing the Tao and teaching men how to behave virtuously. You had received a good religious education, but you didn't practice it in your life. It's now time for punishment, and you have to endure it"*. Then, not content with reprimanding me harshly, he insisted that the King of Hell strengthened the torment.

The King of Hell was furious at the sight of me. He gave the order to lead me to the Mirror Revelator of Past Crimes which reflected all of my acts, from my clandestine embezzlement of money to the details of my other misdeeds without exception. This fact astounded me and I trembled with fright. After that, I was escorted to the 4th Palace. There, the King pronounced my sentence of 28 years of detention in the Prison with Venomous Wasps.

Upon completion of my term, I will be transferred to the 5th Palace for judgement again. Right now in this prison I

am daily tormented by the wasps whose stings are extremely painful. All my body is swollen, while the wasps keep on their attacks. The cell is too narrow for me to find a refuge. I regret that I did not take seriously the lessons I received at the Temple. Although my fault is single, I am granted no tolerance. My case is quite grave, because I was a disciple who disobeyed the counsels of his master. I hope that my colleagues in the world will behave cautiously with their deeds and speech, as their negligence won't pass unnoticed by the eye of God.

Now, I am repentant, but it's too late. I am sorry for having betrayed the good lessons of my master and the fine recommendations of my brethren. I am really ashamed of myself.

The Mandarin: You were within the enclosure of the holy door, but you neglected the religious teachings. You are blamed for having belittled your master and your colleagues. You were ungrateful to your master, and unworthy of the people who disbursed money for printing the canonical books. While offering their money, they didn't know that it would fall into the hands of a false priest or a false monk. All they knew was to contribute to the strengthening of the religious faith. Their merit was not reduced. The only guilt was that of the one whom the sight of money incited to possess it, and led to commit a sin. Once people pass over the threshold of the holy door, they must have careful hands for each penny, each shilling, or else they will soil the pure, sacred clime of the same door. Hell is all the more severe to them. Humans must be warned of this fact.

TK: All those who underestimate the value of religion

and prove to be dishonest in monetary matters deserve the unforgivable chastisement of hell.

As religious men, they must observe the regulations of sanctity, if they want to avoid descending to hell and undergoing painful torment without the possibility of repentance. We don't have much time left. Yang Ts'ien, how about going home? We'll come back another time. Excellency, please accept our thanks.

YT: I thank His Excellency and the General for your information about your prison. We have to leave.

The Mandarin: General, muster your men to salute. I am longing for the honor of welcoming you again.

YT: I am ready, Master. Shall we go?

TK: Here is the Temple. Go to your body, son.

Chapter 28

Second Visit to the Prison with Venomous Wasps

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on March 19th, 1977. Year of the Snake.**

*Deities have bestowed on man benefits and salvation
Grateful and pious, the adepts fall into contemplation
Also there are traitors and villains in disguise
Who are condemned here for failing their lessons.*

Buddha Tse Kong: The deities come down to earth to save humans, select their disciples, and set them on the spiritual path. Their purpose consists of reshaping men to their early nature and helping them return to their source which is God.

Their benefactions and loving care are immense and incomparable; thence, this saying, “A master for a single day becomes a father for a whole life”. It is therefore natural to obey one’s master’s counsel and follow his example. However, there exists a number of immoral people who betray their religion, hiding behind the deities and borrowing the latter’s prestige for stealing and embezzling money. In this manner, they more likely regenerate into pirates than into saints and immortals, and instead of rising to paradise, it is to hell they will go to purge their bad karma. Their negative “cause” will lead them to considerably bad “effects”. In fact, all of the servants of deities who violate the rules of religious order are severely punished by the laws of hell. To whichever religion

they may be converted, they have to obey the religious order and the rites of this very religion, because no pardon is granted for their sins which are graver than the laymen's.

Yang Ts'ien: I am ready, Master. Where are we going?

TK: We're going to pay another visit to the "Venomous Wasps" Prison to see how the religious traitors are rewarded. Shut your eyes. Here we start...Here we arrive.

The Mandarin: Happy to see you again, gentlemen.

TK: At this time many people who profit from the deities' names live on earth. They wear the gowns of priests, carve statues of Buddha, but commit theft and swindling. They have offended the grandeur and prestige of the orthodox doctrine. We have come here to collect information on the spot for warning the people.

The Mandarin: Very fine. If you care to follow me, gentlemen. I will have some sinful souls come to make an account of their vulgar, despicable actions of their lifetime.

YT: My best thanks, Excellency! These bees fly about in the prison, and they attack the sinful souls with their stinging. The victims' bodies are swollen, their heads are heavy, and their eyes dimmed.

The Mandarin: The stings also render them feverish because they are poisonous. Let me have some of the sinners come. General, let some of them out.

The General: At your command. Here are three of them.

The Mandarin: Now, listen. This is the Venerable Buddha Tse Kong, and this Mr. Yang Ts'ien, of the Temple of the Sages in Tai Chu. They received the order to write a book



titled “Voyages To Hell”. Tell us the story of your sins. They need documents for warning the people.

YT: May I ask you the reason why you were sent to this prison?

The soul: I was a village-chief. The villagers planned to erect a temple. I was in charge of collecting money, and I took advantage of the opportunity to embezzle some of it for my personal expenditures. After my death, I understood that stealing the money dedicated to the deities was a grave crime and I was condemned to this prison. The venomous wasps are merciless. Their stings hurt me terribly. Look at me, I pray you, my body is swollen and red all over, and the wounds torture me day and night. Whenever the money is destined for the cult of deities, people must be loyal and upright. They should by no means think of stealing it, not even a single penny. The stings of these wasps are payment for my bad karma. I committed no other sin besides this.

The Mandarin: Your office had afforded you a chance to serve other people and acquire merits for the benefit of your children and grandchildren. The villagers had the good intention of building a temple for worshipping deities and exercising religious faith. You had misused their faith, your crime is unforgivable. Now, your turn to speak, the 2nd soul.

The soul (female): Amitabha Buddha! I am really miserable, really! As early as the age of 15, I converted to the service of Buddha. I obeyed every commandment and devoted myself to the observance of the doctrine, expecting to attain the spiritual path. However, my inconsistent nature and my lack of patience finally got the best of me. I began to subtract the donations offered by devout people for my

personal expenses. I thought very little of buying joss-sticks, candles, petroleum for lamps, and of embellishing my pagoda.

When I was to recite prayers in a requiem mass for a deceased person, I did my work for the sake of form. Every family inviting me to recite prayers for the souls of a dead parent had to pay me my fees according to the number of prayers and pages in the prayer book. “Like service rendered like amount of money” was my motto. If it was a needy family, I complied reluctantly and only accepted the invitation after much insistence from the master. Reversely, a wealthy family found me very active and zealous in the performance of rites. My prayers would be longer in order to please the chief of the household. Because of my vile greed, Buddha didn’t appear to drive me to heaven, but it was hell that reserved me its torments. I am extremely miserable.

The Mandarin: You were a nun who had renounced every worldly thing and adopted the religious way to regenerate. Nevertheless, you couldn’t eliminate earthly desires and passions. You received people’s money in the name of Buddha, but your acts were incompatible with the morality of the Supreme Buddha. That’s why you are now in condemnation here.

TK: To convert to the spiritual path means to abandon all that is soiled of the human world and acquire the purity of the soul. All of the monks and nuns bear the forename of Sa which is the one of Sakya Muni. It is a sacred forename. It is regrettable that you couldn’t overcome the worldly temptations and failed to think of the salvation of humanity.

It is necessary to abolish the three consciences and

four conjunctures¹⁰ before one can become a Buddha. Unless the three vices¹¹ are expelled, one is forever subjected to the six ways of transmigration.

We warn human beings of all religions that paradise is accessible only to those believers who are delivered from cravings and passions. We therefore advise the people to adhere to the doctrine of a religion – whether it is Catholicism, Buddhism, Islamism, or any other religion – to sever their attachments to the world before they can accede to paradise. It's quite late. We'll come back another time. Yang Ts'ien, let's go home.



Words From Master Luong Si Hang–Vi Kien

You have listened to the swindling and wiliness of the earthly world. By cheating, one only deceives oneself in both social and spiritual life. To steal someone else's possessions means to dupe oneself unknowingly.

Why do we advocate self-perfection and self-progress? We must perfect ourselves spiritually on our own, we must practice with our own efforts, and we must repent on our own to be worthy. If we wait for someone to remind us before repenting, laziness will have already spread and conquered

10 *Three consciences: of the present, the past and the future. Four conjunctures: separation, reunion, opposition, concord.*

11 *Three vices: greed, anger, foolishness.*

our thoughts, and become a habit that cannot be corrected. Today, you see that the “Vo-Vi Meditation, Esoteric Science of Non-Being and the Dharma of Buddha” means self-perfection and self-progress. If we do not practice with diligence, we only deceive ourselves. At the beginning, we express the vow: I must perfect myself spiritually, I want to achieve my goal, I am determined to return to my roots, but why do I still descend to hell halfway? If we increase our deceit and mislead our soul on the spiritual path of perfection, how can we advance?

When we speak of spiritual perfection, we must achieve our goal with determination. Even if we do not see anything and remain in the dark, we must practice with faith and determination to advance toward awakening our consciousness. When we release the worries and sorrows, the mistakes of everyday, we will clearly see our own unrighteous actions. The more you perfect yourselves spiritually, the more you will see yourselves, and that you are in fact deceiving yourselves, and not that you are being deceived by others. We have compassion, but we do not use compassion; to be resentful and angry means to deceive ourselves; to be jealous and harbor hatred means to deceive ourselves; all these thoughts multiply many times in your mind.

We must cultivate ourselves spiritually with our own efforts to have the opportunity for self-awakening. It is too late if we wait for people to remind us. Today, you have many fortunate opportunities. I am a forerunner, a person who repented and amended himself and chose the spiritual path. I am determined to go until the end of my life. I practice to arrive at my goal of releasing all worries, sorrows, and errors in my inner consciousness to advance toward purity and lightness

and guide all living beings. You are also marching on the same path; the steps I take are the steps you will take in the future. When you practice the Vo-Vi method, you should absolutely arrive at your goal. You should not deceive yourselves further. You already duped yourselves unknowingly through your bad characters and your thoughts.

We must spend efforts to perfect ourselves spiritually to eliminate our bad characters and bad habits in order to see the value of a thousand years evolution. When you watch movies where a demon must devote itself to spiritual cultivation for one thousand years before possessing magical powers, you see that they must perfect themselves for one thousand years before having some magical powers, but how do they perfect themselves? They perfect themselves within rules, in a frozen frame. On the other hand, how do we perfect ourselves spiritually today? We perfect ourselves spiritually within a consciousness of harmony, which is more open, and our path is a shortcut.

In the past, people searching for spiritual perfection did not practice this method. They did not practice the exercises of “Concentration of Spiritual Energy”, “Cyclical Breathing Without Retention”, and “Meditative Contemplation”. They did not know how to open the incongruities in their inner consciousness. Today, we have a dharma to open ourselves; we must practice on our own to advance, and not let someone else practice for us. We should not expect the World Above to change the situation for us. If we do not turn to the World Above, we won’t be able to see the help from the World Above. On the other hand, if we turn to the World Above, God and Buddhas, we will arrive instantly. Our wisdom will increase, our compassion will grow more and

more each day, and we will see that we are no longer worried about birth, death, and reincarnation, but we only have the responsibility to practice and advance to arrive at the infinite lucidity. We have seen through the contributions from the World Above that we receive spiritual guidance every day and every hour. God and Buddhas have given us many fortunate opportunities, and we lack nothing. If we refuse to turn to the World Above, how can we return? The Celestial Emperor, Supreme God, has practiced His infinite compassion toward us, but if we do not direct our mind toward the highest sphere, if we do not learn compassion to evolve further, when will we be able to meet the Supreme God? We keep reciting His name “Celestial Emperor, Supreme God” mindlessly, we keep reciting the mantra “Nam-Mo-A-Di-Da-Phat” mindlessly, but if our consciousness refuses to practice a spiritual method, then wouldn’t it be tardiness?

Therefore, we are going against the habit of ordinary people. We do not recite aloud, we remain silent, we use the mental invocation to develop our cranial psychic center, we invoke mentally to develop our true consciousness; we invoke mentally to advance toward the Tao of the Middle Way. We practice in a realistic way and there is no more tardiness. When you recite aloud “Nam-Mo-A-Di-Da-Phat”, you don’t know when it will permeate your mind. However, if you now practice the silent mental invocation, you will develop your inner consciousness. And when you do that, you will be able to harmonize with the higher levels. You will harmonize with purity and lightness, and you will preserve your vital energy. You will attain an aura of wisdom, and you no longer fear being possessed by ghosts and evil spirits. We work from within to outward, and we do not invite external spirits to enter. People who constantly pray aloud



for favors, are inviting spirits from outside, so it is normal that ghosts possess them. On the other hand, we turn within to regenerate ourselves, we practice detachment; we practice to perfect ourselves spiritually. So the demons and genii must respect us, they must love and guide us because we have a spiritual will and a spirit; we are not of the soulless kind.

We understand where we come from and where we go. We have descended on earth for many years already; we have to travel to distant places to earn a living. Now we are at the bottom of a well and need to crawl out of it. We must be extremely patient, we must practice extreme resignation to make progress and get to the top of the well. If we remain intransigent and begrudge such as a few words from people, then we still remain at the bottom of the well, and we will never be able to get to the top. We only need to learn patience and resignation, but we refuse to do so. To express your anger and foolishness only means to obstruct and coerce your own mind and body. You have listened to the precious words of guidance from the Immortals and the Buddhas, and you have known that even hell is doing more useful things than what we have done and are currently doing. Aren't we ashamed?

We say that hell is a cruel place, a place of punishments, but they are doing useful work, while we keep doing unnecessary things and remain dependent, so how can we advance? We must see clearly that this body is temporary, but it is a miraculous mechanism of God and Buddhas to guide our soul. We should not disdain this body, but we should strive to care for it, and search for the supernatural civilization within our inner consciousness. It truly exists. We should not err by turning to the external world. The more we turn to the external world, the more we will abandon our

mind and body. If that happens, the ghosts will possess us. Let's not forget this! If we care for our mind and body, we will become our own master, and we can ascend higher and go anywhere unhindered. You now have a good opportunity. In this society, there are not many people who know about the Tao, and if they knew some Tao like you do, they would be helped a great deal. When we commit a wrongdoing, we can repent ourselves; we have a way to escape; we know how to return to serenity; we know how to abandon the meaningless intransigence and rivalries, so we are much lighter. On the other hand, many earthly people live with their rivalries and intransigence, and cause increasing rivalries and intransigence each day, and eventually, they have no way to escape.

Therefore, you are much more fortunate than many people, and you should maintain your way. But when God pays attention to you, loves and guides you, He must test you and lead you. If you are not challenged, how can He bring you back? If there are no conflicts and adversities, you will not lift your foot to renounce the earthly world and ascend to heaven. You see that life is transient, life is a place for challenges, and we have deceived ourselves too much already. We must follow the call for serenity from the World Above and turn directly toward the Great Serenity. We must awaken ourselves to work in a righteous manner, and achieve true knowledge to guide others and ourselves. You see that you are practicing and progressing a little each day and you should persevere to advance. The obstacles are your awards, the adverse events help you to advance spiritually, and you will have the opportunity to awaken your consciousness. If you always encounter positive events, you will never be able to progress, and you will be complacent and never leave



this place. If there are conflicts and adverse events, you will search for a new opportunity and turn toward your spiritual roots.

We come to this earth as human beings and we know all kinds of things, but why are we unable to preserve ourselves and live forever? From that point, we begin to search and realize that our body is a place for us to reside and train ourselves spiritually. In the whole world, people from all five continents, are learning only about patience. As a mother or a father, we learn patience, but we are still not successful, and we still harbor intransigence and rivalries. At the time of our death, we still hold to intransigence and rivalries, we still want to win, we still talk about earthly possessions, and do not know that possessions come from heaven and return to earth. Material possessions are from God and Buddhas, they are not ours, so why do we fight for them? Our possessions are our spirit of emptiness and serenity. If you are able to keep your spirit of emptiness and serenity, you will always feel contentment and leisure and will no longer be dependent, you will always have plenty of courage and determination, and you will no longer feel pain and sufferings. If you are demoted to a lower level, and commit more and more wrongdoings each day, if you turn toward impurities, you will feel tormented and miserable. But if you turn to emptiness, you will clearly see your spirit of courage, and you will no longer suffer.

"I have nothing to worry about, since I will have to return to emptiness. I come here empty-handed, and will return empty-handed; there is no need for me to argue about this trivial matter, which keeps me awake at night, leaves my mind and body restless, and disturbs my pure energy."

You have a spiritual method: Every night, you engage in the practice of the Concentration of Spiritual Energy, Cyclical Breathing without Retention, and Meditative Contemplation. Gradually, you will clearly see your tardiness, and you will build an unswerving will to succeed in your practice. A spiritual practitioner must live within suffering. Suffering is the border of the Buddha-Land, while worldly pleasures are the border to the land of hell. Earthly pleasures lead to the land of hell, while the pleasures of a spiritual adept, of the Immortals, are leisure and contentment, never to worry, never to feel sadness and self-pity, never to suffer. Why? Because they know how to utilize their ultimate human rights: To practice patience and resignation, to love and forgive, so they are richer than having gold and silver. Humans who know to forgive, to guide and save mankind with full dedication are infinitely happy. If we remain intransigent day after day, and gossip about others, we will become more and more narrow-minded and vulgar, and then what can we enjoy?

Our goal is to return to lightness and purity. But to achieve purity and lightness, we must abound with patience in order to succeed. If we lack patience, we will never succeed.

Today, we have learned sufficiently. I sincerely thank you for your attention.

Chapter 29

Third Visit to the Prison with Venomous Wasps

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on April 3rd, 1977. Year of the Snake.**

*Filled with compassion, deities bestow on mankind
The dharma of cultivating merits and enlightenment
They teach man about the harbor of illusions
And how to prevent disaster from overspreading.*

Buddha Tse Kong: It is out of compassion that the deities manifest themselves through the intercession of medium, for the purpose of teaching men the right way. However, several profiteers have taken advantage of these opportunities, to work for the sake of their personal interests. All these false mediums, deceitful priests, and imposter-deities are more criminal than anybody else. Also, those fortune-tellers who boast their “iron mouths”, pretending to say things as solid as iron, are only bloodsuckers of their fellow beings. Their mouths are muzzles of wild beasts. As tricky disciples, they disgrace the renown of their master, the great fortune-teller Kouei Kou. After their death, they have to endure heavy punishment in hell before being incarnated in the form of ravens that flutter in the deserted mountains of Kouei Kou, and caw noisily with their iron beaks. Time for departure, Yang Ts’ien. Don’t dilly-dally.

Yang Ts’ien: I don’t, Master. What’s a day! Do you think it’s a bit cooler on the way to hell?

TK: Not a shadow of doubt. The air is pretty cold in the world of the dead. Your hair will bristle up, I assure you. But, we must go. Come up on the dais, will you?

YT: Yes, Master. Here I am...

TK: We've arrived!

The Mandarin: It's nice to see you again, gentlemen.

TK: In the world of humans, dishonest people borrowing the deities' names are legion. They dishonor the deities somehow or other. We have to visit this prison several times to collect adequate information for our book.

The Mandarin: Do you mind stepping into the reception hall for relaxing and having tea with us?

TK: We're really sorry, Excellency. We don't have time for relaxation tonight.

The Mandarin: Just follow me into the prison, then.

YT: Look! A multitude of bees are clinging to the sinners' bodies just as they do to a beehive. It's not for producing honey but for stinging.

TK: While in life, these souls were fond of niceties and delicious dishes. Now, they have the opportunity to taste the venomous darts of these bees.

YT: They groan, get distracted and seek vainly to dodge the bees.

TK: In fact, "the road to paradise" has paths but no one cares to return. Hell has no door but everyone enters.

The Mandarin: At the present time, there are a lot of wrongdoers in temples and pagodas. They misuse the names of deities and exploit the people's faith in order to make money. All this wrong practice jeopardizes the reputation of religion, and public opinion is practically indignant. I am



really shocked at finding the number of sinners increasing in this prison. I will have some of them come to tell you about their misdeeds.

YT: Thank you very much for your assistance, Excellency.

The Mandarin: Please, don't mention it. It's our duty. (to two souls just coming). Tell us what you did in your life.

First soul: I lived in a temple in Tai Chu where I performed my work as a medium, conveying the spirit of Generalissimo Tchong Dan. In the early days, many cases of grave sickness which had been declared incurable by the doctors and physicians, were miraculously cured in séances of spiritism when the spirit of Generalissimo Tchong Dan manifested through my intermediary. Believers and patients came in larger and larger numbers to my temple.

Later, it happened that the Generalissimo's spirit did not manifest in the mediumistic sessions, but I feigned his apparition and deceived the audience. I mimicked the gestures and speech of Generalissimo in an exact manner so the manifestation appeared to be genuine. It goes without saying, I created misfortune for the patients whose sickness increased instead of lessening. I also used their superstition to extort their money, threatening them with all types of stories. I told some people that calamities would fall upon them, and others, that demons were obsessing them, and they must lead worship and donate generous offerings to the deities in order to be protected. I urged them to pay handsome amounts of money, of which I enjoyed the surplus. In this manner, I led an easy life, bought a storied house, and lived in luxury and

happiness. After that, came the punishment.

Death happened unexpectedly. The infernal guards led me to the 4th Palace. There, the King reprimanded me furiously, “You are a medium. You should have preserved your spirit as carefully as possible to accomplish your task as an intermediary for the deities. For heaven’s sake! You did just the reverse! You cheated the unsuspecting people and misused their confidence: This is an immoral act, do you realize it? The benefits you provided for the sick were trifling compared to the guiles and tricks you did to others. I condemn you to the prison with venomous wasps.

Every day, the stings of the wasps make me suffer extremely, as my flesh is cut to pieces. The sorrow pierces me to my heart. I make an appeal to the living mediums to never follow my example. They should be honest and sincere in their service to the people and should not misuse their role for making money.

TK: According to the religious traditions, the role of the medium consists of providing assistance to those that the physicians fail to cure. With the occult power of the deities transmitted through the mediums, the latter have the duty to save humans by the will of God, the merciful. Whoever takes advantage of his role as a medium to make money acts against God’s will. As mediums, they will commit no crimes if they accomplish their task normally, letting the people offer what they can from their pockets. The mediums, however, have no right to make demands. The laws of the living world, as well as those of hell, forbid the mediums to go beyond their role by selling medicines which they pretend to be “divine or miracle pills”. This act will make them “pirate-genii”.



The Mandarin: It's the turn to the next soul to relate the wrongs to Mr. Yang Ts'ien.

The soul: I was a fortune-teller in my lifetime. I had made profound study of this science. Shifting from place to place, I made a living by telling fortunes for my clients. Usually, I installed a stall in the market where I entertained them. I told them the possible events in their future, depicted their character and revealed their ambitions and passions. One time, I was short of money when a young man came to consult me. He had the outlook of a wealthy man in elegant clothing. I then used my grandiloquence to cheat him, predicting a period of time that might be eventful for his destiny. He might be victim of robbers and his prospect was quite dark. I assured him that I possessed a sort of talisman which could change his ill star. The young fellow believed me on the spot and fell into my trap. I charged him 5,000 dollars for the fees of a ritual ceremony that would chase away the damaging spirits.

Since then, I reiterated my "marvelous deal" with many other persons and made a lot of money. At last, death cut me off and the King of Hell, in a fury, accused me of being a fortune-teller and a swindler without conscience. He condemned to 12 years in the prison with "venomous wasps". Three years have gone by, and the remaining days are long for me to suffer. Instead of procuring their honey for me, the bees attack me day and night. My body is swollen all over, painful and itching. Remorse is haunting me, but it is much too late.

TK: In your lifetime, you uttered honeyed and flowery words to boast of possessing occult power. You were

a venomous wasp who harmed rather than helped the people. Now you have to bear the consequences of your bad acts.

I advise the fortune tellers and soothsayers to adopt the religious path and teach the truth to humans in order to free them from infatuation. They should show them how to get rid of their problems, and their merits would be immense. Contrarily, if they misuse their knowledge of occult things by telling lies and taking other people's money, hell will provide them a long stay. Time is pressing. Let's go home.

YT: Excellency, can you tell me whether all of the pirate-mediums are detained here?

The Mandarin: Not all of them. Some other mediums went so far as to bewitch the women and then abandon them after satisfying their sexual desires. They are highly distinguished guests detained in other prisons.

YT: Our visit has been long. We say goodbye to you, and once more, we express our thanks to His Excellency and to the generals for their kindness.

Chapter 30

Visit to the 5th Palace and to the Platform For Vision of Native Place— Discussion with King Yen Lo

**Master Yang Tshieng who manifested
on April 13th, 1977. Year of the Snake.**

*We unveil the five hidden palaces of hell
In hope that man will improve well
The devil is subdued by the magic peach-branch,
Then celestial gongs echo to awaken man.*

Master Yang Tshieng: The venerable Buddha Tse Kong is busy tonight. By order of God, I take his place and accompany you on your trip to hell. We don't have much time to spare. Make ourselves ready for departure.

Yang Ts'ien: I am grateful for your coming in person to accompany me, Venerable Master. But on the other night, Buddha Tse Kong and I used to travel with a dais of lotus. By what means shall we go tonight, and why do you take along this dog?

Master Yang: Buddhas and Immortals possess their own means of transportation. Buddha Tse Kong has his dais, I have this dog. We are going to mount it.

Yang Ts'ien: It doesn't run fast enough. By the way, it looks pretty fierce. No one would like to approach it. One risks having their bones crushed by its terrible jaws.

Master Yang: It isn't a dog of the terrestrial world. It's rather a celestial dog and it is also the strength of my legs. Since it's a wise dog, how can it bite you?

YT: Our trip would be handicapped by its running speed.

Master Yang: Not at all. It will run at top speed because its four legs are like the wheels of a car. It can even exceed the lotus speed. Don't worry about that.

YT: Here I am riding on it. I must make sure I am well seated, or else a somersault would be a catastrophe. Will you seat right in front of me and keep a sharp lookout, Master?

Master Yang: Take it easy, young man. Everything will be all right. Now, shut your eyes.

YT: Where are we going, Master?

Master Yang: To the 5th Palace. Here we arrive. Buddhas and Immortals live together under the same roof. It's just like two men in the world buying two cars with different makes. Each of them believes his car is better and challenges the other to race. Man's heart is similar to an engine. If it's a good engine, then man will feel comfortable to roll on the road with great confidence.

YT: You're right, Master. I see before us a group of souls climbing onto a platform and jostling each other. The sinful souls, male and female, are escorted by the infernal guards, while other souls are not. They seem to be smiling and happy, instead. What is this place called, Master?

Master Yang: This is called the "Platform for Vision of Native Place". All of the sinful souls arriving in hell must pass by the 5th Palace to look in the mirror of "Vision

of Native Place” to see their living children. Regrets and nostalgia make them shed bitter tears. The unchastised souls are also permitted to look in the mirror to recognize their children performing daily activities.

YT: Over there, I see men and horses standing in lines. They look solemn and disciplined. Who are those saints and genii?

Master Yang: They are the King of the 5th Palace and military and civilian dignitaries. They are coming down the steps to meet us. Let’s make haste.

YT: My name is Yang Ts’ien, disciple of the Temple of the Sages in Tai Chu. By order of God, I have to prepare the book “Voyages To Hell” with a view to convert humans. Tonight, I visit your palace under the guidance of Master Yang Tsh’ieng. We are grateful for any of your assistance.

The King: The Temple of the Sages has contributed greatly to the propagation of faith and publication of religious instruction books which have helped change many bad elements and raised morally weak people from their downfall. Its merits are admirable. Several souls detained in the 5th Palace had read your precious books in their lifetime and printed them for distribution. I have taken into consideration their good deeds and granted them my pardon so they can free themselves and be rewarded according to their good actions.

YT: Your clemency is really great, sir. It is evident that the souls must first exert effort and achieve merits before they can be rewarded for it.

The King: Dispense from ceremonials, Mr. Yang

Ts'ien. Stand up please. Now, if you care to follow me inside for some relaxation.

Master Yang: Thank you, sir. It will be done the next time we come. Could we have a look at the “Platform for Vision of Native Place” now?

The King: Why not? Let’s go right away.

YT: Thank you very much, sir.

The King: All of the sinful souls coming to the 5th Palace have to pass by the Mirror of Vision. Most of them are sentimental and greatly attached to their children and their native place in the living world. Sinful or not, they are all authorized to look once in the mirror.

Master Yang: The voice of the heart is hard to repress. Look at that old man, escorted by the guards, who is crying his eyes out before the mirror for “Vision of Native Place”. What could be the reason for his crying so bitterly?

The King: This old man had sinned heavily in his life. He later endured torment in hell which is now drawing to an end. He comes to the Platform for Vision of Native Place to look back at his children and grandchildren. Now, he realizes that his offspring have no feelings whatsoever for him. He finds that some are absorbed in watching television, the others are relaxing idly in their rooms. None of them has any recollection of his onetime existence. He recalls the pain and labour he experienced in his lifetime for the sake of his progeny, and now their indifference dumbfounds him exceedingly.

Master Yang: If one fails to practice virtue in order to regenerate when living, it is useless in death to count on the prayers and requiem of one’s children, in case the latter

believe neither in saints and immortals nor in the law of cause and effect. It is best to do good when one is still in full possession of one's vigour and vital energy. It's the only guarantee for one's next life.

YT: I did look in the mirror, but I saw no images. The mirror was all white. Why so?

Master Yang: Your eyes are fleshy ones. Buddha Tse Kong had taken you to the "Pure Heart Pond" to cleanse them of worldly dust. But it was a long time ago, and several thick layers of dust have now formed on them, and this is the reason why you see no images in the mirror. The "Vision of Native Place" is a marvelous mechanism that allows for change.

The King: Soiled by worldly dust, your eyes have become sandy and you can't see the images. Holy water must be brought here to wash Mr. Yang Ts'ien's eyes!

The General: At your request, sir...Here it is!

The King: Please, open wide your eyes, and wash them with this.

YT: Thank you, sir. Well, well, I see clearly, now. That's wonderful!

The King: Look in the mirror now.

YT: My God! I see the Temple of the Sages and its different images appearing by turns in the mirror. In an atmosphere of veneration I see myself seated in front of the mediumistic screen, in the middle of the sanctuary. The celestial Cherub-medium Yu Hiu is directing my hands, dipping the brush-pen in the inkpot, and writing the accounts. The secretaries of the Temple, on my two sides, are taking their notes. Brother Sha Sheng Liu dictates the words as soon

as they appear on the movie-like screen.

The King: It's quite hard for you to comprehend the amazing operation and possibilities of the Mirror of Vision. As you can see, the celestial medium Yu Hiu, whose occult eyes capture every image, is transmitting on the screen all the things you see in this prison. His eyes resemble the Mirror for Vision of Native Place which focuses the rays of the Yin and the Yang that pierce through the obstacles.

YT: The divine mysteries are certainly beyond our comprehension. Another old man is now here to climb on the Platform for Vision of Native Place. He is without escort, and walks freely, guided by a guard. He looks jolly and happy.

The King: He was an honest man and a disciple of the religious order. He died recently, his children and grandchildren are saying prayers before his altar. This token of affection is a fine gesture of filial piety, which affords him great satisfaction while watching them in the mirror. Though he only acquired merits of average order, he will be allowed to further his regeneration in the religious way, for he has understood that birth and death are two inevitable things in a man's life and that every regret for, and attachment to life is useless. In the future, he can be nominated a genius.

YT: Why is it that the dead people can perceive the images in the mirror, whereas a profane man like me can't?

The King: Because you are still living, and your soul is tied to the flesh of your body. The dead have their souls detached from their bodies. Their condition of life has been transformed, and while staying in the world of the dead, they can perceive the living beings. Their souls possess infinite possibilities which the living don't.



Master Yang: We don't have much time left. We have to leave you, sir, and the dignitaries.

YT: Once again, we thank you for your hospitality.

The King: Muster your troops, generals and officers. Present arms for the salute.

Master Yang: Yang Ts'ien, come down the platform...

YT: Master, I notice the third eye you have on your forehead, between the brows.

Master Yang: It's a celestial eye, the three precious luminaries of the cosmos: Star, sun, and moon which are united in it and they shine in all splendor. Its power is immense, its role consists of catching the spirits and devils in the terrestrial world. My presence sows terror among them.

YT: With your superhuman power, you certainly can read men's most hidden thoughts, I presume.

Master Yang: Don't peek at me like this. Any person with upright eyes looks upwards, toward the deities in heaven. The wicked one dares not to do likewise.

YT: I am still naïve in my first encounter with you. It goes without saying that I open wide my eyes without seeing the high mountain before me. It's quite ridiculous of me!

Master Yang: Not the least. It's quite normal, Yang Ts'ien. Now ride on the celestial dog. We're going home

YT: I'm ready. Shall we go?

Master Yang: Here is the Temple. Come down, and restore your body.

Chapter 31

Visit to the 5th Palace

The King of Hell's Account on the Torment of Chest-Cleaving and Heart-Wrenching

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on April 29th, 1977. Year of the Snake.**

*Wickedness is ruled by demons,
A thousand ruses can't be hidden long
To the King of Hell, with his face as ice and iron,
Too late to realize how sinners were dumb.*

Buddha Tse Kong: The last time, I was busy. I had asked Master Yang Tshiang to replace me and accompany Yang Ts'ien on his trip to hell. It was the first time the two Yang's had an occasion to go together to the 5th Palace. The trip was performed impeccably. It has been demonstrated that two religious hearts can harmonize easily and that the Way is profound and immense. It is hopeful that humans realize the advantage of reading the facts in this highly precious canonical book.

One must lend an attentive ear to the rumors that spread out like the vibrations of a stringed musical instrument, and judge them seriously, because words and writings are inadequate to depict all the subtlety and mystery of the Tao. It's like a man eating a watermelon. He must bite into the



pulp to relish the succulent and cooling taste of the fruit instead of contenting himself with nibbling its rind. Tonight, we're going for a tour to hell. Yang Ts'ien, on the dais.

Yang Ts'ien: At your request, Master. You had previously taught me that Immortals and Buddhas had the divine power doubling themselves. Why didn't you exercise your ability of ubiquity and duality?

TK: Ha! Ha! That divine power, I always had it. But I intentionally asked Master Yang Tshiang to replace me for once, simply to create an agreeable variety for the humans' minds. Now, it's quite late. Let's cut short our chatting and set off.

YT: I'm ready, Master.

TK: Here we come to the 5th Palace. Let's go down. The King of the 5th Palace and his mandarins are coming down the steps to welcome us. Let's go greet them.

The King: Be on your feet, Mr. Yang Ts'ien. I am really happy to welcome you, Buddha Tse Kong and Mr. Yang Ts'ien. Please come inside for some relaxation and then we shall talk together.

TK: As of tonight's visit to the 5th Palace, we have accomplished only one half of the mission entrusted us by the order of God to prepare a book. We expect to receive your collaboration for achieving our task gloriously and perfectly.

The King: Venerable Buddha, what you said is right. We are living in an era of mechanics when man's conscience is not as it was formerly. Morality is lost. Fortunately, sacred temples are being erected, institutions are opened to disseminate religious dogmas and methods of spiritual

perfection, conformably to the will of God. The endeavors made by your Temple for spiritual education have brought forth salvation to innumerable persons. Your merits in the dissemination of moral culture are highly admirable. The honor is yours for being designated by celestial order to participate in writing the book “Voyages To Hell”. The prisons of the ten Palaces of Hell have been instructed of your mission since the 15th of the 8th month of the year of the Dragon. Shall we come inside for some rest and discussions?

YT: We thank you very much for your hearty welcome, sir. Outside the Palace, I see a big crowd of souls with their faces all pale with terror. A number of them are looking at our direction.

TK: The King of the 5th Palace, with a face as hard as iron, is very impartial. For a long time, he has been well known to the world of mortals for his rigidity in the application of punishment. Upon hearing his name and title pronounced, the sinful souls are terrified and become a prey to unspeakable distraction.

The King: Won't you come in to feel more at ease?

YT: Thank you, sir.

The King: Please, take seats. Orderly Mandarin! Serve us some tea of immortals and fairies, will you?

The Mandarin: At your orders. Here is the tea. Help yourself to it, sir, honorable visitors.

YT: I am thirsty, and am happy to have a cup of it. It's really wonderful. Its aroma is delicious.

The King: I like to drink this tea which is also called “Bodhisattva with an iron heart”.

TK: His Majesty's words imply a figurative meaning.



Do you think you understand it, Yang Ts'ien?

YT: I see what His Majesty is alluding to. A legend circulates among humans that under the Song dynasty, there lived a mandarin named Pao Kong who was renowned for his impartiality of his judgements in hearings. His face had the coldness of ice, and his heart was as hard as iron. The tea His Majesty is offering us symbolizes these traits of character and reminds us of the methods used by that illustrious magistrate whose reincarnation we find in our host.

The King: Well, the erudition of the holy-scriber is certainly without contest. Your religious wisdom and your level of comprehension are out of the ordinary. You interpret my story splendidly.

YT: It's just guesswork, sir.

The King: I am really delighted to entertain you, gentlemen. The situation of the human world changes from hot to cold. It is pretty changeable. Nowadays, the people only think of disputing honors and profits. The good principles inspired by God have vanished. Everywhere, we see nothing but subterfuge, envy, and hate among men. In order to amass money, people refuse no misdeeds. Activities for promoting human desire and passion are commercialized. All kinds of markets are developed for gaining personal interests. Pleasure-houses, restaurants, night-clubs are mushrooming; pretty girls are employed to kindle sexual desire and vice in the male sex. The authorities of hell, in their day-and-night rounds have witnessed so many immoral acts that their uncountable numbers can't be engraved accurately on an entire bamboo-forest. There exist night-clubs and amusement-centers where an excess of pleasure leads people

to distress, even to death.

I am responsible for the administration of the 5th Palace which is baptized a “Palace of Iron Face and Impartiality”. I examine the causes and handle justice with equity and a maximum of seriousness. I noticed that the sinful souls incarcerated in this prison were terrified at my just and severe verdicts.

Therefore, if people are unwilling to return to the good path, they may someday come to my palace for some time. At that time, they couldn't reproach me for my implacableness in chastising them. My palace is equally surnamed “The Great Penitentiary of Groans”. In fact, all of the detainees in these prisons do nothing but cry and moan. It has 16 cells named “Heart-Wrenching” Prisons. They are particularly reserved for those who, in their terrestrial life, committed unforgivable crimes related to the heart: knavish heart, wicked heart, spiteful heart, revengeful heart, lustful heart, jealous heart, partial heart, selfish heart, wolf's heart, dog's heart, bestial heart. When dealing with all these ignoble sinners, I order my guards to open their chests and wrench out their hearts. These punishments are really horrible, I admit the fact. It is not because I am without mercy, but the karmic law has reserved such torment for those criminals. It's growing late now. I promise to take you to the Heart Wrenching Prison next time.

TK: Indeed, it's growing late. Yang Ts'ien, let's go home.

YT: We are deeply grateful, sir, for your warm welcome and your precious information. My respectful salutations.



The King: I order the civilian mandarins and officers to stand in line for the salute.

TK: Once again, I present my appreciation, sir. Yang Ts'ien, the dais.

YT: I am on it. Shall we start, Master?

TK: The Temple is in sight. Prepare to go down and re-enter your body.

Chapter 32

Visit to the Prison of Heart-Wrenching

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on May 16th, 1977. Year of the Snake.**

*What a pity to ignore your ancestors
To neglect yourself, to pollute your soul,
Morality exists since millennia
Along with culture and fine arts, well designed.*

Buddha Tse Kong: The Chinese culture and its traditional morality were originally the result of the synthesis of the vital force of heaven and earth. From thence, they always remain new and exist indefinitely through the ages.

Nowadays, people are more inclined to materialism. They adore nothing but material welfare. They deny the intrinsic value of their own culture and totally submit to the material civilization of the Occident. Their excessive veneration with regard to foreigners renders them ungrateful to the extent they forget their ancestors and their race. They weaken themselves and bring shame to the next generation. Still worse, with the rapid progress of science and technology, these people pride themselves for having daunted nature and outdone God himself. They never realize that a single tidal wave suffices to eliminate every living creature with their inventions. Even if he is well-equipped with his science and technique, man is simply a small boat drifting on the



immensity of an ocean. His pretention to excel God and destroy the great nature with his science and technology will necessarily lead him some day to bear the terrific catastrophes of heaven. The man who considers himself free from the laws of nature often behaves immorally. It is therefore desirable that every person of generous and virtuous character considers carefully before making any commitment. We are to take a tour to hell, Yang Ts'ien. Come quickly on the dais.

Yang Ts'ien: At your request. I'm ready. Shall we go, Master?

TK: Here we are! Let's go down.

The King: My congratulations to Buddha Tse Kong and Mr. Yang Ts'ien who pay me another visit. What a long and tiring trip!

TK: Never mind, sir. Here we come again to burden you with our desire to inspect the cells of the prison.

The King: Last time, I promised to let you inspect the "Heart-Wrenching" Prison. Now, please follow me.

YT: We thank you deeply, sir. Ahead of us, I see the 36 cells of the Heart-Wrenching Prison. Already, I hear resounding cries and groans. Of course, dreadful effluence of blood is to be seen.

The King: The sinful souls whose hearts are hardened by vice will have to redeem their crimes with their hearts.

YT: The mandarin-governor of the prison is coming. I have to pay him my homage.

The Mandarin: My respects to His Majesty, Buddha Tse Kong and Mr. Yang Ts'ien. I received the order to welcome Mr. Yang Ts'ien, of the Temple of the Sages, and Buddha Tse Kong from Nirvana, who come to visit my prison in person. I

wish to be forgiven for my deficiencies, if any.

YT: You are very obliging, Excellency. We have come here to gather information with a view to writing a book. Your assistance is necessary.

The King: Officer, open the gate of the prison.

The Officer: Your order is executed, sir.

YT: What a frightful sight! These mournful cries oppress my heart. In the prison, small demons are splitting the souls' chests with cutlasses, and extracting their hearts just like a butcher disemboweling the pigs. The souls are fastened to stakes, their chests gaping. They utter heart-rending screams and fall unconscious. What crime did they commit, I wonder.

The Mandarin: At first, I am going to revive a soul with resuscitative water to restore him to life.

YT: Miraculous! A single bowl of water is flushed on the sinner, and here he is, with his chest closed up and his senses recovered.

The Mandarin: I shall have some sinful souls come to tell you their misdeeds while on earth.

The soul: In my lifetime, I used to read abundantly. After finishing my university studies, I was imbued with contemporary ideas and had deep passion for modern culture. While I was attending university, a protestant professor advised me to convert to protestantism. After meeting him, I had not only a chance to perfect my English but also had many occasions to travel to foreign countries. Anticipating a bright future, I accepted his proposal. Since then, I went to church to listen to pastors' sermons and also to improve my English. Most of the believers were young men and

comrades, and we had the opportunity to meet and exchange experiences. For a while, I was an active member of a youth group.

One time, after receiving my baptismal sacrament, I suddenly thought of my native village where people still dealt in the worship of genii, saints, and the veneration of Buddha. I found all such things “out of fashion” and unworthy of modern times. I regarded as superstitious the gesture of prostrating in front of statues. I returned to my village, and decided to convince my family to change. First, I advised my parents to give up their adoration of statues. My parents, who had had lifelong belief and kept strong faith in the religion of their forefathers, refused to hear me. Their attitude irritated me so much that I destroyed all the objects that I found on the altar. My parents, wrathful, snatched a chess-board and threw it at me. I was so indignant that I left the house for good.

After my graduation from university, I followed the pastor many places to preach the Gospel, and after that, I received the investiture of the Church which appointed me to be a missionary to a remote place. Later on, when I was killed in a car accident, I did not find myself rising to paradise as I had expected. Instead, I was seized by wicked demons and escorted to hell, to the Heart-wrenching Prison for punishment. I implore you, sir, to grant me your forgiveness.

The King: The religions, by themselves, are devoid of distinction. They all require absolute faith. Your religion never taught you to vilify your parents’ belief. Neither did the protestant pastor inculcate in you such a spirit of disparagement. It was you, because of your bias to Occidental

ways and manners, who forgot your origin. You destroyed the talismans and ritual tablets of the cult of your ancestors. How could you, with such a faulty faith and bad conduct, hope to teach men the commandment of “remembering its source while drinking the water of a stream”? Your preacher might have taught you not to worship idols and prostrate before statues. But you were not yet up to the level of comprehending the pure truth and failed to realize that the cross, the Bible, and even the pastor were but idols in other forms, and you worshipped them anyway. But if you don’t want to worship idols, then you should not preserve any other type of exoteric rites. You should sincerely eliminate all desires and stay impartial.

By demolishing the name tablets of your ancestors, you denied your source. From whom were you born? Whose name did you bear? Naturally it’s your forefathers’ name. Your acts were adverse to the teaching of God, and this is the reason why paradise rejected you, and it is here, in hell, you have come. As you have just made a frank confession, I deem it proper to subtract two months from your sentence. After completion of your detention here, you will be reincarnated for six successive existences on earth.

TK: Religious faith teaches man the way to regenerate. By no means should he accuse or criticize the faith of other people, pretending his is true and unique. That’s the law of God. By pretending that one’s religion is authentic whereas the others’ are false, one sows discord. Once the feelings of mercy and fraternity are lost, people deviate from the straight path. If it is possible that such lopsided people manage to obtain success in the Way, the deities themselves will be in

disharmony, at odds, in dispute, and paradise will become a battlefield instead of a kingdom of felicity. It's rather late. We shall come back next time. Yang Ts'ien, be ready for the return.

The King: Officers and troopers! Stand in line for the salute.

YT: Our time being limited, we cannot prolong our visit. We are deeply grateful to His Majesty, his mandarins and generals for their assistance.

TK: Come quickly on the dais.

YT: I'm settled, Master. Let's be on our way.

TK: We've arrived. Alight, Yang Ts'ien. Your soul will regain your body.

Chapter 33

Second Visit to the Prison of Heart-Wrenching

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on May 29th, 1977. Year of the Snake.**

*The ignorant are envious of the gentle in many ways
Through lies, slanders and foul plays,
Immorality will certainly have to pay,
In the Heart-Wrenching Prison, they lament night and day.*

Buddha Tse Kong: In the terrestrial world, there is a category of people who are good-for-nothing. They are jealous of talented men, conspire in wicked subterfuges, create villainous tricks, and search out the others' defects to slander them. If they chance to discover somebody alien to their vicious thinking, they set to libel and scorn him. Because of their crimes, they are thrown into the Heart-Wrenching Prison. Their misdeeds are the result of their jealousy of honest people. Tonight, we're going to pay a visit to hell. Yang Ts'ien, be seated on the dais.

Yang Ts'ien: I'm seated, Master. Let's set off.

TK: We've arrived. Come down.

YT: In fact, the Heart-Wrenching Prison is there, ahead of us.

TK: We won't disturb the King tonight, and to save time, we'll go straight to the 16 cells of the prison. The

mandarin-governor has opened the prison door to welcome us.

YT: Let's come in.

The Mandarin: Welcome to Buddha Tse Kong and Mr. Yang Ts'ien. Just step in for observation.

YT: The torment inflicted upon the sinful souls by the laws of hell are really dreadful. From the First Palace, where we paid our first visit, to the successive palaces we visited during these last days, the torments we have seen and heard are simply appalling. But all seem weightless as compared with the horrible pain endured by the sinful souls in this Heart-Wrenching Prison.

The Mandarin: You said it. The heart is the principal organ of man's body. To have one's heart wrenched out is to suffer the most terrible pain. Once the heart is tortured, the six roots of sensation are all shaken and the suffering is indescribable.

TK: Let's come farther in to interview some souls and collect more information.

The Mandarin: Please, wait outside. I shall have some sinners come. I order the geniuses of hell to stop the torment and use the "resuscitative fan" to revive the unconscious souls so we can see their real faces.

The Genius: At your request.

The Mandarin: Have three sinners come for Buddha Tse Kong and Mr. Yang Ts'ien to interrogate them on their offences, so they can write a book of moral guidance for men.

The Genius: Three souls are momentarily released. Quick, follow the Governor to the prison door.

The Mandarin: These are Buddha Tse Kong and

Mr. Yang Ts'ien of the Temple of the Sages in the living world. They come here, by order of God, to gather necessary information for writing a book. So, you must give an account of the crimes you committed in your lifetime.

The soul: When in life, I worked in a government office. As I was incapable of doing anything meritorious, I was jealous of my colleagues who were successively promoted to higher positions. I bore a grudge against the office-chief and looked for opportunities to take my revenge. I secretly reported to my superiors, slandering some for laziness, the others for stealing, with the purpose of degrading my office-mates. Four years ago, I died of a liver disease. The impermanent black-and-white demons led me here for imprisonment. I was later led to stand before the Mirror Revelator of Past Crimes which reflected all the images of my crimes. I was handed over to the King of the 5th Palace. The King was furious at the sight of me. He reprimanded me, saying I was talentless but discontent with my incapacity. I was envious of talented people and had the wicked heart to harm my colleagues, and the torment that corresponded to my misdeeds was heart wrenching. Day and night the demons wrench out my heart, which causes me extreme suffering. During my lifetime, I never believed in the karmic law. Now, after my death, I feel its reactions.

TK: While nurturing envy against the persons better than you, you lost your conscience. You destroyed the union-spirit of your collectivity just as a horse does harm to its own herd.

In general, people show great regard for men of character, of virtue, and of talent, for they can learn from



them, and follow their examples to progress. Now, if they behave with a jealous heart, they will have to suffer the torment of heart-wrenching as does this sinful soul.

The Mandarin: Now, your turn, second soul, you give an account of your past sins.

The soul: When in the living world, I was converted as a devout Buddhist. I led a life of spiritual perfection at home, and read a lot of canonical books. I scorned the disciples of the other religions, particularly those of Taoism who, I was convinced, were of low level, pertaining to heterodox doctrine with their worship of genii and demons. These people, I believed, could not accede to a higher plane of evolution. I was also offered many books edited by the Temple of the Sages which I did not deign to read, pretending they were written at random by mediums obsessed by spirits and demons, and such was a demonic religion.

During my lifetime, I disparaged the other religions, considering myself happy for having acquired full knowledge of Buddhism, which was absolutely sublime. Never had I thought that it was not the Nirvana I acceded to, but hell was the place to provide me hospitality. In place of the genii-protectors who should come to welcome the religious men like me, infernal guards arrested and led me to the 5th Palace before locking me up in a dark cell. Seeing me so low-spirited, the King of Hell reprimanded me in these terms:

"You are a traitor, you betray the Buddha Amitabha. You don't have a merciful heart. You are a buddhist but you don't behave as a genuine buddhist should. You are spiteful and disrespectful against the other religions. All in all, you do not understand the buddhist sense of equality. Every religion has its own way and

reason. Authentic religions, one and all, teach their believers to do good and shun evil. Aware as you were that buddhism was immense, conciliatory and forgiving, you did belittle the other religions, and prided yourself for having a superior spirit. In your life, you had nothing but preconceived thoughts, you showed yourself vain and proud of your "self". Thus you unconsciously swerved from the right path of the Tao. Your buddhist conscience was darkened, and here you are, in hell".

I advise my buddhist brethren not to commit the same errors as mine, for they will create bad karmas and endure moral suffering.

TK: With so darkened a buddhist conscience, how could you hope to preach buddhism convincingly? How regrettable it is for you! You have to suffer not only the heart wrenching torment now, but also the tongue-cutting torment in days to come.

The Mandarin: To the 3rd soul now. Relate the faulty acts of your life.

The soul: In my lifetime, I served in a temple for invocation of spirits. At first, I performed the role of a medium and I must admit that the revelations of the deities were marvelously effective for educating people. Afterwards, as I remarked that the sexton of the temple had little regard for me, and felt the séances of invocation were pretty long and wearing, while they failed to afford me substantial gains, I lost faith in my role as a medium. I gradually told the believers that mediumnistic revelations were falsified and only superstitious people believe in them. The pious folks, men and women, who believed in my sayings, lost their confidence and stopped coming to the Temple to hear



religious teachings. As for me, I quit my job as a medium and left the temple.

Seven years later, I died of sickness. My soul was arrested by the infernal guards and led to the King of the 5th Palace. Upon seeing me, the King reprimanded, *"You were the main medium of your temple. Even if the temple sexton had little consideration for you, you were not supposed to vilify the deities. In doing so, you committed a heavy sin. I condemn you to 15 years of detention in the Heart-Wrenching Prison"*. It is too late for me to repent of my past misdeeds. I implore you, Buddha Tse Kong, to solicit from the King some grace for me.

TK: The genii of spiritism represent the deities. Profane humans should not blaspheme them, or their blasphemy will be unforgivable. Mediumnistic scriptures have the purpose of teaching morality to men, and bringing them salvation in accordance with their destinies. It is for this reason God ordered the foundation of these temples. To blaspheme against these temples is a very grave and unforgivable sin. It's time. Yang T'sien, come on the dais.

YT: My sincere appreciation to His Excellency and the Generals. Good bye.

The Mandarin: We will be very happy to see you coming back to our prison.

TK: The Heart-Wrenching Prison is very important. Next time, we'll come back for a visit.

YT: I am ready, Master.

TK: Here is the Temple. Yang T'sien, reenter your body.

Chapter 34

Third Visit to the Prison of Heart-Wrenching

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on July 3rd, 1977. Year of the Snake.
In the 7th lunar month, when hell opens its door.**

*In July, full moon is the time of redemption
Happy and delighted, the souls return home
They are set free for thirty days on earth
And do not want to come back after having fun.*

Buddha Tse Kong: In the 7th month, the doors of the prisons are opened wide. Those brothers and sisters have an opportunity to return to the living world, enthusiastic and happy. For this reason, the 7th month is customarily called the month of “Pardon for the sins of the dead”. The living men should be very cautious not to disturb the demons. If they preserve their respect for the deities, they will have no fear of offending them. The doors of hell being opened, our trips will face difficult obstacles. But I can assure you that the demons of hell will move away quickly at the sight of Buddha Tse Kong, alias the Mad Monk.

Yang Ts’ien: Demons are nothing but human beings changing their forms. All we need to do is to remain calm before their monstrous forms and they will vanish by themselves. I have no fear at all, Master.

TK: That’s what I call a fine speech, Yang Ts’ien. Now, how about going?



YT: I am well in place, Master. Let's go...

TK: Destination!

YT: Before us are the buildings of the "Portico of Demons" where the doors are opened. The souls are hustling their way out, all of them beaming and merry with this chance of inhaling a breath of fresh air.

TK: In the 7th month, the Portico of Demons is widely opened, and all of the souls living in the popular quarter of hell are permitted to go out in turn and wander to their hearts' content. They head toward the world of the living, as gay and excited as birds leaving their cages.

YT: Why do these souls move away as we approach?

TK: It is because we bring along the Celestial Edict which emanates a dazzling aureola that frightens them.

YT: Is it true that every year, in the 7th month, all of the souls in hell are released temporarily so they can move around freely?

TK: Not exactly. In the 7th month, the doors of the buildings at the Portico of Demons are only opened for the souls living in the Popular Quarter. They are "ordinary souls" who did neither good nor evil in their lifetime. In principle, they are not allowed to go out of their quarters, except on the occasion of the 30 days of amnesty in the 7th month. The regulations prescribe that all of the souls may leave their cells on the 15th of the 7th month to receive the gifts offered by the people of the living world. This day is called "Redemption days" by Buddhism or "Mid-Autumn Relief" by Taoism.

Usually, the dignitaries of hell have a well-established timetable for their activities, but the length of these is not precise and this is the way they proceed. Yang Ts'ien, come quickly on the dais. We're going to the Heart-Wrenching Prison.

YT: I'm ready, Master. You can start.

TK: We've arrived. Let's come down.

YT: The Mandarin-Governor is approaching for our encounter. Excellency, we are coming again to disturb you, and hope to be further informed by you.

The Mandarin: No civility, please. Since it is the 7th month, all of the alleys of hell are jammed, and moving around must have been difficult for you, I suppose.

TK: That's the least of things. We notice that outside the prisons, the souls are enthusiastic and free.

The Mandarin: Please come inside for better observation. I will furnish you necessary documents for your book of moral guidance for mankind.

YT: Thank you very much, Excellency. I see in the cells of the prison some sinful souls who cry and moan more terribly than they used to. I wonder why?

The Mandarin: Simply because in the 7th month, every inculpable soul called "ordinary" is authorized to go out of his cell, whereas the others are not. That's why the latter are so despondent, they cry and groan all the more. When in life, they did hear of the 7th month as the time when the souls in hell were set free, but they failed to know that the souls with heavy sins would not be granted such clemency. The infernal guards, as impassible as ever, carry out their punishment which makes the souls more unhappy than ever. If humans don't behave honestly, do good acts and avoid committing sins, they will be condemned in this place. Since they can't hide their crimes, they will be punished and will lose their freedom. Since your time is limited, I shall have some souls come for the interview.

YT: Thank you, Excellency. The guards of hell are pitiless. They use sharp edged cutlasses to open the souls'

chests, blood is streaming. Oh, it's an atrocious sight! I simply can't witness it any longer!

The Mandarin: I have had two souls come. Look here! You are to declare all that you did in your lifetime so Buddha Tse Kong and Mr. Yang Ts'ien can take necessary notes for writing a book on hell.

The soul: I am really ashamed of myself. I was at a mature age when my wife left the world. I was obsessed by carnal desires. One day, I met a young girl on a deserted field near the village. The swine of Epicurus awakened in me. I seized her in my arms and dragged her into a sugar cane plantation. The young girl yelled, struggled with all might and implored me to let her go. Yet, I had lost all common sense, I intimidated her all the more and threatened to kill her. Finally, she yielded and let me rape her.

Later on, I felt remorseful for my act. The young girl didn't lodge a complaint against me, but I detested myself, and quite often, I scolded myself. A little while later, I died of a disease, and my soul came down to hell. The King of Hell was highly infuriated upon seeing me. Since I didn't deny my sin and confessed all my wrongdoing, I didn't have to stand before the Mirror Revelator of Past Crimes anymore. I was condemned to ten years of detention in the Heart-Wrenching Prison. My heart, being so greedy with sensual voluptuousness and rape, has been cut out. Until now, I have endured four years of torture. I know it's too late for repentance.

The Mandarin: To rape a girl is to ruin her life, and this is a grave sin. Though your repentance may appear sincere, you can't be forgiven because you had, of your own will, jumped into the divine net. You can reproach neither God nor anybody else. I therefore advise the people who have

committed such crime to repent in time, and confess their sin to the deities, form a sworn faith, or print and distribute 1000 volumes of this book “Voyages To Hell” in order to help humans back to the right path. They will then be granted some clemency and spared the punishment of hell. I order another soul to narrate his past crime.

The soul: I suffer so horribly that I can hardly express myself. In my lifetime, I committed a severe crime. The terrific pains I am undergoing seem unending. I supplicate Buddha Tse Kong to rescue me.

TK: You were passionately lustful in your life. Now, in your death, you have to reap the sour fruit of your bad behavior. The law of karma is strict. I can’t do anything for you.

The soul: I am so miserable. If the Very Venerable Tse Kong refuses to save me, I am reduced to continue my sufferings. In life, I was a taxicab-driver. I often committed foolish acts, because I was rather ill-bred. Being of lascivious nature, I used to hang pornographic pictures in my car and I installed a radio set in it. Every time I had a lone woman passenger in my car, I began to court her. If she insulted me and called me an impudent monster, I felt more flattered than abashed and sought to rape her. Late one night, I carried a woman whose great beauty excited my sexual desires. I switched on my radio loudly, accelerated my speed and drove my car to a deserted place. There, I took out my jack-knife, and while menacing her with it, I succeeded to rape her. This stratagem of mine had been repeated three times in my life. Five years ago, unfortunately I was killed in a car accident. I was immediately arrested by buffalo-headed and horse-faced demons who tethered me with iron chains and led me to hell. After judgement of the King of Hell, I was condemned to 30

years of imprisonment in the heart-wrenching prison of the 5th Palace. At present, I suffer excessively, but it is too late for me to repent. Mr. Yang Ts'ien, please, I hope that upon your return to the Temple of the Sages, you will warn humans not to commit the same sin as mine. If they do, they will not be able to repent in time, and will endure extremely frightful and unbearable punishment in hell. I have been reproaching myself for my stupidity in committing such a sin. By no means can I be freed from its consequences.

The Mandarin: The past misdeeds of this soul were really damnable. His life was reduced by 10 years. After expiration of his term in this prison, he will be sent to the Eternal Prison where every hope of release and reincarnation is cancelled. Humans must be aware of this fact and avoid committing the sin of sexual greed. This is the gravest sin among thousands of others. As a rule, rape and illegitimate sexual relations are never forgiven by the laws of hell, and the sinners have no chance of escape.

TK: Compared with the other punishment, heart-wrenching is the most painful. May earthly man be aware of it and not to be so blinded of committing lustful sins. If they do, they will suffer this torment after their death. It's quite late, Yang Ts'ien. Let's go back to the Temple.

YT: Our great thanks to His Excellency, and to the Generals.

TK: Quickly on the dais.

YT: I am on. Let's set off.

TK: Here we come. Get down and run to your body.

Chapter 35

Fourth Visit to the Prison of Heart-Wrenching

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on July 16th, 1977. Year of the Snake.**

*The mayflies and gambling passions are a pair
Rich today but poor tomorrow, which is fair,
The lascivious woman buries her virtue and dignity
Fallen into the abyss, she laments in despair.*

Buddha Tse Kong: Hooligans and vagabonds don't want to work as honest people do. They take gambling as an occupation and a means of living. As thick as thieves they set a trap for the candid folks to fall into and get pitifully ruined. Recently, many cases of robbery and murder took place in Central Taiwan. They were the consequences of gambling, because the gamblers, willy-nilly, will fall upon the path of sin.

Sooner or later, they will become thieves or bandits and the road to prison becomes inevitable. Gambling has ruined many people, and is the root of much evil caused to society. Humans should discontinue gambling and avoid attracting regrettable consequences. Adultery and gambling are two grave sins that receive equal punishment. In hell, souls committing these two sins are crying and moaning terrifyingly. Yang Ts'ien, I'm going to have you visit the 16 cells of the heart-wrenching prison so you can personally see

these sinners. Come quickly on the dais.

Yang Ts'ien: I'm ready, Master. We can start.

TK: We've arrived. Come down, son.

YT: The streets of hell sound more animated this time. Why so?

TK: It's the festival of "Amnesty for the Trespassed" on the 15th of the 7th lunar month. In the terrestrial world, people give offerings to the roving souls on the 15th and 16th days of the 7th month. The souls with slight sins are allowed to get out of their prisons for receiving alms.

YT: So, that's why. I see the Mandarin-Governor coming from a distance to welcome us.

The Mandarin: Welcome to you, gentlemen. It's the festival of "Amnesty for the Trespassed" today. The atmosphere is quite noisy and tumultuous around here. I hope you don't mind.

TK: Don't worry about that, Excellency. We hope to receive your assistance and that of the generals and officers as well.

The Mandarin: You are carrying out a holy mission of God. Your achievements and merits are great. It is our duty to render you service. Shall we come inside for observation?

YT: Thank you, Excellency. In the prisons, the sinful souls are yelling and groaning terribly.

TK: All of the souls detained in the heart-wrenching prison are grave sinners, therefore, they aren't eligible to benefit from the amnesty and can't go to receive the offerings of the living world.

The Mandarin: I have brought two sinful souls who will tell you the crimes of their life. (to the souls) Listen!

These are the living Buddha Tse Kong and his disciple Yang Ts'ien, from the Temple of the Sages. They received the order of God to gather information in hell for the preparation of a book that serves as a moral guide for humans. You are ordered to declare what you did in your terrestrial life.

The soul: At your request. When I was living, my work required me to travel. Local inns were my residence, and casual women were my companions. After a short period of time, I became a passionate gambler. At first, I gambled out of curiosity, but in the long run, gambling became an addiction, and I couldn't live without it. If I missed one day going to gambling-dens, I felt nervous and worried. I was so addicted to gambling that I became a ruffian of gaming-houses. I earned much money but lost all of it in gambling and had to borrow large amounts from my companions. I totally ignored my family.

At the age of 43, I died in a motorcycle accident. The infernal guards led me to hell where I was told that my longevity was curtailed by five years. I had to pass from the 1st to the 4th Palace for investigation, and finally, I was imprisoned in the 5th Palace. The King was furious and condemned me to 15 years in the heart-wrenching prison. Here, because of gambling, my passionate heart is extracted day after day, and the suffering is beyond expression. I hope that humans are careful not to follow my example.

Hell abhors gamblers, and the King of the 5th Palace used to precede every judgement by an order to give the gamblers a hundred blows by clubs. It's really humiliating and painful. With our hands injured, we suffer and cry

mournfully. O! Buddha Tse Kong! I pray you! Come to my rescue!

TK: The people of your caliber don't have a heart. Don't count on my help. I can't do anything for you. You must try to tolerate the pain.

The Mandarin: Your supplications are of no use. No one can save you. If you can't eliminate your passion for gambling, I shall even send you to the hand-roasting torment. Your sin of gambling has created a bad karma for you. You cannot blame either God, or your fellow-creatures. Now, you, the second soul, narrate the misdeeds of your life.

The female soul: There are a lot of people around here. I blush while making my declarations. I was a married woman, but because of my lustful nature, I got involved in clandestine relationships with the youths of my neighborhood. I committed adultery with five young men, totally without the knowledge of my husband. At the age of 54, I died of a stroke. My soul was arrested by the white-and-black demons of hell, and led to the Mirror Revelator of Past Crimes to witness the images of my contemptible actions. I was forced to confess on the spot, unable to deny before such irrefutable proof. After that, I was sent to the 5th Palace and imprisoned in the heart-wrenching jail for 20 years. My heart is cut out each day, and the suffering is unbearable. It's too late for me to repent now. I pray you, Buddha Tse Kong, to intercede with the King of the 5th Palace and obtain some grace for me.

TK: As a married woman, you should have been loyal to your husband. But you did commit the sin of adultery and

deviated from the good path. I really can't do anything for you.

The Mandarin: Don't budge an inch for her, Venerable Buddha Tse Kong. She had been a sensual woman, so her heart, full of carnal pleasures, must be cut out in conformity with the karmic law which dictates like cause and effect. In her lifetime, she committed odious sins without a shadow of remorse. Had she known to repent and amend with prayers to Buddha, she could have been forgiven. Unfortunately, she didn't show any sign of intent for amendment, even after her death. It is impossible to provide her some amnesty.

TK: Your words are reasonable, Excellency. All those who committed the sins of gambling and lewdness may repent of their wrongdoing, and return to the right path by doing good actions, or by printing and distributing the volumes of "Voyages To Hell". They will obtain pardon for their sins. Yang Ts'ien, it's time for going home.

YT: At your request, Master. My best thanks to His Excellency and to the Generals. Good bye.

The Mandarin: Troop-mustering for salute to our visitors.



Words From Master Luong Si Hang–Vi Kien

Today, we have read until this chapter, and clearly see that all actions stem from people's hearts. The sin of lust is the gravest sin, but there are people who want to protect and defend their vice, so they create this or that religion to

advocate for lust. You have read in newspapers, and clearly seen that the endeavors of lewd people are not durable.

Today, we strive for self-perfection and self-progress, so everybody should know about self-repentance, and how to listen and see properly. God has given us ears and eyes, to hear and see offensive matters, but we do not record them in our mind. Our most important task for spiritual liberation is to achieve serenity.

Every day, you engage yourselves in spiritual perfection. What is the purpose of meditating and silently invoking Nam-Mo-A-Di-Da-Phat? We want to return to our true serene nature; only then will we see the wonderful Tao. Many people boast about their religion: *"My religion is a good one, the religion of the other person is a bad one"*. This is not advisable. If our religion is a good one, have we been successful in perfecting ourselves spiritually? How many words have we understood from the precious teachings in the Bible and in the Buddhist canonical books? We only know how to criticize, but we do not practice. This is a great sin. We are breaching our serenity; we only know how to criticize others, and don't know how to criticize ourselves; if we do not know how to correct ourselves, how will we have an opportunity for further evolution?

Every human being has different life circumstances; only through suffering will one understand the spiritual path and strive to arrive to the frontier of the Dharma of Buddha. On earth, humans have to suffer before searching for the path of spiritual perfection. Life circumstances are our beneficial teacher. Sometimes, you may be able to perceive the meaning of your circumstances, but when we analyze them deeply,

they are all but sufferings. All human beings on earth endure sufferings equally, from a king to an ordinary citizen. Only by returning to serenity will we have an abundant will for spiritual cultivation. We will maintain our faith clearly, and we may stand upright in the middle of gusty winds and storms, we may withstand any trial anywhere, while keeping a serene heart. This is the behavior of a true spiritual adept. On the other hand, if you become sorrowful when facing a little bit of trials, you are solely responsible, and you will only disturb your heart. When we make our heart more and more agitated, we will only invite impurities into our consciousness, and we will have difficulty perfecting ourselves spiritually.

Therefore, as spiritual adepts, we should strive to release our impurities. To do this, we must remember that our original root is serenity. Presently, you have hands and feet, money and material possessions, and so on, but some day, you will die and return to emptiness. You come here empty-handed and must return empty-handed. If we do not think about emptiness, how can we return to our origin in the future?

We clearly see that the book “Voyages To Hell” is a compassionate means to guide and remind humans, so that they may clearly see their daily sins, such as the karma of mouth and the karma of heart. We denigrate this person or that person, but we do not know how to find fault with ourselves to influence others. We only know that our denouncements are reasonable, but this reasoning will be forgotten and no one will be using it. However, if we rectify our heart and character, we will propel our compassionate energy outwardly and be able to influence others. Therefore,

we must cultivate ourselves spiritually and advance with our own efforts. All materials on earth serve as guidance for our spiritual evolution. In the present life, non-existence alternates with existence, and there is no real scenery on earth. As I said before, you will not be able to carry your body to bury it on your own when you die. You can only fortify your spiritual will. This is called “liberation”.

To cultivate ourselves spiritually, we must practice in order to unify our original energy and perceive the supernatural structure, which gave us life. Only a supernatural organism can give us life, and no one can create our face or our nose. But eventually, this body is also false. Why did the Lord, the Supreme God, create this physical body? This body is used to control our soul; our serenity is being controlled with each of our actions. Our wealth is serenity; our wealth is love and forgiveness. We must understand this point clearly to have the opportunity for spiritual training and advancement. When we conduct a business on earth, we will have the opportunity to nurture our virtue and serenity to guide and save others in their spiritual evolution.

We should not be arrogant and presumptuous and think that we do not make any mistakes, and we do not commit any wrongdoings. If you keep insulting others, you will eventually carry the karma of mouth. You have done wrong, and you have debased yourselves unknowingly. On the other hand, if you regenerate yourselves, if you correct the impure parts in your inner consciousness, you will be able to influence mankind.

Have you seen how Sakyamuni Buddha succeeded in his revolution to attain great serenity? He resolved all matters

in his life to arrive at liberation, and his teachings have had everlasting influences on mankind. If we know Him, but do not accept His influence in our practice, we will still fall low. Even if you display the most beautiful picture of Buddha in your family, the infernal demon will still come to accompany you to hell to pay back your sins, because you do not turn to the righteous path, but only commit wrongdoings and scorn others. This is the gravest sin that will be engraved in your mind. If you are impure, you will automatically attract impurities; if you are pure, you will harmonize with purity. We have the exercises of Concentration of Spiritual Energy, Cyclical Breathing Without Retention, and Meditative Contemplation to release impurities in our inner consciousness; we should strive to practice them day and night. When we have free time, it would be valuable to rectify our spiritual consciousness. This is a great blessing. If we do not rectify our consciousness, we will not have an opportunity for advancement in the future.

If we know that our soul is eternal, but we do not correct ourselves, we will lose the opportunity for regeneration; we will descend to hell, we will be jailed and tormented because of our ignorance and cruelty when mistreating others. On the other hand, if we calmly forge our virtue of patience and resignation, we will have the opportunity to influence others. This is the consciousness of harmony, and we will no longer discriminate between evil-minded and honest people. When we have achieved the consciousness of harmony, we will transfer our compassionate energy to all, enabling them to see clearly that their final wealth is to cultivate themselves spiritually to attain liberation. Only spiritual perfection will

save us, and no one else will be able to save us. Why are kings unable to save themselves? Why can't they save themselves, even though they hold power in their hands? Finally, they have to go from one place to another to pay back all their karmas, and endure other miseries later on as hell is waiting for them. Then, they will express the great vow of sacrifice, and return to earth in the form of an ox or a cow, to sacrifice every bit of meat, every piece of skin, and every piece of bone in hopes of regenerating into a human being. They must practice the character of a bodhisattva, and make infinite sacrifices in order to return to the form of a human.

Today, we rejoice to be born as humans and to have the opportunity to listen to canonical books. If we follow the path of spiritual practice, we will survive. If we do not practice and continue to deceive ourselves, let's see what the future will hold for us. If we keep increasing our darkness, we will only descend to the world of hell and will not ascend to the terrestrial world. If we refuse to open the higher levels to harmonize with purity and evolve further, we will always remain bound to anger, foolishness, and agitation, and we will commit our own suicide; we will bury ourselves alive from one existence to another. Even though your soul does not die, you will be tormented as described in the book "Voyages To Hell". Every day, you will suffer because your heart will be pulled out and your tongue will be cut; every day, you will drink urine, for what purpose? It's so that we will awaken our consciousness and give up our sins.

On earth, it takes many years to plant trees. Similarly, it takes many years to raise a human being. When we understand the Tao, we should repent our mistakes and

amend ourselves to make our parents happy. Parents hope their children will know how to remain healthy and how to maintain good behavior, and they will rejoice upon seeing their children do so. Only through spiritual perfection will we achieve complete filial piety. We will advance quickly and easily, and we will no longer be blocked. There is no other way to release our karma.

Only through spiritual perfection will we release our karma of heart. Only when you awaken your consciousness, will you be willing to release your karma with your own efforts. If someone reminds you, it is not certain that you will believe it to be the right thing. Once awakened, you will see that the righteous dharma starts with yourselves. If you accept to correct yourselves, if you accept to advance, you will receive purity and lightness. If you refuse to correct yourselves and advance further, you will embrace the impurities and wait for the day to live with the actions and reactions in the realm of hell.

I sincerely thank you for your attention and presence today.

Chapter 36

Visit to the 6th Palace of Hell

Interview with the King of Palace

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on August 6th, 1977. Year of the Snake.**

*Here comes again the mid-autumn
At midnight, he wakes up, desolate
To see old age creeping on apace
Let's awaken, regenerate, and not be late.*

Buddha Tse Kong: A whole year has passed quickly, and here we are again in the mid-autumn season. Time is as fleeting as the current of a river. This time last year, the honorable Temple of the Sages, obeying the order of the Celestial Emperor, began to write the book on hell. Before we realized it, one year has passed. A painful year, indeed, but a fully meritorious year for me as well as for my disciples who worked day and night to edit the book. A man's life is so brief, just as the ancient sages stated, "*Since time immemorial until the present, septuagenarians are scarce*".

Recently, the sciences have progressed greatly and every attempt is made to prolong man's longevity. However, the ancient sages also had a proverb that said, "*Man's life starts at the age of seventy*". God has created man without a restriction on aging, but man has wasted his vital energy quickly because of his greed and lustful desires, which destroy his quintessence energy significantly. Consequently, terrestrial people look for

the path of death on their own. They should instead think of regenerating themselves soon and nurture their spiritual energy in order to enjoy the celestial longevity. Yang T'sien, quickly go on the dais for a visit to hell.

Yang T'sien: Master, where are we going today?

TK: We have visited the 5th Palace. Today, we shall visit the 6th Palace. Keep your morale up, son!

YT: Our mission to visit hell for observation and writing a book is halfway accomplished; I feel somewhat reassured.

TK: Regardless of any task, one will succeed if one maintains a steady faith. Our mission to visit hell is a heavily responsible task, but we will accomplish it beautifully. Quickly go on the dais, as time is short.

YT: I am ready. Please depart.

TK: We've arrived. Come down.

YT: The officers of the 6th palace are ready to greet us. Sinner souls are assembled in great numbers outside the palace, probably to wait for the judgement. The King of the Palace suddenly declares a respite and suspends his judgements, which causes a great surprise among the souls who look on.

TK: The King-Judge comes to welcome us in person. Yang Ts'ien, follow me. We're going to pay him respects

YT: I follow you, Master. My respects to His Majesty the King and to their Excellencies the Mandarins. I am Yang Ts'ien, a disciple of the Temple of the Sages in Tai Chu. My master and I received the order of God to write a book on hell. We are coming here tonight to collect information. We wish to be granted your assistance.

The King: Be on your feet. Not too much courtesy, please. I have long heard of the Temple of the Sages which actively participated in the dissemination of religious doctrines and acquired great merits. Last mid-autumn we received the order of God and we are aware of your sacred mission and the reason for your visits to hell. Honorable Buddha Tse Kong and Mr. Yang Ts'ien, I invite you to come inside for some refreshments.

TK: We are grateful for your warm welcome, sir. Yang T'sien, let's follow His Majesty into the Palace.

The King: Orderly officer, bring us some tea of the Immortals and Fairies, will you?

The Orderly Officer: At your request. Tea is served, sir.

The King: Be without reserve. Make yourself at home, please.

YT: Thank you, sir. This tea doesn't exist in the terrestrial world. Its taste is excellent, it is cooling and medicinal, as far as I know.

The King: This is only a kind of crude tea, but it is precious, because every rare thing is valuable. Well, I am really happy about your visit, gentlemen. Human morality is declining so that God Himself is deeply disturbed. He ordered your Temple to write a book on hell. A large number of humans don't believe in the punishment they will have to suffer in hell after their death. A special order is therefore given to Buddha Tse Kong to guide Yang Ts'ien's soul to hell to record the situation of humans after their death, and the pains they have to endure. During the mediumistic séances organized by the Temple of the Sages, the Celestial Cherub

Yu Hiu uses his psychic divine powers to relay to earth what Yang Ts'ien sees and hears in hell, and directs the hand of Yang Ts'ien's body to write accurate accounts. I am convinced that the book, once edited and popularized, will bring forth salvation to many humans. Nowadays, most of the people are interested in materialistic sciences and neglect the deities. They don't believe in the karmic law and allow themselves to commit many acts of murder, sensuality and piracy. Men are absorbed in pursuing material things and think of nothing but their individual interests. They venture to infringe on the human law, knowing its contains many weaknesses.

And thence, in every country, the morality of the people is deplorably decadent. Their greed for material things induces them to behave dishonestly. I am profoundly affected and disappointed because of the moral decline in the terrestrial world. It is the habit of skeptical people to disregard the deities and the law of causality, so they are the ones who commit sins more readily. None of them will be spared hell's punishment. A proverb goes like this, *"The Celestial Net is enormously large and vast; in spite of its wide meshes no one can escape."* I reign over the 6th Palace which is surnamed "The Great Infernal Prison". All the souls that come here have previously passed by the 5th Palace where they went through torment. The surname of "Great Infernal Prison" also means that this place is reserved for the souls who are to pass by the 16 jails of hell. Humans who violate the divine law and fail to observe the rules of morality and virtue will have to undergo severe and terrible punishments.

Mr. Yang Ts'ien, upon your return to the terrestrial world, do advise humans to regenerate and change from doing

evil. Tonight, I highly regard your visit. The sinful souls suffer different types of punishment in this place. Humans must be conscious of their culpability and proceed with a thorough examination of their conscience.

TK: It's quite late for tonight. With your permission, we would like to come back another time for an inspection of the jails.

The King: That's agreeable. I will be delighted to see you again, gentlemen. Troop-mustering for the salute...

YT: My deep gratitude for the tea and your precious instructions, sir. We ask to take leave.

TK: The dais, now.

YT: Ready for departure, Master.

TK: Here is the Temple. Your body is waiting for you.

Chapter 37

Visit to the Prison of Kidney-Lopping and Casting to Rats

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on August 19th, 1977. Year of the Snake.**

*In the splendor of the moon, deep at night,
Let's visit the infernal regions, Yang and I,
To write a book following the divine order,
Which serves as admonition to three spheres of mankind.*

Buddha Tse Kong: An entire year has gone by since your honorable temple, obeying the divine order, began to write the book "Voyages To Hell", and I have had the honor to guide the holy-scribe Yang Ts'ien to hell for observation and encounter with the sinful souls who relate to him their misdeeds. This is a hard mission, and as the paths of hell, in bad repair, render the travel painful and tiring, it is all the more precarious

The book "Voyages To Hell" will be a rare masterpiece dedicated to humans, written by the order of God. The devout men and women of the Temple of the Sages are also ordered by the Celestial Edict to propagate the Tao. With the participation of the holy scribe Yang Ts'ien whose spirit is extremely lucid, I am completely confident that this sacred mission will certainly be accomplished. Until now, the book is only half-finished, and I expect that the disciples of the temple will make a great effort to finish it without delay.



Once the book is completed, Yang Ts'ien will have acquired great merits for the benefit of his descendants for the next three generations. Time for departure, Yang Ts'ien. Get seated on the dais.

Yang Ts'ien: At your request, sir. I am deeply grateful with all my heart for the things you taught me. But I am really sorry, because as a novice, I haven't been able to assimilate all of your valuable instructions. Venerable Master, will you give me one of your miracle pills to back up my morale. I just came quickly back from the Southern Temple and feel very tired.

TK: Regardless of your painful work, you have known to keep your faith intact. Once more, I am willing to give you my miracle pills. Have you by chance noticed that your health has been improving greatly since we began writing this book on hell? Well, it's because the immortals and buddhas have blessed you with more fluid of vital energy. Tonight, I give you three additional miracle pills. Swallow them quickly and ready yourself for the trip.

YT: I am greatly touched by your kind gesture, Master. I had had stomach pains for many years, but from the day I received the divine order, my distress decreased gradually and has disappeared completely without any recourse to medicine. At present, with the effect of your pills, I feel physically and morally revived. Thank you infinitely, Master.

TK: The time is growing late. Come on!

YT: I'm settled. Start now, Master.

TK: We've come to our destination. Get down.

YT: Please, Master, what's that prison we see over there? I hear dismal crying and squeaking of rats, too.

TK: It is the 6th Palace governing 16 small prisons with the torture of kidney-lopping and casting to rats. The mandarin-governor and his officers are coming. Let's go salute them.

YT: Yes, sir. I present my greetings to His Excellency and to the Generals. My name is Yang Ts'ien, I am a disciple of the Temple of the Sages in Tai Chu. Tonight, I follow my master to visit your honorable palace, and am greatly obliged for any assistance you will lend me.

The Mandarin: Take it easy, please. This prison has received the order of the King of the 6th Palace and I was instructed of the arrival of Buddha Tse Kong and Mr. Yang Ts'ien. Please, come in after me.

YT: Thank you for your warm welcome, Excellency. At the bottom of the cells, I see gigantic rats attacking the sinful souls, who writhe on the ground, their arms desperately protecting their bodies against the famished rodents. Distressing screams and maddening cries are prevalent. What sins did these souls commit?

The Mandarin: In this prison, there are only male detainees. In their lifetime, they either indulged in lustful behavior or transgressed the rules and commandments of their religion by behaving immorally. As a result, they are having their kidneys and sexual organs chopped off for the giant rats to gnaw, in order to exterminate the roots of their vice.

TK: This torture is extremely painful. There is a saying that: "In order to destroy an herb, its roots must be unearthed, or else it will grow anew when the wind starts blowing". This group of men so greedy for "spring wind" have to endure corresponding torture.

The Mandarin: I shall have some souls come to relate their evil doings that engendered the punishment of this prison.

YT: Very fine. Here are the sinful souls. Their arms are bound together while they are attacked by the giant rats. Some shriek and cry, the others roll on the ground, twisting with pain. The rats seem extremely ferocious and hostile. They bite the victims the way a cat devours a mouse.

TK: This sight is similar to the one of an old rat nibbling at a jute-sack and eating the grains of cereal in it. The sight of streaming blood arouses my pity for those men addicted to carnal pleasures who are bearing such dreadful punishment.

The Mandarin: Two sinful souls are coming. (to the souls) These gentlemen are Buddha Tse Kong and Mr. Yang Ts'ien who have, by order of God, come to visit hell. You are ordered to tell them your crimes and furnish them necessary information for writing a book on hell that serves as a moral guide for humans.

The soul: When alive, I was converted to a religious order, decided to obey the religious commandments and not to marry a wife and have children. Some time later, being unable to resist the lust of the flesh, I maintained illicit relations with a religious woman.

After my death, far from rising to paradise, my soul was arrested by the black-and-white demons and led to the Memory Hall where I witnessed in the Mirror Revelator of Past Crimes the detailed misdeeds of my life. I found it useless to deny my crimes before such a miraculous mirror. After that, I was sent to the 6th Palace where the irate King reprimanded me in these terms: "As a religious, you were well taught on the religious law, but you violated it. Your sin

is all the more grave”, and I was condemned to the prison of kidney-logging. First, I was castrated by the demons. Then, I was tied up and thrown to the attacks of the rats. Every day, the sharp pains of torture render me mad. I regret having made a false step that led me to eternal suffering. I advise all those who are converted to the religious way to seriously observe the divine rules. Otherwise, they will obtain no merits after their death, but instead will have to pay for their crimes in hell.

TK: A commandment specifies, “Once engaged in observing the religious rules, one must be on guard against the temptation of the flesh”. If people don’t try to regenerate but infringe upon the commandments by committing the sin of lust, the demons and the rats will help them make payment in hell. Karma demands that the sinners be forced to pay.

The Mandarin: The second soul will declare the evils you did in your life.

The soul: When I was a student of lower high school, I was led by bad school companions to patronize the brothels. Every time I had some money I went to those dens. Finally, I encouraged other comrades to join in the adventure with prostitutes. A few of us caught venereal diseases. After my death, I was arrested and sent to this prison. The pains I suffer now are too severe to be described. During my lifetime, I engaged in immoral pleasures, and now I am spending long months and years of suffering. I am too late for repentance.

The Mandarin: While you were young, you didn’t apply yourself assiduously to studies, but indulged in sensual pleasures. Your body was soiled prior to your formal wedding, and this is a grave sin. Again, you sowed a bad karma by leading your friends into immoral paths. So it is obvious why you are now condemned to hell.

YT: It's pitiful to see them in this situation. Detainees are crowded in this prison. What crimes did they commit?

The Mandarin: Every day, our prison provides hospitality for over a thousand newcomers. Our domain is rather varied. As a rule, most of them have committed the sin of lust, maintained sexual relations with dancing girls, lost their male virginity in public brothels, or indulged in illicit sexual relations or adultery. Religious people (Buddhists, Confucianists, Christians or others) who committed lustful sin, incest, gang rape and the like are condemned here.

TK: Advise humans not to commit the sin of sex which is very grave, particularly for the religious. Once this sin is committed, it can't be forgiven. They will be condemned not only to the Heart Wrenching Prison of the 5th Palace, but also to other prisons for further punishment. Nevertheless, God is merciful, as ever. He always reserves for them a salvation outlet. To the one firmly determined to repent and change, He grants a reasonable reprieve. After reading this book on hell, if he has copies of it printed and distributed free to his fellow beings as a warning, he can obtain partial reduction or total pardon for his sins. It's growing late, Yang Ts'ien. Let's return to the temple.

YT: Our great thanks to His Excellency and the Generals. We now have to leave.

TK: Yang T'sien, quickly on the dais.

YT: I am ready, Master. Let's return to the earthly world.

TK: Back to the Temple. Yang T'sien, reenter your body.

Chapter 38

Visit to the Prison of Driver-Teaching

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on September 6th, 1977. Year of the Snake.**

*Beyond space and time, morality is expounded
Under the moonlight, brilliant intellects are found
Gathering happily, eternal in their state,
Splendid, those exalted lights grow purer as they rise.*

Buddha Tse Kong: Summer goes and autumn comes with its chilly breeze bringing colder weather. Humans have their warm clothes made, and the birds' feathers grow. The four seasons follow each other in rotation. Man recalls the time from his childhood to the present old age with warm memories of children and grandchildren. His eyes are now dimmed with his hands trembling and his legs tottering. He regrets his time of youth that has gone for good, and now realizes that his life is but a dream. Humans therefore should not waste their time, because "*a bygone second is equivalent to a reduced decimeter of one's longevity*". They should be converted as quickly as possible to religion, and engage in spiritual perfection to become honest citizens and good spiritual followers. Then, after their death, they will be free from hell. If they happen to pass by hell, they will be as visitors rather than miserable prisoners. Time for departure, Yang Ts'ien. Up to the dais.

Yang Ts'ien: Venerable Master, which prison will we visit tonight?

TK: I won't say anything...You'll know later.



YT: I am ready, Master.

TK: The trip is done. Come down.

YT: Dear master, why did you land on the slope of this mountain? From this place I hear ear-splitting screams as if somebody is being slaughtered or tortured. On the path before us, I see infernal guards escorting some sinful souls. Shall we follow them?

TK: The purpose of our visit tonight is to inspect a prison on the slope of this mountain. Yes, let's go.

YT: We are behind them now. They turn back to greet us. I wonder what crimes these souls committed?

TK: Most of these souls were automobile drivers or motorcycle riders. They were surnamed the "knights of the road" as they caused deadly accidents in their lifetime. They are condemned here now.

YT: If I am not mistaken, all of these reckless drivers were already sentenced when alive. Aren't they exempt from the punishment of hell?

TK: The laws of hell punish every destroyer of human life. We're coming to the door of the prison. Just wait a moment for inquiring after the mandarin-governor.

YT: The prison door is right ahead with two guards on duty. Above the door, is a sign reading "Prison of Driver Teaching". His Excellency and the Generals are coming to welcome us.

TK: Yang Ts'ien, let's go greet them.

YT: My reverences to His Excellency and to the Generals. Tonight, my Master and I pay you this visit in the hope of gathering information for writing a book. We hope to be granted your assistance.

The Mandarin: Don't be ceremonious Mr. Yang Ts'ien. Would you mind coming inside for observation?

YT: Excellency, which gate provides entry to your prison?

The Mandarin: The 6th. In principle, every driver, regardless of automobile or motorcycle, who causes accidental death or injury to the victims is condemned in this prison after death. Please, come farther in.

TK: Thank you, Excellency.

YT: The sinful souls are grouped in large numbers on the slope of the mountain, at a rugged and muddy path. They are restraining with all their might the heavily loaded antique carts that speed down the slope. The alley is very narrow, providing passage for just two crosswise carts. The slightest lack of care causes the carts to overturn and drag the souls down to the ravines on either side of the alley. Very slowly, the souls try to brake the swift descent of the carts with their heavily torn feet from where blood is flowing on the ground. Some of the souls, for lack of caution, overturn their carts and tumble down to the abyss. Some others are moaning atrociously, lying under the pressure of their loaded carts, because they tripped. Others again are run over by their unmanageable carts and blood is flowing profusely. This is quite an ingenious punishment, but its effect is appalling.

TK: When living, people often were imprudent and caused accidents that killed many victims. They will have the role of victims of accidents in hell. The law of karma is quite explicit.

The Mandarin: I gave the order to bring some sinful souls to narrate to Mr. Yang Ts'ien the accidents they caused on earth.

YT: Thank you very much, Excellency.

The Mandarin: Here they come. (to the souls) Tell Buddha Tse Kong and Mr. Yang Ts'ien about the accidents

you caused in your life. This will serve as a warning for the living people.

The soul: I was a bus conductor for a transport company. One day, I ran over a small girl at the turning of the road. Because of my recklessness, my company had to pay for the damages, and I was dismissed. After my death, I was sentenced to one year in this prison. Every day, I have to learn how to drive a cart, from the top to the bottom of the mountain, using my two feet as brakes. I must exert great effort to steer the cart to its destination. With some hundred trips up-and-down I feel exhausted in body and spirit. I suffer enormously from my swollen, wounded, stinking feet.

The Mandarin: (to the 2nd soul) How about you? What did you do?

The soul: I was a taxicab-driver. One night, when I was drunk, I drove at high speed and ran over a pedestrian while trying to overtake another car. After my death, I was led before the King of Hell who reprimanded, “You had to abstain from alcoholic beverages when you drove a car. You considered a man’s life as a toy, and this is the reason you are condemned to this prison where you will learn how to drive”. Daily, I suffer from atrocious pains. Alternately, I am pressed, and bumped by my cart. My feet are miserable and the pains render me as scrawny as the stem of a reed. I hope that the drivers on earth will be cautious at their wheels and when getting drunk, they must never drive a car to minimize the accidents. If not, they will go to hell and have to suffer painfully.

The Mandarin: (to the 3rd soul) Your turn now.

The soul: I was a merchant in my life. Every day, I made deliveries of goods with my motorcycle. I had the habit of driving at high speed and paid little attention to traffic

regulations. One day, I hit a pedestrian, causing him wounds on the head, and I was injured, too. We were both carried to the hospital, I had a fracture of the leg, and he had a broken cerebral nerve. I was hospitalized for six months, while he suffered from permanent nerve disorder. I had to pay him a large amount for indemnification. After my death, I was led to the 6th Palace. The King-Judge condemned me to 3 years of imprisonment. The torment is almost unbearable.

The Mandarin: Now, these three souls have acted as witnesses. The automobile drivers must take these cases as examples. They should drive prudently for their own safety as well as for other people's, then they will be spared from the punishment in hell after their death. For cases of unpremeditated accidents of death or injury, the sins are less grave. As for the accidents caused by those drunkards who drive at top speed, who disregard the traffic rules and underestimate the value of man's life, their sins are intolerable and they must be purged in hell. Drivers are also advised to never run away after causing an accident. They must have the courage to accept their responsibility, to preserve the precepts of morality, in order to obtain some mitigation of their pain in hell.

TK: Just like a driving school on earth, this prison was recently constructed to teach detainees the fundamental of driving properly. Here they have to strictly observe the rules of the road, and dare not exceed the speed limit, lest a single false step should create an accident of which they are the victims. We advise the terrestrial drivers to be alert, to respect human life as a possession of God, and to avoid drinking and driving at fast speeds. If they transgress the regulations, they will be condemned here after their death.

Time is growing short, Yang Ts'ien. Let's go home.



Chapter 39

Visit to the Prison of Mouth-Pinching and Teeth-Wedging

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on September 23rd, 1977. Year of the Snake.**

*Not many adepts are seriously devoted to religion
Trifling conversation replaces divine teachings
Do cultivate yourself, quietly and deeply, to reach perfection,
For lack of realization will lead you to isolation.*

Buddha Tse Kong: The spiritual path is hardly being observed. Religious persons become more and more scarce. Some hypocrites make believe that they possess a strong faith but in reality, they neglect regenerating themselves.

Several fine speakers chatter like magpies, but what they say matches poorly with what they do. They are no better than rootless duckweeds bubbling on water and drifting at the mercy of the winds, which are unable to take root as do rice plants or trees. Humans are advised to devote their time to self-cultivation. Then, they will progress just as having a good crop every year. But if they neglect the spiritual path toward self-regeneration, they will be like a blind man who solitarily plays his flute in the corner. Once engaged in the path of spiritual perfection, one's heart must be sincere. The holy scriptures have taught: *"Those who do good, will gather good fortune in abundance; those who do evil, will reap misfortune to the point of saturation"*. The Celestial Net with its wide mesh

doesn't let anyone slip away. If one wakes up in time and returns to the good path, one still has a chance. If one doesn't, the autumn wind will blow before long, dead leaves will then fall and one will be without a shelter against the cold. And then, the yard before one's house will become deserted and dreary. Misfortune will come without delay. Now, it's time to depart for hell. Yang Ts'ien, prepare yourself.

Yang Ts'ien: Yes, sir. May I ask why you don't look happy today? You must have taken some drinks, haven't you?

TK: With my keen eyes, I can see to the depth of man's heart. The fact that humans only think of material pleasures hurts me deeply. The three duties and the five cardinal virtues of Confucianism are therefore neglected. I must drink bitter alcohol in order to tolerate watching people fall into debauchery, and heaven and earth sink into disorder!

YK: Venerable Master, you are very altruistic and merciful.

TK: Come quickly on the dais, my boy. Alcohol itself intoxicates no one; only man himself seeks to get intoxicated. Feminine beauty doesn't try to charm anyone; only man himself willingly gets charmed. Money attaches itself to nobody. But man himself gets attached by it. Look! A strong gust of wind has just blown past. I feel sober now. Well, let's depart for hell...Here we arrive. Get down, Yang Ts'ien.

YT: The Governor of the prison is already here to welcome us. My respects to His Excellency and to the Generals. Tonight, my Master and I are coming to visit your prison. We wish to be granted your assistance.

The Mandarin: Not too much politeness, please stand on your feet. Our prison punishes the sinners by pinching their lips with pincers and wedging their teeth with iron balls. The office of the 6th Palace had received the Celestial Edict and was instructed of your visit to hell to write the book “Voyages To Hell”.

TK: By order of God, we come here and count greatly on your assistance.

The Mandarin: May I invite you to come inside.

YT: A large number of souls are seen in the prison. The guards are busy heating iron bars until red which they thrust into the sinners’ mouths before ramming them with thorny iron balls. Blood flows abundantly from the sinners’ mouths and they fall unconscious.

TK: The iron-bars are needed to open the mouths of these souls before thorny iron-balls can be crammed in. Though the souls have mouths they are unable to speak, or even to moan with their pains.

YT: Having one’s throat stuck with a fish-bone is already an unhappy event. Now, with a thorny ball driven by force into the mouth, the torment must be a thousand times more painful. May I ask you, Excellency, what crimes these sinners had committed to suffer such atrocious torment?

The Mandarin: Ordinarily, the people who like to argue and show themselves superior to others, or seduce the girls with their honeyed tongues, cheat other people with untrue speech for the sake of money, or get addicted to opium, cocaine, and habitually criticize and hurt other people in conversations. All those people will not escape from the torment inflicted upon their foul tongues. Let me have some

souls come forward to tell you their stories.

TK: They lose consciousness. With the use of my magic fan, they will soon be recovered. General, please pull the thorny balls out of their mouths so they can speak.

The General: It's done. Venerable Buddha, you talk to them now.

TK: This is Mr. Yang Ts'ien of the living world. He comes here to interview the souls in hell in order to write a book. Do relate the crimes that you had committed with your tongues to him.

A female soul: When in life, I was endowed with great eloquence in speaking, arguing and reasoning on a variety of subjects. My companions were fascinated by my speech and beauty. In spite of being a married woman, I was frequently courted by many suitors. One time, a young man declared his love to me. Knowing that he was a wealthy man, I made myself attractive and began to have a love affair with him. I caught his eyes by telling him how my husband was disloyal and ungrateful to me. As a result, I turned out to be an adulteress. And then, by using my captivating beauty and deceitful speech, I succeeded in acquiring a large part of his fortune. From then on, I sought to get rid of him by addressing him with rough, insulting words that rendered him desperately unhappy.

Finally, his excessive despair led him to commit suicide. After his death, he took his revenge by complaining to the King of Hell who found it was his fault because he let himself become trapped in my clutches. As for me, the King accused me of being a cruel woman worthy of punishment. After that, his soul often came to earth to haunt me, which

rendered my spirit unstable.

For seven long years, I suffered from mental fatigue until the day my destiny came to an end, and I left the world. At the Citadel of Premature Death, I was confronted with my young lover. After judgement, he was incriminated for adultery with a married woman, while I was condemned to several prisons of hell. Then I was led to this prison, where the King of Palace charged me with using my foul tongue to bewitch the male sex, to harm and take advantage of other people. Here, my lips are pinched with pincers, my teeth wedged with iron jaws, and my mouth is crammed with a thorny iron ball. The anguish caused by this torment is beyond expression.

TK: You did pretend the role of cherishing and loving your young lover. Your tongue is that of a viper's. You deserve the punishment and have no right to complain. Now, second soul. Your declarations.

The soul: I was a tramp, a homeless man, and also an opium and cocaine user. I had to steal to pay for my drugs. After my death, I was condemned to this prison. I am very unhappy. In hell, I don't have any drugs to consume. Instead, I am daily forced to engorge an iron ball whose thorns tear my mouth painfully. I don't cease reproaching myself for having spent an undisciplined life.

The Mandarin: Though the term of the drug users' imprisonment is usually very long, they can't wean themselves easily from the drugs and as long as these drugs remain in their bodies, they are incapable of freeing themselves for further reincarnation. Many people are presently addicted to opium, heroin, cocaine and other narcotics prohibited by

law. Terrestrial law is severe enough but hell's is even more so. There are many sinners perpetually condemned to the Eternal Prison. I advise the addicted men of the world to repent instantaneously and get rid of the drugs which are as corrosive to their bodies in life as they are detrimental to their souls in death.

TK: To the third soul, declare the bad karma of your life.

The soul: I had read a great deal in my life, and knew by heart a lot of dictums and adages. While conversing with my friends and acquaintances, I delighted in interrupting them and preaching morality with false arguments and distorted reasoning. I even made use of the fine teachings of the Sages to deprecate other people. After my death, the King of Hell reprimanded me furiously. He said, *"You didn't utilize the words of the deities for doing good, but you overused them in fallacious discussions and blasphemy. It is an abuse of words, and you deserve to taste the savour of a thorny ball just as your thorny mouth used to injure your fellowmen"*. I therefore have now a rammed mouth that can't speak.

TK: A wise, reasonable man can go any place. An irrational man, on the other hand, can't move a single step. Humans should speak as genuine morality wants them to. They are responsible if their words cause indirect death to other persons. They are murderers, neither more nor less. Nasty-tongued people are surely punished in hell. Now, the 4th soul. Why are you condemned here?

The soul: When I was living, I was as rich as Croesus. More and more desirous of gains, I loaned my money at a high rate of interest to the poor people in urgent need of money.

The amount of money borrowed with prohibitive interest enlarged my properties. In case the debtors were incapable of repayment, I had them beaten by ruffians. After my death, the King of Hell charged me with greed, blood sucking, and profiteering from other people's poverty. He condemned me to engorge a thorny iron ball. The anguish is indescribable.

The Mandarin: You were wealthy, but your heart was of steel. You were merciless to your debtors and forced them to pay exorbitant interest rates. Your wealth was earned through foul means, so you have to engulf an iron ball and taste its foul savour. I advise the well-to-do people not to loan their money at high interest rates. If they have money in surplus, they should render service to their fellowmen by demanding a low rate of interest. Service to other people is a pleasure that one can afford oneself. So, why not practice it?

TK: Well, Yang Ts'ien. It's not too soon for our return trip. Be ready!

Chapter 40

Visit to the Prison with Barbed Nets, Famished Leeches and Locusts

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on October 9th, 1977. Year of the Snake.**

*How boring are the illusions of life
But how pure and sweet is spiritual light
Life failure is wedded with disaster
Why bother with fleeting torments and desires?*

Buddha Tse Kong: The Temple of the Sages is in perfect order, and bears a more peaceful atmosphere after all these recent arrangements and renovations. The Immortals prefer tidy and quiet places. If humans wish to see them, they must purify themselves and achieve serenity. The agitation of the terrestrial world has prevented man from opening his third eye of clairvoyance and from perceiving the spiritual world. Now the trip to hell. Yang Ts'ien, we must go.

Yang Ts'ien: I am ready, sir. You look happy today. May I ask why, Master?

TK: I feel so relieved to see that the Temple is a quiet place and its altar is free from worldly agitation.

YT: Master, a saying goes like this, "You don't get agitated about it if you don't see and hear it". What do you think about that?

TK: Well, the Immortals and Buddhas don't need to see things with their eyes, but their spirit stays lucid and clairvoyant. Mortal beings cannot do so. Men can't pretend



not to see things then permit themselves to commit perverse and immoral acts. They cannot act, and then pretend not to see the danger. Do they think they can live in peace and tranquility after that?

YT: You are perfectly right, Master. I am ready to go.

TK: We've arrived. Come right down.

YT: Tonight, we see only infernal guards escorting the sinful souls. We don't hear any crying or moaning as we used to. What is the reason?

TK: We're going to visit the prison with barbed nets, famished leeches and locusts. Here the souls must silently endure extreme pain and torment. Later, you'll know why. We are getting close to the prison door. His Excellency the Mandarin-Governor and his Generals are waiting for us.

YT: I present my greetings to His Excellency and to the Generals. My Master and I pay you a visit and we would appreciate your giving us precious information.

The Mandarin: Our prison, named "Barbed nets, Famished Leeches, and Locusts", is placed under the control of the 6th Palace. Your Temple in Tai Chu is renowned in propagating the Tao. At present, by divine order, it attempts to unveil the secret of hell and write the book "Voyages To Hell" to awaken mankind. We highly admire your work and feel greatly honored to have our prison portrayed in the golden book. Do you mind stepping in?

YT: Thank you for your good will. In the prison I see many barbed nets just like the ones we see on earth. A layer of barbed wire is laid in the flooded cellar. Then another is found on the ground. In order to move from one place to another place, the souls have to creep flat with their faces down. They cannot raise their heads. Otherwise, the barbed nets will prick them atrociously and shred their skin and their ragged clothing. They groan and moan terribly. I

can see some bulging deformities on their heads and bodies. Excellency, may I ask you why they are in such conditions?

The Mandarin: Those bumps are starving leeches and locusts sucking the blood and brains of the convicts.

TK: Let's come a little nearer to see better.

YT: Whew! Leeches are sucking their blood! What a loathsome sight! Their heads are thickened with insects. What could they suck from those bodies?

TK: These famished bloodsuckers or the hirudin-leeches live in marshes. When they succeed in sticking to a man's body, they draw off all of the blood in it. These dreadful yellow insects are locusts. They used to fly together like a mass of clouds, and when seeing a ricefield, the whole swarm would descend and devour the rice plants to their stubs. Here, in this prison, they suck the cerebral fluid of the sinners.

The Mandarin: These yellow insects are fond of tender rice ears of which they suck the juice. But in hell, they live on convicts' brains whose whitish fluid and that of rice ears are alike.

YT: This sight makes my flesh creep. I have vertigo, and my trembling legs can hardly carry me. I am on the verge of fainting.

TK: Don't be alarmed, my son. We've come to hell by order of God. What's more, I am always by your side. Be courageous.

The Mandarin: Honorable visitors, be patient for a few more minutes. I shall have some of the sinners come to tell you of their misdeeds.

YT: Thank you, Excellency. But I would be terrified at the sight of their leech-thick bodies.

The Mandarin: O, I see! Have no fear, Mr. Yang Ts'ien. They will be cleaned of those parasites before they



come. I order these two souls to discuss the wicked actions that led them to this prison. These are Venerable Buddha Tse Kong and Mr. Yang Ts'ien who have come to hell to gather information. You have to confess your crimes with sincerity. Your accounts will served as a warning for the living people.

First soul: I was a magistrate in my life. I took charge of civil court. I used to render unfair judgements every time I was bribed by a defendant. I also handed down exaggerated sentences on the culprits, and in this way, destroyed justice. I thus amassed a great deal of money, though I was often warned of the punishment of hell endured by dishonest judges. I sometimes ask myself, *"Now, I possess honor, riches, authority and a high position in this life. And what will become of me in my next existence"*? But I couldn't resist bribery. After my death, I was led to the Memory Hall and made to stand before the Mirror Revelator of Past Crimes that projected, just like a movie screen, my past acts of bribery and my unfair verdicts. My misdeeds were undeniable and I was condemned to the Prison of Mire, Excrements and Urine. Later on, I was transferred to the 6th Palace. The King reprimanded me of the violation of laws and justice. Because of my heavy sins, he condemned me to this prison with barbed nets, locusts and leeches. Every day, when crawling under the barbed net my body is pierced all over, and I am attacked by the parasites that suck my cerebral fluid. I suffer from indescribable pain all over my body and my vital energy is exhausted. I am the most miserable, now.

The Mandarin: You knew the laws only too well, but you violated them. It is true that you made a game of justice and laughed at God. I advise the holders of justice in the terrestrial world to follow the example of Pao Kong who gave impartial judgement with neither exaggeration

nor weakness. They will acquire great merits because they assist God in expanding moral law. They serve society by suppressing bad elements and eliminating evil. If they fail to observe the regulations of justice, and think only of their individual interests through bribery, then they violate the law and will be severely punished in hell. Their descendants will inherit the negative consequences of their bad acts. Since time immemorial, a host of examples have proven that the karmic law is just and inevitable. Now, it's time for the second soul to make your declarations.

Second soul: I was a robust fellow with a big chest and strong limbs. When I was in charge of protecting the game houses and pleasure dens, I occupied unlawfully a large plot of ground. I made a lot of money and enjoyed a great deal. I hadn't dreamed that upon my death, I would be condemned to this prison. Now I am enduring unbearable torment.

TK: Usually, the people who don't exercise a legal trade but live on dishonest profits, are condemned to this prison. I hope that man awakens himself as soon as possible to avoid committing these sins. It's quite late. Yang Ts'ien, we will go home.

YT: I say goodbye to His Excellency and to the Generals.

The Mandarin: Generals, render honor to our guests.

YT: I am ready to leave, Master.

TK: Here is the Temple. Get down and return to your body.

Chapter 41

Visit to the Temple of the Tutelary Genius Observation of a Man's Recent Death

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on October 29th, 1977. Year of the Snake.**

*Worldly matters are illusory as a flickering lamp
Once alarmed by cold, once frightened by rain,
Then one day, our relatives will depart,
Left behind, helpless, we call their names in vain.*

Buddha Tse Kong: Mr. Houang Wen Da, husband of Mrs. Lai Sheng K'ouan just died this afternoon. He was a pietist of the Temple of the Sages and I am greatly saddened while thinking about man's life being so short. Would it be necessary to have recourse to ruses and subterfuges for living in this world? Once God takes away the vital breath he gave to man, it is the end of everything: Fortune, children, real estate, nothing is left. All of his properties, splendid houses and luxurious rooms are but temporary things he borrowed from his children and grandchildren. After his death, he is buried in a cemetery on the slope of a mountain or in a solitary, deserted plot of ground. What things can he take along with him?

Yang Ts'ien: Dear Master, where will Mr. Houang's soul go after his death?

TK: A somber path with lengthy months and years

of gloom. That's where the dead will go. Our mission to write a book on hell is to reveal to humans the secrets of the life beyond.

YT: How timely! It's the big question humans used to ask themselves! They vaguely know they will go to hell, and that's nearly all they know. Can you explain it clearly with more details, Master?

TK: Agreed. Come first on the dais, and I'll show you.

YT: I'm ready, Master. Shall we start?

TK: Here we are. Get down, son.

YT: But I know this place perfectly! It's Mr. Houang's residence. I came here frequently.

TK: Exactly. Look at Mr. Houang's corpse in the uncovered coffin. In front of it, the disciples of the Temple of the Sages are making preparations for the mass of requiem. Here are the children of the deceased. They look miserable.

YT: Please, Master. Why can I only see his body? Where could his soul be?

TK: Now, come back to the dais. I'll take you to the Temple of the Tutelary Genius, and you'll have the answer.

YT: I am up. Let's go.

TK: We've arrived.

YT: There is a muster of soldiers and horses parading back and forth before the Temple of the Tutelary Genius. Human eyes would never view such a spectacle.

TK: Let's come in to salute the Genius.

The Genius: I wish to welcome the living Buddha Tse Kong and Mr. Yang Ts'ien. Your visit is a surprise! How can I be helpful to you?



TK: The vice-president's husband of the Temple has just died. Our mission is to write a book on hell, so I wish to take advantage of this opportunity to have my disciple witness what happens to a human after his death. It is the purpose of our special visit to your temple tonight.

The Genius: All my compliments, gentlemen. Please serve us some tea, General.

The General attending: At your request. Have some tea, gentlemen.

YT: Thank you, General. May I ask the Tutelary Genius to explain to me his function in this region.

The Genius: I am the Tutelary Genius of Tai Chu, who supervises the inhabitants of the Central Market. I assume the responsibility of surveying their activities. The majority of people do not know the official position of a Tutelary Genius which is akin to that of a Police High Commissioner. I am in charge of watching people, warning, advising them, and observing their actions. The Gracious Genius of Happiness and Virtue is my assistant. When a human comes to the limit of his earthly life, the infernal guards are summoned to a gathering at my temple. Then, they attend a council presided over by the Gracious Genius of Happiness and Virtue before going to the deceased's residence to lead his soul to hell.

YT: I have some further questions that require explanation. For instance, how do the infernal guards treat the virtuous and the wicked souls when they come to get them.

The Genius: The emissaries of hell, such as buffalo-headed, horse-faced, or black-and-white demons merely give

a slight tap on the corpse of virtuous men to render them unconscious before leading their souls away. As for the wicked souls, they torture them, deal heavy blows on them, and shackle them like people treat criminals on earth. Then, they lead their souls to the temple of the Tutelary Genius for registration to be entered in the registry book of the dead.

YT: How about honest or religious people? Are they treated with benevolence?

The Genius: They surely are. If they did good acts in their lives and acquired great merits, the infernal guards only present to the Tutelary Genius the order notice, and it is the Gracious Genius of Happiness and Virtue himself who is in charge of taking them to hell. In the case of the persons with great religious merits or if they were respected masters of numerous disciples, they are highly welcomed in hell, and are invited to be presented to the Service of Merit Registry for examination. On the other side, the enlightened persons rise directly to heaven.

YT: Are there different means of returning to heaven for people with different faiths and religions?

The Genius: Religions may differ from each other, but the religious cause is unique. In order to evolve to a higher astral plane, people must regenerate in the Right Way, and be devoid of partiality and stubbornness. Otherwise, their ascension to heaven will meet with problems of delay.

TK: What the Genius said is correct, Yang Ts'ien. The people who are devoted to the religious path, have to get rid of stubbornness, discrimination and haughtiness. Otherwise, they will become restless. Because of their

excessive aggression and imbalance of mind, they need to go to hell for reeducation.

YT: May I ask you where Mr. Houang's soul is now?

The Genius: I shall take you inside and you will see him.

YT: Well, well, there he is together with five or six strange souls in a hall which is decorated like a place of cult. He is seating on a chair and greets me as I enter the room. Venerable Genius, may I talk to him?

The Genius: Of course, you may.

YT: How do you feel, Mr. Houang?

Houang's soul: I thank you greatly for remembering me.

YT: Tears come to his eyes, and he can't utter a word.

TK: Don't be sad! Your children are grown up, and they are pious and honest. Your wife is also kind and virtuous. So, why are you anxious?

YT: Your words make him weep more bitterly.

TK: Listen! Man's life is compared to a pedestrian walking along the road. He walks through life, and one scenery after another one goes by. That's all about. So, why do you feel such regret and attachment?

Houang's soul: I thank you for your enlightened words. Please give advice to my children and urge them to follow the path toward spiritual perfection. Please tell them to come frequently to the Temple of the Sages and do more charity deeds. I am treated well here by the Tutelary Genius and the Gracious Genius of Happiness and Virtue, owing to my wife's merits. However, I can't help being agitated.

YT: Calm down, Mr. Houang. Even though you left

the world, you still continue to lead the path toward spiritual perfection. So, don't be distressed.

Houang: I regret that I didn't do more charitable deeds before. May I thank you now for remembering me.

TK: Time is too limited for longer talk. We have to go to the Public Parlor for further information.

The Genius: Let's go to the parlor for discussion. Please, have a seat, Mr. Yang Ts'ien. Do you have other questions?

YT: I am often asked questions about the fate of humans after their death. Can you explain the matter more clearly?

The Genius: Don't be reserved. Please feel free to ask questions. If it's a difficult question, then the Living Buddha Tse Kong will answer you.

YT: What happens to the soul after he leaves his physical body?

The Genius: Many people have the premonition of death even before getting ill. The end of man's life is just like an old tree with fallen leaves which will soon be uprooted by the next storm coming by. Man's lifetime is recorded in the Registry-Book of hell which is similar to a tree of life. When man begins to reach his end, his tree of life in hell changes its color to notify the dignitaries about his coming death. Those officers of hell will open the Registry-Book to verify again. When the time comes, they will send the black-and-white demons to the world to pick up the soul of the dying person. When the demons arrive to the person's residence, the tree of life is about to die and so is the man. That's called death.

Man's soul, which resides in the physical body for a

number of years, is comparable to a tree growing with new branches. When he dies, it is like a branch shedding its bark, or a turtle shedding its protective shell. Everyone has his own manner of dying; no one looks the same. Some people gnash their teeth when dying. Others bulge their cheeks, strain and roll their eyes. The expressions on their faces change constantly: Those are unhappy people whose karma is heavy, whose death is restless. Meanwhile, the people with peaceful mind will experience peaceful death.

TK: When a man ceases breathing, it doesn't mean that his soul is completely gone. Take the example of an electrical battery. If the contact is switched on but the bulb doesn't light, the battery is not necessarily "dead". Its voltage is only too low to ignite the bulb. So it is for man. During these moments, his breath is very weak. Apparently, he looks dead, but in reality he is still conscious of what happens around him. His descendants should avail of these moments to whisper in his ears their words of consolation and encouragement, something like this: *"Let's leave behind your terrestrial self. Free yourself from earthly attachment. Think positive and nothing else"*. By doing so, the descendants will help their dying relative to recover their stability in order to release the bonds with the living world and avoid moral suffering. Then, they may pray for the defunct. Usually, the soul of the defunct is very agitated like a man walking in the dark. With prayers, he will feel more confident and relieved. During the period of mourning time, the descendants are advised to be vegetarians, to keep their bodies pure and clean and to abstain from alcoholic drinks, expensive meals and carnal pleasures. If they do so, the Tutelary Genius will report to the King of Hell

about their filial piety towards the defunct and the latter will certainly feel moments of consolation. This piece of advice must not be neglected, because it is the duty of the defunct's children to prove their filial piety toward their parents. Now, it's time to go home, Yang Ts'ien.

YT: Just a couple of minutes, Master. I would like to know where Mr. Houang's soul will go?

The Genius: After the recommendations of the Saint of the Fine Arts from the Temple of the Sages, Mr. Houang will go first to hell for judgement.

TK: Don't ask too many questions about that matter. The case of Mr. Houang is still pending, and no details can be revealed. Be ready for the return, son.



Words From Master Luong Si Hang-Vi Kien

Today, we have read until this chapter and understood that life on earth is temporary. We should not be overly sentimental and have too many attachments, otherwise we would suffer at the time of our death and have difficulty in leaving this earth. We should understand clearly that earthly life is fleeting, and this world is a school to educate and teach us to direct our mind towards the World Above. However, before turning to the upper sphere, we must learn about the lower sphere, or learn lessons of impurity. In our youth, all of us have to learn about impurity, and once we have understood it, we would be tired of impure lessons and wish to leave them behind.

Once our heart is resolute to achieve detachment, and we see that this earthly world is temporary and that we need to perfect ourselves to advance towards the sphere of purity, we will engage ourselves with greater dedication in spiritual training. But in order to perfect ourselves spiritually, we must choose a very clear direction. The direction of releasing the impure and preserving the pure is the way to attain a quick awakening. Otherwise, to depend solely upon the Sages is not a viable direction. We must persevere in our efforts to train ourselves spiritually and turn our mind upwards, and then the World Above will always care for us. Those who like to depend on external spirits, who do not understand the Tao thoroughly, who make changes to the Tao or transform it, are committing the gravest sin. If our consciousness is unable to understand the Tao, or if we only understand one side, and not both sides, but dare to modify the Tao, this will bring extremely harsh consequences.

The experienced spiritual adepts, who are our predecessors, have demonstrated that success comes from one's own tenacious efforts, and that no one could help us. Thus, we must stand fast, but how do we prove our perseverance and patience? We must overcome obstacles. The more obstacles we encounter, the stronger our faith becomes, and if we keep advancing within serenity, we will succeed. The genii and immortals will attest to our sincerity to perfect ourselves spiritually, and our firm resolution to achieve soul liberation to save ourselves, rectify ourselves, and influence others. We should not try to teach others; we should not say, "I am teaching people"; we are not qualified to teach. Circumstances are our teacher. Every day, every

hour, every minute, they educate our souls, but our souls do not restrain themselves, and want to tame the circumstances instead. If we are authoritarian, we will have to suffer in an oppressive environment in the future since we want to subdue others. Therefore, we must understand this point, and accept to repent ourselves and dedicate ourselves to spiritual perfection. The earthly world is temporary. We understand the temporariness, but this world offers many very valuable lessons. We are given lessons, so that we may retreat to serenity and make use of our existing capacity for serenity.

We have read the book “Voyages To Hell” and understood that there are laws there too. Now if you say that I can avoid hell, and this book is false, what would this mean? You are afraid, you do not harmonize with the netherworld, and you do not analyze your own sins. You are in denial and say that this is false, but if souls do not exist, then why would there be judgments in hell? We have understood that there is a place of judgment, so we must have a soul. We should strive to educate our soul for spiritual perfection and to attain purity and lightness. We should open up and harmonize with all spheres in order to understand the truth. If we criticize this party and support the other one, we will never understand the truth, and will only cause hindrances to ourselves. Eventually, we will harbor anger, passions, resentment, and we will only cut off our intelligent mind.

Therefore, we must cultivate ourselves spiritually. When our mind turns towards the World Above, we turn towards the pure energy in order to concentrate on our own original flux of energy. Then, you will be able to frequent any

place and learn anywhere. This is an infinite evolution; we clearly see that our soul is eternal, and any place can be a place of recompense, punishment, guidance, or advancement for the soul. We do not abandon any place; there is no undeserving place, and there is no unworthy word. All actions and reactions serve to guide our soul, and we should remember this point in order to facilitate our spiritual training.

A spiritual adept should devote himself to spiritual perfection within modesty; he should advance in silence and nurture his consciousness to harmonize with all spheres. My awareness is one with the blade of grass; my awareness is one with the flower; my awareness is one with the berry fruit; my awareness is one with the house; my awareness is one with this piece of land; my awareness is one with heaven and earth. This is how we harmonize with all spheres, so that we could advance towards the consciousness of harmony. Only then will our mental invocation of Nam-Mo-A-Di-Da-Phat have significance and be practical.

Today is Sunday, a leisure day, and we have meditated over one hour. We have listened to the stories from the netherworld, with teachings to educate our souls to avoid the vicious door and advance towards the benevolent door, which is goodness and serenity. When you meditate, you already practice serenity, and it will be invaluable if you also turn towards goodness. To cultivate goodness and serenity means to practice spiritual perfection on both planes, to achieve felicity and wisdom

Chapter 42

*Visit to the 7th Palace. Interview with
The King of High Mountain
Visit to the Prison of Blazing Heat*

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on November 16th, 1977. Year of the Snake.**

*Morality has been written down to teach mankind
A current masterpiece is realized by divine order,
Man's affinity was sown, ripened, now mellows,
Truth is harmoniously revealed to humans on time.*

Buddha Tse Kong: Formerly, in the eastern regions of China, the Yu Li King was well known as a precious scripture, a literary, religious book which served as a warning for mankind. The author of the book was a priest named Tan Che Tsouen Chi. Obeying the order of God, he took many trips to hell by soul travel. He had, with his own eyes, seen the sinful souls condemned to torture by the King of Hell. Upon his return from each trip, he narrated faithfully in his book what he had seen in hell, and his accounts were widely known in different countries. A great number of persons were awakened after reading the book, and converted themselves to the right path. Books were printed and given away free. Those who could understand it clearly, would experience the truth. The punishment in hell has recently been modified and renovated to cope with new circumstances and the changes



in modern human society. Recently, the Celestial Emperor particularly designated Yang T'sien, a disciple of the Temple of the Sages in Taiwan – which is placed under the aegis of the Immortals in the Celestial Southern Sector – to visit hell for collecting new proof. With the projection of soul travel and mediummistic means to relay the images and sounds from hell to the earth, the book “Voyages To Hell” will succeed in replacing the old “Yu-Li-King”.

This book will be a masterpiece as is the Great Wall of China. The people who print and distribute the books widely and gratuitously will receive blessings and spiritual merits. This book will not only reveal the secret of hell's structure but will also disclose the mysteries of spiritual perfection. Those who apply themselves to reading it again and again will awaken from illusions and place themselves on the path of regeneration and enlightenment. Those who give copies free to their fellow beings will have their desires granted, and their sins forgiven. It is indeed a Gospel helping men to repent and to correct themselves. Yang Ts'ien, let's come up to the dais and take a trip to hell.

Yang Ts'ien: I am seated, Master.

TK: Here we arrive. Get down.

YT: Where are we?

TK: Just look ahead! That's the 7th Palace. The King of the High Mountain is coming. Let's go pay him our tributes.

The King: My respects to Venerable Buddha Tse Kong and Mr. Yang Ts'ien of the Temple of the Sages. Please, come in.

YT: Thank you, Sir. We are greatly honored by

the solemn reception of His Majesty and His Court. I see before the Palace some infernal guards escorting sinful souls. I presume His Majesty must have interrupted his hearing session because of our arrival.

The King: We are honored with your visit. General, please bring us some fine tea.

The General attending: At your orders, sir.

YT: We are deeply touched by your warm welcome.

The King: Please don't mention it. Right at this moment, man's morality is in fast decline: However, it is a great comfort to see a revival of spiritualism in Taiwan. The Immortals and Buddhas have taught and advised mankind to avoid falling into the whirlwind of misfortunes. Their assistance is really great. Even God Himself directs you to write a book on hell which is an unprecedented break. It took you a long time to come visit this Palace!

TK: We thank you deeply for your instruction. It is for the common goal that we have come here tonight. We solicit your assistance and hope to receive precious and detailed information on the sublime, orthodox Tao.

The King: Perfect. Now, I'll tell you about the situation of dead men in our Palace. The close relatives of the deceased have the custom of celebrating a mass of requiem of 49 days after a death. This is the reason for 49 days: On the 7th day, the soul of the deceased comes to the First Palace, on the 14th day to the Second Palace, on the 21st day, to the Third Palace, and so on until the 49th day, he comes to the Seventh Palace, which is this one. The living people estimate that the soul remains at each palace for seven days. But they fail to know that most of the souls have committed too many

sins in their life, and they don't merely need 49 days to reach the 7th Palace, but will have to pass by the 8th, 9th, and 10th Palaces before reincarnation into another existence. If man exercises virtues and accumulates meritorious deeds, he will be guided in his death by the Gracious Genius of Happiness and Virtue. Every ritual cult will not be necessary for him because he is a free soul. Therefore, man should remember this: Elaborate ceremonies which are presided over by the best priest, will not be sufficient to deliver the sinful souls from the prisons of hell.

YT: Please, sir, why don't people take 56, 73, or 70 days instead of 49 days?

The King: The palaces, from the 1st to the 7th, are the main ones. The 8th, 9th and 10th palaces are intended to punish the grave sinners who haven't been purged enough in the first seven palaces. Heavily condemned souls have passed by the first seven palaces in 49 days, but they still have to go through the last three palaces to pay for their other sins. The living men, out of filial piety celebrate ritual mass to pay for their parents' liberation. However, it will be more practical if the latter's souls know how to perform good deeds during their lifetime.

TK: In Confucianism, the souls, after death or prior to their time of reincarnation, are called "demons or demonical souls". In Buddhism, those souls are called "infernal bodies or souls". In order to save a soul from this place of misfortune, the souls' descendants must devote themselves to do good actions. This is the only way to move the heart of the King of Hell and obtain amnesty from him. If they act contrarily to the laws of morality, they certainly obtain no grace for the

soul, despite solemn rites and having most competent priests. I advise humans to fulfill their duty of filial piety towards their parents while the latter are still alive, because “an ear of rice being offered when alive is more valuable than a bottle of wine offered when dead”. The descendants should reform themselves, and should print canonical books to distribute free to people.

This good action is easy to perform, and will touch the heart of God and the authorities of hell, at the same time showing the gratitude of the children toward their parents. This is the only means to save one’s parents from the ocean of sorrows. They should follow this piece of advice with all their hearts and might.

YT: Dear Master, your teachings are very direct and useful to mankind. If the descendants prove to be impious and disrespectful toward their parents while the latter are alive, it is ridiculous for them to play the grateful and the considerate child after their parents are dead. *“The tree prefers to remain still but the winds keep blowing; the child wants to pay his filial piety, but his parents are no longer alive”*, goes the saying. Now, dear Master, I have another question to ask. The demons still preserve their human forms while they are in hell. How could they do so, since their bodies were disintegrated after their death?

TK: These are only illusory bodies, false bodies, or corporal images. In other words, bodies in hell are called metamorphosed bodies. Since our time is limited, may you tell us quickly about your functions in this palace

The King: Our gate governs the Prison of “Blazing Heat” together with 16 smaller prisons. The souls who are

led here are judged with impartiality. I invite you to tour the prison for better observation.

YT: Just fine. We thank you greatly, sir.

The King: All my retinue will follow me with our visitors to the Blazing Heat Prison.

Mandarins and Generals: At your request, sir. Honorable visitors, will you follow His Majesty.

YT: We follow the King to a gloomy path. How dismal hell is! No one would like to visit this place. Only the spiritual emissaries come to fulfill their mission.

TK: Well, you seem to be highly affected by the spectacles of hell, Yang Ts'ien. Here, partiality is absent. Even if you have close friends, you can't count on their assistance. All things depend on the good or bad actions people do during their life. "The wicked attract wicked demons, the virtuous attract gracious geniuses" says a proverb. This is why I advise humans to associate with good people and propagate faith in order to avoid condemnation to hell.

YT: I begin to feel a suffocating heat. Over here, before us, is a blazing fire. I only see an incandescent mass. Above the door of the prison, I read an inscription "Big Blazing Heat Prison". The walls are built of bricks.

TK: These refractory bricks tolerate a high intensity of heat. They grow harder as the fire becomes hotter.

The Mandarin-Governor of the prison: My reverences to His Majesty the King.

The King: Here are Venerable Buddha Tse Kong and his disciple Yang Ts'ien of the Temple of the Sages in the terrestrial world. I bring them here to observe your prison. Muster your men to render them honors.

The Mandarin: At your request, sir!

The King: Ahead of us, is the “Big Blazing-Heat”.

YT: What terrific heat! I see a big flagstone the size of a camp-bed placed on two trestles. Under it is a red blazing fire. The sinners are forced to walk on the heated flagstone. They fall to the ground, writhing and screaming in pain. Other newcoming souls are terrified by the spectacle. They cry, they wail just as they do at the death of their parents. With stiff legs, they can't step forward, and the infernal guards have to push them. No sooner have they set their feet on the flagstone than they seem electrified and fall down. The more they roll their bodies with pain, the more they are burnt by the fire. What sins have they committed, sir?

The King: Our prison bears the name of “Blazing Heat”. It is a place for detaining the souls who are desirous of fame and riches, who ruin other people for the sake of individual interests, who flatter and condescend to the desires of the fair sex while scorning or showing indifference toward their own sex, who take advantage of other people's ill-luck to harm them, or possess an irritable temper, or frequently curse the deities, speculate on goods, or plot with others through corruption, and play the opportunist and the sycophant.

Despising the wretched and the miserable, they commit unfair acts through partiality, prejudices or intransigence. Those who are against morality and virtue are detained here. The torment we apply here is quite simple: The sinners have to walk along a 300 mile long alley paved with highly heated bricks, in order to purge their sins. It would take them three to five years to cover the alley. The torment corresponds to the gravity of their sins. When

going through the alley, the slighter condemned sinners are burned less violently than the graver condemned souls. The heat automatically increases or diminishes according to the gravity or slightness of their sins. While inside the prison, the souls suffer atrociously, because the air in it is burning and stifling. Those who are condemned to the 16th prison utilize another alley by the side of the prison. The heat in the 16th prison is more terrible than in this one which only serves to frighten the slightly condemned souls without putting them into danger.

TK: It's growing late. With your permission, we shall ask to come again.

The King: It's late, indeed. I don't want to retain you any longer. Muster your men, Generals!

YT: I say goodbye to you, sir. And thank you for your welcome.

Chapter 43

Visit to the Hand-Roasting Prison

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on November 26th, 1977. Year of the Snake.**

*The mountain top is covered snow-white
Time creeps indifferently from day to night
The butcher gives up his cutlass and neatly resigns
Why not cultivate yourself to be refined.*

Buddha Tse Kong: Upon the summit of the snowy mountain, snowflakes flutter softly. Time flits by swiftly and it will soon be the end of the year. My advice to my disciples is to forsake their butcher's cutlass and abstain from creating malevolent karmas. Yang Ts'ien, climb on the dais.

Yang Ts'ien: The cold is frigid. I don't think I can stand it. Will you gratify me with one of your miracle pills, Master?

TK: This is a psychological effect. How can you be afraid of the cold as being a spiritual entity? Well, I'll give you a pill anyway, since I am generous by nature. Here, swallow it quickly. And let's go.

YT: Thank you, dear Master. Please forgive me of my ignorance and prejudice.

TK: Arrival! Alight.

YT: What prison shall we visit tonight? Why doesn't the Mandarin-Governor come to welcome us? I see no one but the guards escorting the souls on the road.



TK: Wait a moment and you'll see.

YT: Now, I see. Before us is the Blazing-Heat Prison we visited last time.

TK: No, we now visit the prison of Hand-Roasting. To reach it, we have to move along that nearby alley which is adjacent to the blazing-heat prison.

YT: But the heat is scalding. How could we walk on the alley? The feet of this profane man would be barbecued.

TK: Just relax, my boy. I am by your side. The heat will cool off.

YT: Please perform a miracle, Master! Or else I will be unable to step on that alley paved with red-heated bricks.

TK: Look sharp! I'm going to use my fan to cool down the heat on the alley so we can safely walk on it.

YT: Miracle of miracles! Your power of a Buddha's is great! The alley is instantaneously cooled. A few souls precede our steps and they are safe and sound. The rest of them are astounded. They look right and left for a moment, then rush on to the alley.

TK: Follow me quickly. In an instant, the miracle loses its effect and you won't be able to step on the alley.

YT: Aha! We make it! I had to stride hard and stay close to you. Well, here they are. The Governor and his Generals seem to be waiting for us.

TK: Let's present them our greetings.

YT: My respects to His Excellency and to the Generals. I am Yang Ts'ien of the Temple of the Sages in Tai Chu. By order of God, my Master Buddha Tse Kong and I are coming here to gather information for a book on hell. We hope to receive necessary assistance from you.

The Mandarin-Governor: Welcome to you, gentleman. We are greatly honored to learn that the judgements of our palace will be mentioned in the book "Voyages To Hell". Please come inside for observation.

YT: Thank you for your kindness. I see an inscription above the door of the prison. It says "Hand-Roasting Prison". Sentry guards are seen on both sides.

The Mandarin: Please, come in.

YT: Already, I hear resounding cries.

TK: Pitiful cries are heard in all the prisons, just as the moans of the sick people, calling for help.

YT: The prison is equipped with modern scientific instruments. The hands of the sinners are securely tied to an axle-tree of heated iron. The iron axle which is a good heat conductor, gets hot quickly. The souls struggle vainly to tear their hands from the axle. Their hands are red embers, their faces are streaming with sweat and tears.

The Mandarin: Our prison is called Hand-Roasting Prison. In the past we made use of flatirons to press the sinners' hands. But later, we improved our procedure by imitating the ingenious rack-tools of the humans. I shall have some sinful souls come to talk of their crimes.

YT: The world of the living and that of the dead adopt the same principle. That is, as the proverb goes, "*The wicked are corrected by another wicked*".

The Mandarin: These are Venerable Buddha Tse Kong and his disciple Mr. Yang Ts'ien of the Temple of the Sages in Tai Chu. They are here to prepare a report for warning living beings. Tell them the crimes you committed and the punishment you have endured so far. They will serve

as a lesson for mankind.

First soul: I led the life of a libertine. My hobby was to hide in a dark place to tease and coax the women and girls passing by. I repeated my foul acts many times.

The Mandarin: Your hands were undisciplined ones. Now they are making up for their impertinency in this prison.

Second soul: When in life, I had the mania of inciting the people to sue each other for justice, then I helped them write complaints and gained profits. I made a living with this stratagem. After my death the King of Hell reprimanded me, saying that I had used my hands to write complaints and do harm to others. Therefore, my hands must be roasted in return. No one shows me any pity. I suffer excessively and pray you, O Buddha, to come to my rescue.

TK: As a person specialized on writing about complaints, why don't you send a petition to the King of Hell to obtain amnesty?

The soul: I'm afraid to create more trouble when dealing with the King. He is so rigorous and impartial.

TK: I know he is. But if you address your problem to me, I cannot do anything for you.

The Mandarin: Don't allow yourself to make supplication. To the third soul now.

The third soul: I was the keeper of a gambling-house. With sleight of juggling hand, I amassed a lot of money. My living standard was greatly improved thanks to this easy way of getting rich. I kept leading a dishonest life and created harm to society. Furiously, the King of Hell condemned me to 30 years of detention in this prison. My hands are daily broiled to embers, and I endure terrific pain.

TK: Keeping a gambling-den is by itself a grave crime. Cheating is doubly sinful. You created bad karma for yourself. I'll tell you what! After being here, you will be reincarnated as a man with two inert and paralyzed hands. I advise humans to wake up and abandon their passion for gambling. To the 4th soul now.

Fourth soul: In my life, I used to swindle and deceive other people by signing checks without sufficient funds. I was condemned to this prison after my death. I had thought that every matter could be settled, provided that I could escape from my creditors' search. Now, I realize that it is not so, because hell is without escape.

The Mandarin: In principle, you must pay off your debts. But, you had intentionally swindled your creditors. Now, you have to suffer in return.

TK: Nowadays, many people in the world issue false checks, and then flee away. They must be punished severely in hell. In their next reincarnation, they will wear the forms of buffalos and horses to pay off their debts. Since early ages until now, no one has been able to escape from the karmic law, even if he commits the least of sins. Living beings must pay attention to the law of karma.

The Mandarin: You, the 5th soul, you seem to be in the clouds. Unpack your goods now.

Fifth soul: I pray you not to ridicule me. I'm going to give an account of my past crimes. In my life, I was a member of a gang of hooligans. I committed harmful acts jeopardizing the security of society. I was very aggressive toward anyone who showed antipathy to me, or anyone who dared to stare at me. I would beat them without cause. After

my death, the King of Hell ordered the buffalo-headed and horse-faced demons to castigate me and beat me in return. This reminded me of the times I did harm to people and force them to submit.

The Mandarin: Violence was a tool in your life. You attacked your fellow beings and committed bad actions that impaired the security of society. Your fists were so hard that they need softening with the fire of this prison. Do you understand?

TK: It's quite late. We have to go, Yang Ts'ien.

YT: We ask to take leave, Excellency, and thank you greatly for your information.

The Mandarin: It's my pleasure to help. Muster your men, generals.

TK: Go ahead to the lotus dais.

YT: Yes, Master.

TK: We arrive. Yang Ts'ien, your body is over there.

Chapter 44

Visit to the Eviscerating Prison

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on November 29th, 1977. Year of the Snake.**

*The splendid Tao comes to mankind by mediumistic means
Resurrection with meditation will help man become serene
Thousands of sacred books are guiding human beings
With all blessings to long for man's awakening.*

Buddha Tse Kong: Taking a trip to hell by one's soul is neither a mythical nor a legendary tale. From early ages until the present, several dead and buried men have resurrected to life. They assuredly acted as witnesses for what they had seen and heard in hell and could relate the facts with ease and accuracy. Their testimonials were conformable to the scriptures in canonical books. However, the reading of their accounts always left many human beings skeptical, saying that they did not see the facts with their own eyes. They referred to all such things as hallucinations. How could we impose veracity on those incredulous people? All we can say is this: We can't see the inner organs of our bodies, but they are always there, and they function constantly.

If one day, we fall sick and something inside of us disfunctions, how painful it will be. Then, we may need x-ray examination and a surgical operation to get well. If we can't see our viscera, should we say they don't exist?

Normally, hell is invisible to human eyes, but it



does exist. There are some individuals who can experience hell during their lifetime. Others only perceive it during the moment of agony. I say all this, to show that many things are imperceptible, but they exist around us and within us. The air, the breath, the thoughts, the feelings that preserve our lives, are far from perceptible to our sight. We know them only through sensations. In fact, it is these very abstract substances that constitute the basic elements of maintaining our life. If we are deprived of air, we cease breathing, thinking and feeling and in a few moments we leave this world. Is it necessary to argue on whether they are palpable or mysterious? If humans find a new chemical substance, an ore, or a formula today, and are proud of their discoveries, the fact doesn't prove that these things were only born yesterday. No, they have existed for millenniums and only now are they disclosed by men.

YT: You are perfectly right, Master. It is regrettable that most humans refuse to understand this state of things. They are comparable to a blind man denying the existence of what he can't see. Men are being surrounded in a world of forms and colors, and they propose to walk a thousand leagues with a mere stick in hand. It is proven that our physical eyes are blinded by thousands of obstacles, and only the 3rd eye of clairvoyance can enable us to see through all things. Unfortunately, our 3rd eye is closed and we are like a blind man who succumbs through crazy passions, which leads us to successive unhappy cycles of reincarnations.

TK: Well said, son. Men are warned of the consequences of their violation of the law, just as they are aware of the well in front of them, but they don't bother to

open their eyes and prevent their fall. A blind man is wiser than them, because with a stick, he can grope his way. Once fallen into the whirlpool of hell, no one can expect to get out early, not after infinite scores of reincarnations. Time is wearing out. Let's go back.

YT: I am ready, Master.

TK: Your clothes are dirty and wet. It's not decent to present yourself in front of the King of the Palace.

YT: That's the dirt from the medium's table which soil my clothes. Please, excuse me, Master.

TK: It's all right for this time. I guess you know what a profane man should do when presenting himself to the palace. He should wear neat and clean clothes in order to be well treated. Well, come up anyway.

YT: I am up, sir. Shall we go?

TK: Here we are. Get down, Yang Ts'ien, and go salute the mandarin.

YT: At your request, Master. My respects to His Excellency the Governor and to the Generals.

The Mandarin: Welcome, Honorable Buddha Tse Kong and Mr. Yang Ts'ien. We received Mr. Yang Ts'ien's letter asking for the admittance to visit hell. This is of great merit. You are invited to come inside for observation.

YT: We thank you for your warm welcome, Excellency. The infernal guards are escorting the sinners at the entrance of the prison. Already, I hear howlings.

TK: Let's hurry to follow them in.

YT: Well, I am now viewing the spectacle of the prisoners. Their bodies streaming with blood, the souls are attached firmly to stakes. The guards and demons are ripping

open their bellies with cutlasses and extracting their bowels and stomachs. A pack of black dogs, nearby, are wrangling and devouring their prey. Since the sinners' bowels and stomachs are still joined with their hearts, the jerky tearings of the dogs cause them inexpressible suffering, and they fall unconscious. The spectacle is abhorrent. Please, Excellency, what sins did they commit to suffer that way?

The Mandarin: When in life, these souls were mandarins accepting bribes, rotten government employees, or people with beast-like hearts. If you want to know better, I shall have some souls come for your interrogation.

YT: I would appreciate it, Excellency. I need to get accurate testimonials so I can make the living people believe.

The Mandarin: Give the reasons that bring you here.

The soul: I was a high official. I took advantage of my high position to confiscate the properties and estates of other people. I didn't hesitate to resort to the most vulgar means to appropriate other people's possessions. I didn't expect that after my death, I would be led to the Mirror Revelator of Past Crimes which unmasked my true self. I was thunderstruck when watching all my misdeeds appeared in the magic mirror: greed, extortion of property and money. I had to pass through the judgement of several palaces before I was transferred to the 7th Palace, where the King of the "High Mountain" condemned me to the disemboweling torment. Every day my bowels and stomach are torn out and tossed to the black dogs. My suffering is unimaginable.

The Mandarin: While occupying a position as high as yours, your duty is to care for the citizens, their

interests and their welfare. Yet, you failed to fulfill that duty. Reversely, you tried to seize as much property as you could. Your stomach is full of filth. I advise the mandarins and officials to accomplish their duty towards the people and remain faithful to their country. They will acquire great merit. If their personal interest gets the best of them, they will be condemned to hell.

YT: Now, elderly woman, what made you come here?

The soul: I feel remorseful when thinking of my sins, but I know that it's rather late now. When I was 48 years old, as my business went bankrupt, I became a banker. In a moment my conscience failed me, I misappropriated the shareholders' money and fled. At the age of 54, I died of sickness and the King of Hell condemned me to this prison.

The Mandarin: By embezzling the shareholders' money, you had engulfed it in your entrails. Now, I give you a hand by taking out your guts to pay off your debts. After your wrong is purged in here, you will have to reincarnate in the terrestrial world to repay your debts.

YT: Can you tell me, old man, how long are you condemned here?

The soul: For 3 years. Before, I was a farmer. I grew vegetables for a living. When I was middle aged, my beds of greens were ruined by insects and I had to spray insecticides to exterminate them. Profiting from a sudden rise of prices on the market, I sold the vegetables which had just been sprayed with insecticides. And now, I am condemned to this prison because of this blunder.

The Mandarin: For the sake of your individual

interests, you sold the greens that were freshly sprayed with insecticide. It means that you sold poison, because it takes 15 days before the toxic-impregnated vegetables can be eaten without danger. Otherwise, the poisonous ingredients will be absorbed little by little into men's organism and cause liver disease or cancer. You had therefore created great danger for the consumers of vegetables. Many of them were poisoned. That's the reason you are condemned to this prison.

YT: Old woman, why are you condemned here?

The soul: O, my God! I am so unhappy in this prison. Save me, I pray you!

TK: O yes, I pity you. But look, why didn't you have pity on other people when you were living? Tell me the motive of your crimes.

The soul: I had a foster daughter whom I didn't like and I treated her badly since her childhood. When she reached the age of puberty, she grew unusually pretty and her beauty induced me to sell her to a brothel for a handsome amount of money. It goes without saying I sold her by force and against her will.

The Mandarin: You were a fiendish woman. You made use of your foster daughter for lucrative purpose while destroying morality and social customs. You were inhuman and your cruelty deserves the punishments of this prison.

TK: Our time is limited, Yang Ts'ien. I want to go home.

YT: Please, Master, I have a further question to ask you before we leave: While enduring torture, some souls are seen fainting and their bodies are all lacerated. How can the guards restore them to life the next day, safe and sound, before the torment is renewed?

TK: Have you ever had a nightmare in which someone sprang upon you and tried to kill you? If you have, you felt extremely pained and frightened at the moment he stabbed his dagger. Then you startled up. You felt cold sweat trickling on your temples, and rejoiced at finding yourself not injured. The following night, you have the same nightmare. The same wakeup with a start, with no trace of a scratch. Well, that's exactly, what happens to the swooning souls. The demons revive them with resuscitative water, and they come back to life, unscathed, and feeling no pain. The torments, thus applied, are purposely meant to impose on the sinners a sensation of terror while they endure the punishment. The redoubtable punishment of hell tends to awaken the sinners' conscience. It is for this reason death is usually compared to a long-lasting nightmare. The man leaving the world is comparable to a man in deep sleep having a painful dream. Take another example: In your dream, you picked up an ingot of gold. You were wild with delight. You woke up. Nothing was left, your hands were empty. All this proves that dreams are not realities, and it is the sleeper who has erroneous impressions. The adepts of the religious way who fail to grasp this truth and persist in believing in the forms, names, colors and outlooks of things will finally fall into the nightmare of illusions.

YT: I am fairly taught now. Dear Master, I am ready for the return trip. Shall we go to say farewell to the Governor and the Generals.

The Mandarin: Generals, stand on ceremony to greet the guests.

TK: Here we are, at the Temple. Disembark and run to your body.



Chapter 45

Visit to the Prison of Stone-Load Carrying

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on December 9th, 1977. Year of the Snake.**

*Respect toward your master is a path to virtue
Fallen, then revolving, nature returns to its root,
To know your source is to know your genuine nature,
But infidelity and ingratitude have no excuse.*

Buddha Tse Kong: The year of the Snake is drawing to an end. Everyone expects to see the year of the Horse bring forth success and change. Being anxious for success, people hope that the horse will not slow its pace but will endeavor to advance. I also hope that people know how to make good use of the new year for spurring their horses to a gallop, or else these beasts will remain slow, in spite of the gee up and haws of their riders which leave the horses as indifferent to them as towards the wind blowing past their ears. When a man wants to be renewed, he must possess the qualities of a horse, that is, an undaunted and fearless spirit despite difficulties and obstacles. On the contrary, if he relaxes his efforts and only sails with the wind, one fine morning his old age is at hand, he will have no time to catch up, even with a team of four horses. Tonight, we're to take a trip to hell, Yang Ts'ien. Come quickly to the dais.

Yang Ts'ien: I'm ready, Master. We can start. Which prison are we going to visit?

TK: The prison of the 7th Palace where the sinners are forced to carry a heavy load of stones on their heads. We've arrived. Come down.

YT: How marvelous! We come to our destination in the twinkling of an eye. I climb on the dais at the Temple. I close my eyes. I have the impression of being aboard a jet plane. And whoopee! Here I arrive.

TK: Man is comparable to an obstacle. For the slightest imprudence, he drops from an altitude of thousands of meters and is reduced to crumbs before disappearing completely. The calmer he is, the lighter he becomes, and the higher he rises. Therefore, the ascent and descent depend entirely upon his perseverance that allows him to reach the most sublime serenity. The one who adopts the Spiritual Way doesn't get distracted easily in the face of danger. But if he neglects to cultivate himself toward perfection, then he can easily fall into temptation and be condemned to hell within a fraction of a second. Therefore, human beings are advised to keep their spirits as calm as possible, in order to be on the right path. They may go astray on a foggy day, or in a maze, but their hearts will serve as a compass. If they can control themselves, then they will succeed in every enterprise. When seated on a lotus flower in the middle of mire and turbid water, they must meditate to attain the fixation of mind and tranquility of the soul. If they don't, the slightest imprudence may push them down to bottomless depths. Yang Ts'ien, you wouldn't be able to seat steadfastly on this dais of lotus if you weren't granted a special blessing. Make sure to preserve that favor. Quick, let's go salute His Excellency the Governor.

YT: At your request. I present my respectful greetings



to His Excellency and to the Generals. I am Yang Ts'ien of the Temple of the Sages. Tonight, my Master and I are coming here by divine order to collect information. We count greatly on your assistance.

The Mandarin: You are welcome, Venerable Buddha Tse Kong and Mr. Yang Ts'ien. It is a glorious mission of yours to write a book on hell. I invite you to step inside.

YT: Thank you, Excellency. We are inside. The sinners, sturdy and frail, are doing their work. They are carrying big blocks of stone on their heads. Are these intended for the construction of new prison cells?

The Mandarin: Far from it! They are forced to carry the blocks of stone for punishment.

YT: With such heavy blocks of stone on their heads, they are lamenting so loudly. The loads bend their backs while they hold the stones securely with their arms. Painfully, they advance with staggering short steps. Some of them are exhausted. They sink down and get crushed or have their legs fractured by the blocks of stone. The guards hurriedly sprinkle resuscitative water on them and exhort them to push the blocks back on their heads and continue to walk. This kind of chastisement was adopted in old times and is still efficient as a torment inflicted on sinful souls.

The Mandarin: These sinners are punished with the iron-head exercise, because in their life, they were obstinate and arrogant people. They like to play the professor over their fellowmen. They detested everything noble and virtuous and disdained the holy doctrines as well as their masters. Because of these defects, they have to come here for reform.

YT: If possible, I would like to have some of them come to talk.

The Mandarin: As you see fit. I'll have them come. Their declarations will serve as examples and warnings for humans. Here they are. You can ask them questions.

YT: What had you done in your life to be condemned to this prison?

The soul: I'm really embarrassed when I have to discuss my misdoings. I was a high school teacher in my life. I took advantage of my position to seduce pretty students and entice them to sexual impropriety. My bad actions were not revealed when I was alive, but they were easily disclosed by the third eye of the King of Hell. Upon my arrival in hell, the King of the Palace ordered the guards to whip me unmercifully before they transferred me to the 7th Palace where the King of the High-Mountain called me a beast. He accused me furiously of having lost the dignity of a master when leading my students astray. I was therefore inflicted the chastisement of carrying a load of stones which forces me to bend my head in shame.

The Mandarin: Aren't you ashamed of what you have done by getting involved in illicit relations with your girl students? Your sin is very grave and you have to endure this torment which prevents you from holding high your head before the people. I advise every master, whether they are school teachers, religious masters, or technical institute instructors, to preserve their dignity and professional conscience. Master and students are like father and child. They owe each other adequate respect and should not surpass the limits of morality, if they want to avoid the punishment

of God. Mr. Yang Ts'ien, go on with your interrogation.

YT: You look like a buddhist monk with a close-shaven head. Why are you detained here and get punishment with an iron head exercise?

The soul: Don't make fun of me, please. I had to shave my head because my hair hurt me terribly while I carried a block of stone. When in life, I was a disciple of the Spiritual Way. Prior to attending the clerical school, I had read a good number of canonical books, and prided myself on my knowledge of truth and the Way. When in school, I considered my teacher as having an inferior level of religious instruction, and used to criticize him in the presence of other seminarians. After my death, the infernal guards arrested me and led me to hell. The King of Hell condemned me for having learned the holy teachings from my master, but betraying him with an offence to his virtuous prestige. It is normal to teach one's fellowmen the knowledge one acquires from canonical books, but one should avoid displaying vanity and pretending to act as a haughty and pedantic teacher. If this piece of advice is neglected, one will be forced to suffer the torment of carrying a block of stone in hell in order to purge one's bad karma.

The Mandarin: A student should do his best to improve his knowledge. From time immemorial, there has been a good number of students excelling their masters, but they are not vainglorious and they continue to respect their masters. Good instructors are needed in every trade. Without their guidance, no one can succeed alone. Nowadays, there are many people following the learning program halfway, then drop it to look for a job. They neglect and ignore their

former teachers. This is ingratitude! The spiritual disciples should have respect toward their Masters. If they betray their Masters and the religious teachings, then they must repent right away in order to avoid carrying the heavy stone.

YT: Now, to the third soul. Tell me what you have done in your life.

The soul: I was a rich man gifted with great eloquence in oration. Each time I spoke in public, I liked to disparage the poor people and overwhelm others with my grandiloquence. In my conversations, I insulted this one, scolded that one, uttering rude words without reserve. Now, I think that it's so unfair to condemn me in this place, because what I did before was not so serious. May I implore you, O Buddha Tse Kong to plead for me in the name of justice.

TK: Good, good. But first of all, you have to pay me my stipends, or else I will not plead for you. Without money, my words would be weightless, and no one would hear me. With money, I shall whisper in the Governor's ears to lessen your pains.

The soul: I feel grateful for your intercession, but right now, I have no penny left. I left all my fortune to my children who are wasting it. How could I pay your fees now?

TK: What an illusion! *"Man must lower his head in front of those with money and power. But when deprived of money and power, in return he must lower his head."* So, why were you so proud and haughty before? Do money and power follow you after death? Alone, you must now carry heavy stones to pay back for your sins.

The Mandarin: How paltry of you! In moments like these, you still seek to overcome other people with power.

You can never corrupt the iron-faced king. Don't you realize that Buddha Tse Kong wanted to tease you? So, don't speak nonsenses or your pain will be aggravated.

TK: We should always cede three fourths of a passage to other people and should not occupy the entire passage for ourselves. A man can't always maintain a high position; when misfortune happens, he may lose his power and influence on others. If he despises his fellowmen and holds his head too high, then after death, he certainly must lower his head to hide his face. That's what you are doing now. Well, it's time to return. May we thank you, and goodbye.

The Mandarin: I order the officers to stand on ceremony to greet the guests.

TK: The dais, Yang Ts'ien.

YT: I'm seated, Master.

TK: Here is the Temple. Go back to your body, son.

Chapter 46

Visit to the Prison with Cauldrons of Boiling Oil

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on January 23rd, 1978. Year of the Horse.**

*Tao is something inconceivable and undefined
Search for it and long for freedom of soul
Forsake melancholy and welcome a new spring
The moon's imprint on rocks forms a divine singing.*

Buddha Tse Kong: We are going to take the first trip of the year to hell. It's favorable to start a job during the blossom-time of spring. Let's be ready, Yang Ts'ien.

Yang Ts'ien: Venerable Master, I am ready. Shall we go?

TK: We've arrived. Let's come down from the lotus dais.

YT: Which prison shall we visit?

TK: We are going to visit the Prison with Cauldrons of Boiling Oil. See the Mandarin Governor who's awaiting us?

YT: True. A group of people seem to reserve a warm welcome for us. Let's go to the Governor and the Generals and pay them our respects.

The Mandarin: No civilities, please. We are delighted with your visit, Buddha Tse Kong and Mr. Yang Ts'ien. Our prison, called Cauldrons of Boiling Oil is dependent on the



7th Palace. By divine order, you have come to us with much pain and difficulty. You certainly acquire great merits.

TK: Your formal praise touches us deeply, Excellency. But you forget your own merit while dealing all day long with the prisoners without a minute of leisure or rest.

The Mandarin: We endeavor to fulfill our responsibility in re-educating the sinful souls, which tires us enormously. If we chance to cooperate with you in teaching morality to humans through the help of your book, it will be a worthy merit to have taught mankind in the name of God. You are invited to come inside.

YT: We are at the door of the prison. Sentry guards stand on both sides. The entrances, without exits, have made me think that the terms of imprisonment must be indefinite. The interior of the prison is sparsely and poorly furnished. A gigantic boiler, resembling a big cauldron used in villages for cooking pigs or vegetables, is in the middle of the room. A guard is fueling a brick fire under the boiler. The oil in it is boiling at a high temperature. It is exactly what people on earth used to say “Cauldron of Boiling Oil”. The guards are pushing the souls to the cauldron, then they pierce their bodies with a spear before pitching them into the boiling oil. The sinners manage to utter a scream before they sink to the bottom of the boiler. In a brief time, the sinners’ skin and flesh are completely destroyed. Only a white skeleton is seen in the impassible cauldron of boiling oil. May I ask what kind of torment this is? What category of crime is subject to it?

The Mandarin: This punishment of throwing the sinners into boiling oil, is one of the gravest ones applied in the prison of the 7th Palace. In the terrestrial world, the

living people used to think that the boiling oil punishment is only reserved for demons and malefactor devils. At present, we inflict this punishment on the souls who were extremely wicked. As a result, all of the sinful souls sent here were extremely wicked and dishonest people in their lives.

YT: What could be most of their cases?

The Mandarin: In their lifetime, these souls had committed the sins of robbery, theft, assault and battery, murder, incest, corruption, poisoning. In a word, they did harm to the life of others and betrayed the divine law. Upon their death, they had to experience the punishment of the prisons of other palaces before they came here for enduring this extremely severe and painful one.

YT: Apart from the above sinners, are there sinful souls of another category to undergo this torment?

The Mandarin: Yes, those who made use of sorcery to harm other people are also punished here. This is done to melt away their black magic.

YT: Can you have some souls come, who have not yet been thrown into the boiling oil cauldron so I can interview them?

The Mandarin: Of course I can. General, please bring some souls in.

The General: At your request. Here they are. Mr. Yang Ts'ien, you can ask them questions.

YT: My old woman, do you know why you are here?

The soul: I was a brothel keeper. During my lifetime I did nothing but lead girls into debauchery. My trade consisted in pandering girls to pleasure-seekers. I earned money with my commerce of skin and flesh. After my

death, I was condemned to the prison with the lake of mire, excrements and urine, then to the eviscerating prison, and this prison. The King of Hell is really merciless. In my life, all I knew was to amass money and I had no belief whatever in the spiritual world. After I died, I realized that I could not escape the punishment of hell.

The Mandarin: Your heart was too inhuman to have compassion for your fellow countrywomen. You practiced the trade of young girls and led them to perversion. Where then are your morals and human nature? If you aren't thrown into the cauldron of boiling oil, the germs of your wickedness will never be eliminated.

YT: Now, my fellow, you look so young. Why are you here to bear such terrific punishment? On your chest, I see blood stains, and you keep pressing your hands on the wound while moaning with pain. You have tousled hair, and your voice reminds me of a malefactor's. What have you done precisely?

The soul: At present, I repent deeply for not going to school and for associating with hooligans and gangsters. I lost all my money in gambling and failed to pay my debts. Finally, I practiced the skills of a robber and a murderous thief. Unfortunately, I was caught by human law and sentenced to death.

Right now, I am still suffering from the wound caused by the shot of the firing squad, and the pain is excruciating. After my death, I was condemned to several prisons and finally transferred to the 7th Palace. The King of the Palace ordered my detention in this prison with cauldrons of boiling oil. I am now living in constant dismay without a single

minute of tranquility. I advise humans to behave honestly. We can never enjoy the things we steal from other people. Once we give way to dishonesty, all the education that we have received from our teachers and our parents are wasted. How can we repay our respect to them?

TK: The government laws in a country are always correct. You chose yourself the way to death and to be killed by a bullet shot. If there remains a spark of conscience in you, then in the next reincarnation, don't forget to regenerate yourself.

YT: And you, gentleman, why are you condemned here?

The soul: When alive, in a moment of drunkenness, I had killed two persons at a time. I was condemned to capital punishment. After my death, I was tortured in many prisons. Now at the sight of the cauldron of boiling oil, I repent infinitely for the blunder I committed in a minute of distraction.

The Mandarin: Homicide demands the assassin's life, the dictum is clear. To you, a man's life is no better than an ant's and now you are scared of this cauldron of boiling oil? If we don't throw you into the cauldron, the blood of your victims will never be washed off.

YT: Now I ask that elderly gentleman. Why are you here?

The soul: I was a student of sorcery, and was especially selected by my master to be taught the most secret lessons of black magic. I was then surnamed "master-sorcerer". Ordinarily, I was paid by my clients to harm other people with my magic, for instance to charm them

to insanity, to sow discord in their families, to break their nuptials. I didn't refuse to perform any bad actions. I also made use of my black art to bewitch the girls and excite them to carnal pleasures. I was happy in my life. After my death I was condemned by the King of Hell. I did try to utilize my sorcery to fight against him, but the infernal guards were too numerous and succeeded to overcome me. Today, I'm going to be thrown into the cauldron of boiling oil, and all of my black magic will be nullified. It is a misfortune for those who don't use their occult science for the sake of helping others. They will be subject to great anguish in hell.

The Mandarin: You have betrayed the holy doctrine as well as heaven. By using your black magic to harm other people, you have become a bad person! The Kingdom of Hell admits dangerous sorcerers and reserves for them the chastisement of boiling oil cauldron. Those who study sorcery must remember the words of their teachers and use their occult knowledge for the sake of helping others. If sowing good deeds, they will be admitted to the domain of genii and Immortals after their death. But, if they act contrarily, they will fall into the grip of phantoms and devils.

YT: May I ask you this question, Excellency? Once being thrown into the cauldron of boiling oil, the souls' bodies are decomposed and become mere skeletons? Then, after being taken out and revived with resuscitative water, they recover their former human forms. What sensation do they experience, if they must endure the chastisement again?

The Mandarin: The fact of being thrown into the cauldron of boiling oil is extremely painful and the soul has the impression that his body is completely dissolved. This

sensation is comparable to that of a man who is forcibly drowned in water. At first, he is asphyxiated, then he feels disintegrated. As a rule, the black magicians will have their magic power abolished in the cauldron of boiling oil.

TK: It's growing late. We must go back, now.

YT: My deep thanks to your Excellency and to the Generals. May I say good bye to you?

The Mandarin: Generals, stand on ceremony to greet the guests.

TK: Up on the lotus dais.

YT: I am ready.

TK: We're back to the temple. Yang ts'ien, let your soul be reintegrated into your body.



Words From Master Luong Si Hang—Vi Kien

Reading until this chapter, we have learned many additional sly plots from worldly people; however, they could not hide these plots even if they vehemently deny them. Why can't they hide them? We carry a human body, which is very discreet, and we can conceal all our own actions. But without the pure air of the universe, there is no life, and you won't be able to breathe. So, even if we try our best to hide our actions, the pure energy still shines and uncovers them; all our sins are in a vacuum, open to the public, and cannot be concealed.

Therefore, a spiritual adept should be at ease, and direct his consciousness towards the upper sphere, purity



and lightness, and perform wise actions in the spirit of constructiveness, helpfulness, and sacrifice. Only then will he be able to make amends for his sins. This is why we devote ourselves to spiritual perfection. A practitioner of the Vo-Vi method of meditation, who is willing to perfect himself spiritually, to learn and to meditate, will have his sins erased instantly.

How can this be done instantly? Where do sins come from? They come from the impurities in one's consciousness, which accumulate more and more each day, and turn into actions. We think that our actions show off very well, but they are only limited, because we do not understand the Truth clearly. Even though Sun Wu-K'ung had 72 magic powers, he was still jailed at the Mountain of the Five Elements. Currently, you carry a body, but what is it? It is also a mountain of five elements. Metal, Wood, Water, Fire, and Earth form this physical body, but the soul is imprisoned and extremely miserable. You want to know how to escape; you want to liberate yourselves but you are unable to do so because of the cycle of birth, aging, death, and suffering, which steadily encroaches upon you. You do not want to become old, but you cannot avoid it; you do not want to die, but you cannot avoid it. You have the physique of a hero, you have such powerful strength, and such high intelligence, but you cannot escape death. Why? We see clearly that we are powerless, and we must submit to the authority of the Almighty Lord. He governs the whole universe, and also governs us, but we commit errors and wrongly believe to be the best.

Therefore, as spiritual adepts, we should devote

ourselves to the practice of the mental invocation of Nam-Mo-A-Di-Da-Phat. What's the purpose? It's to achieve oneness. Only when the high, middle, and low spheres merge into one, will we have the occasion to awaken our consciousness. If we do not know how to mentally invoke "Nam-Mo-A-Di-Da-Phat", if we are presumptuous, and use earthly reasoning to save ourselves, our result will only be limited. We will not advance, and we will be infinitely miserable at the time of death.

There are people who can leave their bodies in full awareness at the time of death. They know which direction to go, and do not need to go to hell. Indeed, if we know the direction to go right at the apex of the head, we do not need to go to hell. Every day and night, we exert ourselves diligently to propel our energy, to attack the impure energy and return to the sphere of purity. We advance step by step every day, and when we close our eyes, we feel the energy pulling from the top of the head, which means that we know where to go. When we die and leave this physical body, we will naturally follow this direction because it has become a habit. We direct our mind towards enlightenment, and when our mind is directed towards enlightenment, we will naturally change our heart and mind to become benevolent. We will be unable to perform wicked acts; we will be unable to bully anyone; we will only rectify ourselves in order to advance. We see that we are ignorant; our mind is dark; our sins abound. We must strive to perfect ourselves spiritually and advance. We should not harbor prejudices against anyone; we should not scorn any word from anyone. Wherever it comes from, this is an occasion for us to be educated, and thanks to this

opportunity, we are able to find our own serenity. We know that our adversary despises us, but this is an opportunity for us to find serenity. If we are serene, we are also enlightened, and his contempt is no longer a contempt. It becomes a means for us to measure our own spiritual level and evolution.

The ungrateful circumstances in life are invaluable. We should return hatred with gratitude. It is a tool of God to measure the serenity of His children. When facing trials, we would spend greater efforts in our spiritual cultivation; we would zealously accept any obstacle that we may encounter. When you are used to live under these circumstances and can overcome the hindrances, what does it mean? You are evolving spiritually. What does it mean? You are liberating yourselves. Who has helped in your liberation? You have accepted to practice, and you have succeeded in your personal revolution to achieve serenity in your inner consciousness; you give up all the impurities of the external world to return to your inherent true knowledge. This is the path of Tao.

When you know the path of Tao, you have plenty opportunities and you can go till infinity. You should not become arrogant and claim that you have reached the peak of the Way. We learn the Tao, and learn endlessly; we learn continuously and infinitely; we learn from one lifetime to another. We have reincarnated on earth since many existences, now we have to nurture the sense of equality to understand our previous existences and have the opportunity to arrive at enlightenment and openness within the consciousness of harmony. We see that all brothers and sisters are one. There are evil and good people – we should think of them as one in order to touch their hearts. If we feel that we are different from the

evil people, when will we have the opportunity to touch their hearts and transform them into good people? Therefore, you must learn and understand through your spiritual practice. Every night, you practice the exercises of Concentration of Spiritual Energy and Cyclical Breathing Without Retention to open your internal prisons, which are currently blocked and refuse to harmonize and advance with the external spheres. Therefore, your ego hides your consciousness, and this ego buries your existing soul, and darkens it more and more each day. You are committing errors unknowingly, and wrongly believe that you are better than all.

Today, we are reassembled here to analyze the book “Voyages To Hell”. During meditation, you are listening, and while listening to me, you feel light and open, but when you come home, what will you feel? What is the difference? The purpose is to show that you clearly have pure energy within. If you refuse to nurture your serenity, it will not project out and provide spiritual guidance to you at the sacred moment. In the future, you will discover that your spiritual root is pure energy. You have undergone many existences, and you are neither form nor image. Today, you have to erase all forms and images to return to your true knowledge. At that time, your heart will open up to achieve the consciousness of harmony with all spheres, and you will truly realize the value of love and forgiveness.

I sincerely thank you for your attention this evening.



Chapter 47

Visit to the Prison of Tongue-Carving and Mouth-Gashing

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on February 3rd, 1978. Year of the Horse.**

*How dull is man's rivalry
Why not cultivate your insight, it's tax-free
The waves ripple infinitely
And the leaves fall with impermanency.*

Buddha Tse Kong: After reading the above quatrain, some people would probably accuse me of idleness. My words come from the common people, and I don't have any other way to say it. Being active is nice, but we must know when to refrain and not be like a man who keeps climbing a ladder and finally falls down to the ground and gets crushed. Humans must realize that man's life is brief. We can enjoy our riches and properties only for a score of years. None of us can live forever. One fine morning, our limbs cease moving, every affair comes to a standstill. Our descendants will invite us to move elsewhere. *"The wavelets of the Long River pursue each other interminably while human beings cede one after another, newcomers replacing the deceased"*. If we fail to be aware of this fact, then it will be too late. Time goes by, and our bodies will decompose into dust. Let's go to hell, Yang Ts'ien. Come on to the lotus dais.

Yang Ts'ien: At your request, sir. From that nearby

temple, we hear resounding prayers, and the dreary music of the requiem must accompany some deceased's soul to Nirvana.

TK: Right. The sounds of prayers exhort the living to wake up, and the dead to realize their departure for ever... Let's go now...Here we are.

The Mandarin: I acclaim your visit to my prison, Venerable Buddha Tse Kong and Mr. Yang Ts'ien. This prison, named "Tongue-Carving and Mouth-Gashing" is placed under the control of the 7th Palace. I know you are executing God's order for the preparation of a book on hell. Your merits are admirable.

YT: Thank you to say so. But by myself, I shall never be able to accomplish my mission. My trips to hell are made possible by the guidance of my Venerated Master, and also by the precious assistance of the Governors of Prisons. I feel deeply grateful for their favors. Tonight, I hope that you will provide me further information.

The Mandarin: Of course, our door is widely opened to welcome you and we are ready to render you service. Please step in for ample observation.

YT: Thank you. We are now at the door. Two ranges of guards are rendering the honors. From inside the prison, wailings are echoing tragically. The demon-guards are driving iron-hooks into the mouths of the souls, jacking up their jaws, hooking the tips of the tongues and pulling them out. The souls howl with pain. After that, with a sharp cutlass they carve their tongues bluntly. Fresh blood flows abundantly over the sinners' chests. That's not all. The guards pierce the souls' cheeks with stilettos and shoot a wire through which is

fastened to a stake: The souls moan wildly for a little while, then fall unconscious. How tragic and dreadful a torment!

The Mandarin: The tongue communicates with the heart. With the tongue cut off, the heart suffers terribly. The sufferer of such torment distorts his limbs and even excretes feces and urine.

YT: Hell must study carefully on the way to reform the sinners. It must diagnose the patient first before giving him the prescription. How subtle it is! I wonder what these souls have done to be given this punishment?

The Mandarin: These sinners have committed the karma of the mouth. I'll order some sinful souls to narrate their past crimes, so you can record their stories in your book.

YT: Thank you very much, Excellency.

The Mandarin: Here they are. Please ask questions, Mr. Yang Ts'ien.

YT: My woman, can you tell me why you are here?

The soul: It's all because of my uncontrolled mouth. Other than that, I didn't commit any other sin.

TK: Your mouth and your tongue had killed many people. Now do you pretend to have no responsibility? If you refuse to confess, your sins will be worse.

The soul: You are right. I really must declare everything. In my life, I did hate everyone. Many times, I sowed discord to separate people, or used my tongue to harm others, and create disharmony in the families so that siblings were separated and children were abandoned by their parents. Apart from that, I committed nothing else.

The Mandarin: You had been nicknamed the "long-tongued babbler". As a woman, you didn't try to keep a

virtuous mouth. On the contrary, you spoke at random to destroy the familial unison of other people. You gave yourself up to alcohol, quids of betel, and opium. Your speech was inconsiderate, you shouted at people, sometimes whispered in their ears. All of your words were fallacious and dishonest. Your venomous tongue has to be cut off, which reduces you to muteness and prevents your mouth from uttering any word. You must regenerate yourself and cultivate the “mouth of virtue”.

TK: The human tongue is a sharp blade. Hell has so far cut off many women’s tongues, just because they are vulgar and gossipy, causing a lot of catastrophes. The woman with an evil temper and gruff speech that endangers other people should contain and correct herself, if she doesn’t want to be reformed by the buffalo-headed and horse-faced demons. I hope that the women in the terrestrial world will try to soften their tones and avoid creating discord with their associates.

YT: I ask this gentleman the reason you were led to this prison.

The soul: I had an irritable temper when in life. Every time, I felt thwarted or had to deal with some tactless, vexing remark, I didn’t hesitate to insult the person rudely. I spared no one, even the aging people. Apart from this defect, I committed no other sin. The King of Hell accused me of using my unruly mouth and dangerous tongue to insult people, and of committing an unforgivable sin. So, I deserve to be in this Prison of Tongue-Carving and Mouth-Gashing. The torment is painful beyond expression. I hope that living men take my case for a lesson and will not say bad things

about other people. They will be condemned to hell and suffer my pain if they don't change right now.

The Mandarin: A proverb goes like this, "A wicked heart is imperceptible to human eyes, but a wicked mouth is heard by human ears". A vicious mouth can offend the people very easily. It can arouse divergent opinions that jeopardize good relationships among men. Thence, this saying: "A wound caused by a cutlass can heal and scar quickly whereas a vexing word is never forgotten". While insulting foolishly, the offender ignores the presence of anyone around him. If he can't control his mean words, he risks to behave incorrectly. If the person is capable of committing grave sins, then it is because he neglects the Five Precepts on relationships between leader and subject, father and son, husband and wife, brothers and sisters, and among friends. For those who wish to regenerate, their speech should be even more moderate. They should never speak inconsiderately, because their good deeds and merits will become meaningless. After their death, they will have their place in hell where the torment of tongue-carving and mouth-gashing will be reserved for them.

YT: Now, I ask this buddhist monk. Have you been here for reciting prayers?

The soul: Buddha Amitabha! Prayers of woe, O, prayers of woe! I remember the time I adored the sublime Buddhist dharma. I was later baptized and converted to a monk. I carefully studied the holy books, and acquired some knowledge on Buddhism. I also wrote a few books and went up to the pulpit to preach Buddhism. I sowed discrimination between religions, and thought that Sakya Muni alone was the Supreme, whereas the genii, saints and other entities

were inferior gods. To me, they were heaven's phantoms, or heterodox beings, not belonging to the orthodox Buddhist dharma. So, it was useless to pay them respect. Many people listened to my teachings and I was proud of myself. I underestimated the Immortals and slandered other religions. When reading the scriptures textually, I misinterpreted them sometimes. After I died, my soul was unable to free itself. Dear Buddha, I pray you to save me.

TK: You are an unworthy disciple. Buddha doesn't accept disciples like you. Buddhist dharma bears a liberal character. Because of the degree of evolution and missions, the genii and saints are called different names. Masters, genii and immortals are the highly evolved beings who have cultivated themselves to spiritual perfection, and they all have the same vocation of rescuing mankind. They are enlightened and liberated beings, just as Buddha who had alluded to the image of the Kingdom of Happiness. In this period of spiritual decadence, many people talk about spiritualism. They even form their own circle of disciples, but misinterpret religious books, and sow dissension among people. They inculcate a blind faith in their disciples who in turn, disparage the other religions. They are human beings, but filled with discrimination and prejudice. Now, monk, you have stirred up the clouds of red dust, and the tides of separatism. Your sins are unforgivable. The priests and religious masters are advised to aim for the cultivation of souls and bodies. They should never create false opinions by preaching their religious doctrine and discrediting other religious sects. Those who publish insinuating books should repent in time or burn their books and toss away their pens. They should clean their

mouth and begin to say correct words. Otherwise, they will be sent to the Prison of Tongue-Carving and Mouth-Gashing to taste the bitter flavor deserved by evil mouths and tongues. It's quite late, Yang Ts'ien. Be ready to go back.

The Mandarin: Excuse me for any negligence. Generals, stand on ceremony to greet the guests.

YT: My deep thanks to His Excellency and to the Generals. May we say goodbye to you. Venerable Master, I am ready.

TK: The Temple is in sight. Prepare to return to your body.

Chapter 48

Visit to the 8th Palace

Interview with the King of Equality

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on February 16th, 1978. Year of the Horse.**

*The mind, as the moon on the pond, is unfathomed
The meditator penetrates within and perceives beyond
Like Sakya Muni, his blossom-heart is detached, undefiled
Or like Bodhidharma, crossing the ocean to conquer passions.*

Buddha Tse Kong: The resplendent moonlight is bright and glittering to the eyes. This is a characteristic of light. The spirit of the regenerated man is as bright and luminous as the moon because his heart is not soiled by desires.

The moon halo is calm and quiet but it doesn't give the dreary impression of death. The spiritual adept should look within or on the surface of a quiet and clear lake to see his own reflection and discover his true self. Even though he lives amidst worldly activities, the spiritual man remains free and detached from common desires because he can preserve his true self. He persists on the fixation of mind whether on a bed of jade or a place of dust. His vital breath energy can transcend everything else.

On the other hand, the profane people may lie at rest on couches of precious wood or marble, or on downy beds, but dust still surrounds them. Though they possess a host



of handy devices (vacuum cleaners, detergents, soap powder, towels, etc.), they still find themselves covered with layers of dust that is so dense in this world of sorrows.

Long ago, on the sacred Mount Ling Chan, Buddha Sakya Muni brandished a flower while he taught the sublime esoteric doctrine. Only the disciple Kasyapa understood the meaning of Buddha's gesture and he smiled. The flower was not an ordinary flower, it was a miraculous flower of Kasyapa's heart that blossomed when he looked at his Master. Nowadays, I Tse Kong, brandish my mediumistic pen. Some people would think that I am pretending and wouldn't believe me. An intelligent, comprehending man can understand that the writings of my brush-pen are those of my heart. Within the static, there exists the dynamic, and amid sand, there are grains of gold. The knowing man smiles because he obtains a treasure in the twinkling of an eye.

For instance, Bodhidharma who had sailed across the oceans to China, taught his disciples that, "three times three is nine"¹². It means when the Yang attains its absolute, it will then return to its initial cosmic state, or the original source of the soul. He also taught that all religions must come from the same source. The self-serving people of that time didn't understand. They said that Bodhidharma sought to search in

12 In the principle of Yin and Yang, the digit 9 designates absolute Yang. Once the Yang reaches its absolute, it turns back to digit 1 which is the source. The disciple who practices spiritual perfection and meditation will succeed to purify himself in order to reach the state of absolute Yang. He will attain enlightenment and return to his original source which is paradise. (Translator's note)

their pockets for money. Ha! Ha! He took no one's money, because he considered banknotes as scraps of paper. Also could they keep that money with them for a long time? Or would it be dispersed completely by their descendants? In fact, the Spiritual Initiator wanted to teach us that we must free ourselves from the profane heart, and replace it with a Buddha's heart, or we must eliminate the "inferior heart" for "a superior heart".

Yang Ts'ien: Venerable Master, your teachings are long and hard. I am afraid that human beings can't understand.

TK: Even the garbage has its value. You have certainly seen the rubbish that is loaded on a trash-cart. Well, some people might find gold in it. Some toss, the others pick, and nothing is lost. It is necessary for us to open our 3rd eye of clairvoyance before we can discern the real value of things. For instance, in the country of gold, a citizen regards gold as sand or pebbles. He doesn't appreciate gold as a precious metal. It therefore results that anything too abundant and common is neglected and undervalued by the people. Now, let's prepare for a trip to hell.

YT: Where shall we go, Master?

TK: To the 8th Palace. Come quickly on the dais.

YT: Yes, sir. I am in place.

TK: We arrive now. Let's go down.

TK: Before us is the 8th Palace. The guard is announcing our arrival.

YT: The King of the Palace and his mandarins are there to welcome us. High above the palace is a board written "King of Equality" of the 8th. Palace. The King, in his solemn

mantle, is descending the stairway. I humbly present my respects to His Majesty the King. My name is Yang Ts'ien. I am from the Temple of the Sages in Tai Chu. Tonight, we come to visit your palace, and wish to receive favorable assistance from His Majesty.

The King: Dispense with formalities. Please, take it easy. You have been pained greatly with your work, as a scribe, and now you are here to visit my palace. Please, follow me.

YT: Thank you, sir. Outside the palace, the souls are grouped in large numbers, each one waiting for his turn. They express astonishment at our arrival. Some of them are beaten by the guards and they scream frightfully.

The King: Please, take a seat. Venerable Buddha and Mr. Yang Ts'ien, I am really delighted to have a talk with you. General, bring us some tea.

The General: At your request, sir. Venerable Buddha and Mr. Yang Ts'ien, please help yourselves for tea.

The King: We have been waiting for your visit. Only now the honor is mine.

TK: Our time for each trip is quite limited. The fact of writing a book requires a great deal of time. Thanks to the disciples of the Temple of the Sages who devoted themselves day and night to help in writing the book. It will be completed in spite of many difficulties. Our work is slow, but steady. A great piece of work can't be done in haste.

YT: Both of us are deeply touched by your kindness. All we can do is to show our strong will in overcoming the obstacles.

The King: Accomplishing a divine mission isn't an

easy task. Every minute and second, you must exert patience and efforts without failure. If you deviate from your task a single second, you may never redeem your mistakes. While man's heart is still troubled, he cannot approach the Tao. Conversely, if he continues to strengthen his will, regeneration will be possible. Thanks to the cultivation of body and mind, people commit fewer errors. As a conclusion, by keeping a regenerated heart, we can attain the Tao even in the terrestrial world. Whether success can be obtained or not depends entirely upon us.

YT: I am happy to receive your golden teachings, sir. I would like to know the situation of the 8th Palace.

The King: Perfect. Here it is. The 8th Palace is in charge of re-educating the souls who committed too many sins, and not being punished adequately by the other palaces. These souls are handed over to the 8th Palace for complementary punishments. Our palace is provided with a prison called Big Prison with Blazing Heat plus 16 additional smaller prisons for the sinners committing various crimes. I make an appeal to human beings, urging them to walk on the right path, to learn morality, and regenerate themselves for acquiring knowledge of the absolute truth – To know about their soul origin and destination in order to avoid hell and painful reincarnations.

YT: Please explain to me why the sinful souls neglect to give me their names and addresses, but only the report of their sins. If these details can also be published in the book "Voyages To Hell", the moral teaching to human beings will be much more effective. Humans believe only in the things with accurate proof. If there is a lack of proofs and research,

they may become suspicious. May you kindly explain to me the reason so I can report to my fellow friends.

The King: The knowledge of the human beings in hell is still very limited. Therefore, God's edict has clearly specified to reveal only the sinful actions of souls without their names and addresses. Though we are well aware of the fact that their names and addresses would bear a more effective impact upon moral teaching, we dare not do so. The reason is that the descendants of the souls, on earth, would be ashamed and humiliated. If the names of their dead parents appear in the book, they will be mentally and spiritually troubled. Our intention to encourage good actions will have a counter-effect and our good will to teach morality to men will be defeated. We are therefore compelled to keep secret the identities of sinful souls.

TK: A nobleman is forever noble, and a vile man remains as ever vulgar. If one has to deal with a sinner, one must first arrest him. Then his identity will be asked later. The fact of believing or not believing in the existence of paradise and hell is without importance, because if people act dishonestly or inhumanly, they will fall into the grip of the King of Hell. At that time, it will be too late to believe. Well, it's time to leave now. We shall come back later. Be ready, Yang Ts'ien.

YT: May we take leave and many thanks to you, sir.

The King: Order to the Mandarins and Generals to render honors to our guests.

YT: I am ready, Master.

TK: Here we are. Disembark and hurry back to your body.

Chapter 49

Visit to the Prison with Crushing Wheels

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on March 1st, 1978. Year of the Horse.**

*Through the aperture of cranial chakra, he is awakened
His meridians are free flowing, his energy brightens,
With harmony and watchfulness, he is poised and peaceful
When leaving behind all desires, he is enlightened.*

Buddha Tse Kong: As stipulated by the Celestial Edict, we must complete the book “Voyages To Hell” by mid-autumn of this year. This term is going to expire and I begin to feel anxious. If we don’t visit hell more frequently in order to grasp the situation, young Yang Ts’ien will be deprived of any means to accede to hell: The doors of hell will be closed for good, after the term fixed by the Edict draws to an end.

Yang Ts’ien: The trips to hell are far from pleasant. But I am really afraid that the book can’t be completed before the due date. We will be in trouble if we don’t finish it on time. I must be more active, now.

TK: The one who pays off his debts, feels relieved. Such is my case. I must fulfill my responsibility in regard to human beings before I can have some leisure time. Men don’t understand my mission of salvation. If I don’t fulfill my task of rescuing mankind, then my title of a living Buddha will have no meaning.

YT: I wonder why?

TK: Well, because the Buddhas should never forsake



the living creatures. If they abandon them, then they will no longer be Buddhas. The title of a Buddha is just a name. So are the names of the living creatures. Therefore, we should not be trapped by exoteric forms. Time is getting late. Let's prepare ourselves for the trip. Come quickly on the lotus dais.

YT: I am ready, Master.

TK: Here we arrive. Get down, son.

YT: Which prison do we visit tonight?

TK: See that fire coloring a whole corner of the sky? It's the fire of the Big Prison With Blazing Heat.

YT: It's a prison worthy of its name. Its expanding waves of heat give me the impression of being roasted. What if we go elsewhere?

TK: Agreed. We have already visited the Blazing Heat Prison, haven't we? This one is similar to it, except that this fire is much more violent. Let's go to another prison.

YT: Yes. I see the infernal guards coming back and forth, escorting sinful souls. While on the way, they continue to insult the souls. Over there, it appears to be an execution ground. Tell me, Master, Why do the guards of hell change their forms so often? Sometimes they wear buffaloes' heads and horses' faces. Sometimes they recover their human forms

TK: These soldiers of hell are called by several surnames: "the impermanent black-and-white"(they are now black, now white) then, "the bastards" (born from unknown fathers, and from mixture of races) and also "the redoubtables". Every time they meet the sinful souls, they show off a livid green face with pointed yellow fans to frighten and menace them. At their sight, the sinful souls get distracted and tremble like an aspen leaf, as if they are chased by the devil. On the contrary, if the honest souls confront

them and say that they are not scared of the devils, then the infernal guards will let them go freely. You may indeed say, "Whoever has tranquil conscience fears nothing, even if his door is knocked upon late at night". In the world of the living, the guilty men turn pale at the sight of policemen. They may even urinate in their trousers as if they confront the devil. While policemen have manacles and pistols, the infernal guards have cutlasses and spears. Honest citizens feel reassured when seeing police, sensing they are fully protected by the latter. Wrongdoers, on the other hand, flee the policemen just as with the demons. Therefore, virtuous souls don't flurry before the infernal guards, whereas wicked souls are frightened to death and shiver at their sight. Here, we come to the prison with crushing wheels. Let's come in.

The General: What audacity to have brought a profane man here who is neither a genius nor a saint. Stop there!

TK: I am Tse Kong with the order of the Celestial Emperor; I take this profane man to visit hell on a mission. Go to the Mandarin Governor and inform him of our visit.

The General: So, is that the old monk, the living Buddha Tse Kong? Will you wait a moment? I'll let the Governor know about your arrival.

YT: Why are they unaware of our coming?

TK: My decision to visit this prison was spontaneous. Therefore, the General did not know about our arrival.

The General: Please apologize for my carelessness. The Governor and his staff will come soon.

The Mandarin: Welcome to Buddha Tse Kong and Mr. Yang Ts'ien. I wasn't forewarned of your visit, so we fail to welcome you properly. Just come in, please.

YT: We thank you greatly, Excellency. I see the



horrible spectacle of sinful souls being mashed to paste by the wheels of a cart.

The Mandarin: Our prison is called “Crushing Wheels”. After being purged by the first seven palaces, many sinful souls are sent here to be punished on account of their remaining sins.

YT: This cart, with sharply rugged and unequal wheels is drawn by four mules. The sinful souls are laid on the ground. As soon as the mules receive the swish of a whip, they dash forward. The sinful soul can only utter a scream of terror before his body is reduced to paste. Oh my God! The pain is certainly atrocious!

TK: Look at that heap of bones and flesh! When a gust of wind blows past, the souls recover back the form of their bodies, and then the punishment is renewed.

YT: What crimes had they committed?

The Mandarin: They were adulterers, impious sons, assassins. After being punished by the first seven palaces, they are transferred here to endure the Crushing-Wheel. These adulterers, undutiful sons, and murderers have no more human dignity. They are all sent to our prison for reformation. To accomplish this, their flesh must be crushed to paste.

TK: We understand the goal of your prison now. I hope that human beings will repent soon if committing errors. If they have committed those above sins, they must quickly regenerate themselves to avoid the punishment of the Crushing Wheel. Time is over, Yang Ts’ien. Let’s go back to the temple...

Chapter 50

Visit to the Limb-Chopping Prison

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on March 6th, 1978. Year of the Horse.**

*The grain of seed is formed when the flower withers
How innocent and genuine are the immortals' nature
Carelessly, they show the seeds then reap
By regenerating their soul and character.*

Buddha Tse Kong: If a flower doesn't wither, and its petals don't detach from the calyx, the pistil can't become a grain of seed. The Tao which leads man to his original source, is akin to this phenomenon. One thing is lost, another is formed. It's the law of metempsychosis. Alone, a sudden death is unforeseen and irreversible. When a baby boy and a baby girl play together, no sensual desire is roused, because their celestial nature is ingenuous and immaculate. The genuine nature granted by God is perfectly white and stainless. So is the celestial nature of God and Buddhas. Adult persons are entirely different. Their hearts are filled with blind passions, and as soon as a man and a woman get close together, they will be attracted to each other. This behavior is similar to the phenomenon of fructification: The flower fades and becomes the fruit; the fruit contains a kernel which develops into a plant that will flower again and become the fruit, and the process keeps being repeated. The same succession proceeds from birth to death, then from death to rebirth, and man is chained to a cycle of transmigrations. A virtuous man who

cultivates himself toward spiritual perfection, should know how to preserve the original vital essence granted to him. He should not waste it through intemperance of carnal pleasures that will trap him into wedlock and indefinite karmic debts. If he begins to invest now, he will make profit later on. He will not be burdened by any karma, when reaching his old age. I hope that human beings will grasp this truth.

Yang Ts'ien: The heat is simply suffocating. My head is completely wet with sweat.

TK: Sweat is the excretion of water. A regenerated man doesn't progress on the path of the Tao, if he doesn't work hard for it.

YT: What do you mean by that, Master?

TK: Well, when one has a mouth and knows how to keep quiet, then one will gradually understand the profound meanings hidden behind the teachings. Now, no more talking, son. Let's go to hell.

YT: At your request.

TK: Here we arrive. Come down the dais.

YT: It's pretty cold in hell. What a difference between the climates of the two worlds.

TK: Naturally, the living world belongs to the Yang. Hell is Yin. It's a predisposed law.

YT: What a company! There are some infernal guards escorting the sinful souls, and also that group of men and horses!

TK: True. Tonight, we are going to visit the small "Limb-Chopping" Prison. They are the Mandarin Governor and the Generals. Let's greet them!

YT: I am Yang Ts'ien, disciple of the Temple of the Sages in Taichu. May I solicit some information from you?

The Mandarin: You are both welcomed. The merits

of your temple are so worthy. Once being completed, the book "Voyages To Hell" will be printed and offered free to the public as an admonition to mankind. This is an unparallel masterpiece, even surpassing that of Hiuan Tsou (a predecessor master). Wickedness will subside and divine blessings will prevail. The secret of hell will be revealed in the book, which is a matchless piece of work whose value will last through the ages. It is not easy to fulfill such an assigned goal. Please, follow me to the Limb-Chopping Prison.

YT: Thank you, Excellency. Already, I hear the resounding cries and laments of the detainees. But look! This prison is exactly the pattern of an execution ground in the world. The sinful souls are forced to kneel. The demon-guard, with a cutlass, chops his left arm off his body. The victim emits a heart-rending howl. A second stroke removes his right arm, the soul falls unconscious. His legs are also chopped into two stumps. Blood flows abundantly, spilling all over. I am not in the mood for looking at this sickening spectacle. Can you tell me, Excellency, what crime this soul committed to endure such a frightful punishment?

The Mandarin: The limb-chopping punishment is extremely painful and terrible. Many people were born to the world with arms and legs of perfect beauty. However, they don't utilize their limbs for doing good. Reversely, they used them exclusively for harming and killing other people. After their death, they have been judged and punished in several prisons before they are transferred to ours for ultimate punishment. Most of them are disloyal elements, children being ungrateful towards their parents, mercenaries, thieves, who had killed many people with their hands, using daggers, guns, or pens, or struck people with their fists and feet. They were engaged deeply in crime and never tried to change.

Upon their death, they were judged and punished by other prisons of hell and are now suffering the last punishment of our palace.

TK: The terrestrial world is presently teeming with robbers and thieves. In addition to robbery and theft, they are disputing honors, riches, wares, estates, women, and they don't hesitate to destroy those who oppose their greed. Disgraceful actions occur in many places every day, as regularly as daily meals. Those who disregard their country's laws and have the habit of swindling and plundering will have their arms chopped off by the guards of hell. Also their legs will be chopped off, the outlaws who belittle morality, go beyond the authorized limits and refuse to submit to laws and regulations; also speculators who take illegal actions for the sake of their gain. All these sinners will have their legs chopped off by the demon-guards. It is quite late. Our visit to the Limb-Chopping Prison is sufficient as it is.

The Mandarin: The majority of living beings don't believe the existence of hell. Why don't they simply come to a jail on earth to see the detained criminals, thieves, and robbers with their own eyes? These fellows prefer by-ways to straight roads. Instead of making three steps, they prefer making one. How could they do so without stumbling and falling? With a single mouth, they try to swallow two tangerines at a time. It's not surprising that they suffocate and choke. Well, gentlemen, I congratulate you for your merits in writing the book. I shall be delighted with another visit of yours.

YT: We have to say goodbye, Excellency and Generals. Thank you so much.

The Mandarin: Stand in line for the farewell salute.

Chapter 51

Visit to the 9th Palace

Interview with the Metropolitan King

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on March 29th, 1978. Year of the Horse.**

*It's difficult to avoid the Portico of Demons
Groups of lost souls enter successively
Glory and wealth are all but illusions
Living simply without longings means happiness.*

Buddha Tse Kong: We are through with our visit to the 8th Gate. Now, we're going to enter the 9th Gate and visit the Gate of Yin, alias the door of hell. Yang Ts'ien, let's depart.

Yang Ts'ien: Our duty consists of entering the 9th Palace in order to complete the book "Voyages To Hell". My heart is so enthusiastic that words fail me.

TK: It is extremely important to pass over the sill of hell's door. Don't underestimate it, and don't be too optimistic either. We are assuming a heavy responsibility that compels us to go up hill and down dale in order to accomplish our mission. We have to be cautious in our work. The publication of the book, when done, will bring you a lot of spiritual merits, owing to its educational value to humans. I hope you'll do your best to complete your task. Now, come quickly on the dais.

YT: At your request. I'm ready, Master.



TK: We arrive now. Let's come down.

YT: Before us, a crowd is gathering. They're organizing a solemn welcome in our honor.

TK: The Metropolitan King was informed of our visit. An exceptional reception is reserved for us. Let's dust our clothes neatly. Look ahead! Deafening sounds of cymbals and drums are accompanying the musical instruments to form an harmonious symphony for our welcome.

YT: The melodious music is heard like the traditional folksong titled "Harmonious flute notes of South and North".

TK: You're right!

YT: How blissful this divine music is! I'm filled with happiness when hearing it: My soul soars as though I reach the realm of Immortals. Could this spectacle be real?

TK: Why couldn't it? Any earthly being who accomplishes meritorious deeds will hear the same divine music, when he receives the vermilion-sealed letter of heaven inviting him to the Kingdom of Gods. As for the people whose meritorious deeds are mediocre, they aren't honored with this exceptional grace from the heavens. When prizes are distributed on earth, there is music too. The earthly world has its earthly music, the celestial world has its divine music. The rumour about this fact isn't false. The man who commits crime in the course of his life will hear no music other than the wails of demons and the clankings of sword-bayonets, cutlasses and shackles. When on his way to hell, he won't have the courage to complete the trip. The tragic infernal music would urge him to stop halfway. He will be recaptured for sure, and will be tied up, and finally led to hell by the infernal guards. Let's hasten forward. The dignitaries

of the 9th Gate are patiently standing in line and waiting for us.

YT: I humbly present myself to His Majesty the Metropolitan King and to the Mandarins. I am the disciple of Saint Kouan-Cheng of the Temple of the Sages in Tai Chu. Carrying out the Celestial Edict, my gracious Master Buddha Tse Kong and I visit hell to write a book. May I thank you for your warm welcome and your useful information that will help me in preparing the book.

The King: I dispense you from ceremonials, Mr. Yang Ts'ien. Tonight, I particularly invite you to a feast. Please follow me to the reception hall for some rest.

YT: Thank you for your generosity, sir.

TK: Let's follow His Majesty to the reception hall.

The King: Please take a seat. You must have visited nearly all gates, from the 1st to the 9th. For the achievement of your book, you have experienced a great deal of labor and pain. In honor of your arrival, may I give you something very special to purify yourself from worldly dust.

TK: We appreciate greatly your benevolence, sir. After riding the dais of lotus for an entire year, our bodies are soiled with so much dust.

The King: Your hearts are as pure as the lotus, which are not impregnated by the stench of mud while growing amid a miry lake. The lotus flower preserves its nature in perfect purity. Only your earthly feet need to be carefully washed now. The fruits of the Kingdom of the Gods are on the tray. Please help yourselves, without reserve.

TK: Dear disciple! Go directly ahead. This is the rarest occasion you will ever experience.

YT: Thanks a lot, Master. These fruits resemble the grapes of the living world. They are purple-red, and their flavor is exquisite.

The King: True. The trees of these ebony-colored fruits grow naturally on the mount of K'un Lun. By absorbing the pure breath energy, the skin of these fruits is velvet black and their pulp is exquisitely sweet. Please help yourself.

TK: Can we talk while eating? Yang Ts'ien, if you have any questions, don't hesitate to ask His Majesty.

YT: Yes, sir (to the King). May you kindly explain to me the functions of your 9th Palace?

The King: I am assuming a heavy responsibility. To see one group after another group of sinful souls suffering painfully, I really can't talk without emotion. However, my duty consists of judging them impartially and I cannot allow myself to be sentimental. All I hope is to see human beings return quickly to the right path. I can then free myself of my moral obligation. All organisms of hell function correctly and smoothly. Like the magistrates in the living world, the infernal judges maintain this judicial maxim of morality, "Act virtuously to give examples to others. And teach other people with uprightness".

YT: So that's it! What prisons are governed by your palace, sir?

The King: My palace governs the Eternal Prison. We also establish 18 smaller prisons for the sinful souls.

YT: Suppose someone asks me, "Why do people usually say the dead has to pass by 18 prisons?" How shall I answer them?

The King: People have the habit of joking with this

sentence, “Gosh ! Men have to pass through the 18 prisons of hell after their death”. By saying so, people only refer to the Eternal Prison which consists of 18 floors reaching as deeply as the core of the earth where the breath of the Yin is dense and completely black. The prisoner can’t even see the fingers of his raised hand. A liquid as dark as coffee overflows this place. There, night and day, the sinful souls quench their thirst with this liquid. Do you like having a cup of this coffee, Mr. Yang Ts’ien?

YT: Oh, no! May I abstain from it! I prefer some tea!

The King: You are Yang Ts’ien, the cautious. Now try these heavenly fruits.

YT: This kind of fruit has the form of a 9-floored tower on earth. They are savoury, aromatic and cooling. What do you call them?

The King: This is a specialty of the 9th Palace. The fruit is called “Nine-Floored Tower”. Whoever eats this fruit, will have his bones strengthened. It is also the tonic for the spirit and vital energy. The nine towers symbolize the absolute Yang. Therefore, once eating these fruits, the vital breath energy of man will be reinforced. They are really good for your health, Mr. Yang Ts’ien.

TK: Most people prefer the ascent to the 9th floored Tower than the descent to the Eternal Prison with its 18 floors. It’s quite strange.

The King: Please serve yourself and relax. You still look covered with ashes and dust(to Tse Kong). Now, I’m going to take Yang Ts’ien to the “ Cascade of Nine Streams” for a genial bath.

YT: I fear to go there by myself, gracious Master.

Please accompany me.

TK: All right. I'll go with you, son.

YT: I thank you very much, for your kindness in accompanying me. Here, the roads are new, clean and even, which are a rare sight to be found in hell.

TK: These roads are particularly reserved for the spiritual Immortals who want to return to the terrestrial world to attend the Memorial Ceremony. You are indeed lucky to have a chance to behold this scenery. Profit from the coolness of the cascade. Do you see those three genii who are coming in our direction? Well, they are purified of all dirt, and are going to receive the celestial order for returning to the living world and assuming their functions.

YT: These genii look high-spirited. They are crowned with aureoles.

The King: Please, go ahead.

YT: That mountain before us is pretty high. It is covered with verdant trees. High up from the rocks of the slope, the water of the cascade is gushing out, looking like gigantic ribbons of silk. Amidst this scorching heat, the refreshing nine streams are pouring down freely, and the earth seems to revive at their contact.

The King: Here we are at the Cascade of Nine Streams.

YT: On the slope of the mountain, engraved characters of glittering golden color are seen: "Cascade of Nine Streams". From a lofty height, the nine streams are unfurling their waters, just like a picture of spread strips of silk.

The King: Young Yang Ts'ien is going to take a

cleansing bath. Order the Generals and escorting officers to withdraw.

The Generals: At your request, sir.

The King: Mr. Yang Ts'ien, go straight to the end of the cascade.

YT: The current is too swift. I am reluctant to go there alone. Please keep me company, Master.

TK: With pleasure. For three years, my buddha's body hasn't been bathed. I should take this opportunity to purify myself at least once. Let's go.

YT: What coolness! Hey! I can't open my eyes!

TK: Try hard to open them to wash your profane eyes.

YT: How happy I am! I feel completely refreshed. But I am all wet. What should I do?

TK: Don't worry. In a moment, with my rush-fan I shall dry you, just the way a drying machine does. Wash your dirty feet with the water.

YT: You are making fun of your disciple, Master.

TK: The places people can't see are usually dirty, such as the soles of the feet, the undersides of beds and desks. They are like "fortresses". If we don't launch a mopping offensive against them, they can serve as refuges for fleas and bugs. How could you ride the winds and mount the clouds with these parasites with you?

YT: You are absolutely right, Master.

TK: As its name indicates, the Cascade of Nine Streams resembles nine dragons spouting water with which one gets washed without recourse to soap or detergents for cleansing the filth. Human beings should take care of their

bodies and souls, keep them all clean to avoid the punishments beyond life. You look clean and neat, son. Come up to the bank.

YT: Master, can you give me that blow of your rush-fan so I can get dry quickly?

TK: Look at this rush-fan. It outdoes a drying machine.

YT: In fact, my clothes are dried while my body and soul are purified. I thank you very much, sir, and Venerable Master.

The King: I hope you'll have enough courage and patience to endure the pains and to accomplish your mission.

YT: I'll try my best, sir. May I wish to be blessed with more spiritual energy?

The King: When the clouds are clear, the sun will appear. At that time, there will be no need to be cleansed anymore. Do you understand?

TK: It's growing late. We must leave now. And we apologize for not accompanying you back to your palace.

The King: Never mind, Venerable Buddha. Line up your men for the salute, Generals.

YT: Your generosity will never be forgotten, sir. I am thankful for the party and for the cleansing bath at the Cascade of Nine Streams. Please accept my greetings and my gratitude, sir.

TK: Here we are at the door of the temple. Go to your body, son.

Chapter 52

Visit to the Prison with Vats of Bubbling Oil

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on April 9th, 1978. Year of the Horse.**

*Clouds and mountains lead to the world of immortals
Under the fir tree, he transcends space, time and all,
Busying himself with assisting mankind
To enlighten within and illuminate their perpetual light.*

Buddha Tse Kong: The heat is extremely suffocating. Shops and bus stations are crowded with people. In hell, the roads are muddy and slippery. However, a strange animation is prevalent there. Let's have a good look at the dusty world! A distressing spectacle is displayed: In the temples and churches, the atmosphere is cheerless and dim. Artificial flowers with depressed outlooks, and the smell of alcohol, meat, and passionate desires have taken place a long time ago to slowly lead man to the marsh of crimes. This explains why hell is being overcrowded with damned souls. I hope that men will awaken themselves quickly. Now, Yang Ts'ien, let's go to hell.

YT: Yes, sir. I'm ready.

TK: We arrive. Get down, son.

YT: Who are those people coming in our direction?
Where do they come from?

TK: They are the Mandarin-Governor of the prison



with “Vats of Bubbling Oil” and his Generals coming to welcome us.

YT: Oh! I have the honor to meet His Excellency and the Generals.

The Mandarin: I am delighted with your visit as prescribed by the celestial ordinance.

TK: The factories, mills and enterprises are public places where idle men are not permitted. Hell doesn’t have any door and refuses to entertain visitors. Human beings, however, don’t seem to cast a glance at its posted monitor. They venture to bump their heads against the invisible door. It’s not surprising to see them crack their heads, bleed profusely and wail incessantly.

The Mandarin: You are right, Venerable Buddha Tse Kong. No one can come here unless they are invited. The trespasser without permission will fall right away into a deep well before he can say anything. So, our prison of “Vats of Bubbling Oil” is dependent on the 9th Palace. Please come in for better inspection.

YT: Excellency, please accept my thanks for the information. Cries and screams are resounding from the prison. On the ground, I see a row of vats with bubbling oil spilling over their brims. The demon-guards, on their part, are busy adding more oil to the vats and feeding the fire with additional logs. The sinful souls are stripped of their clothing and tied to the stakes driven into the ground near the vats. When the oil is boiling hot, the guards pour in cold water, and then the boiling oil and the fire splash all over the sinners’ bodies. Their skin is swollen and blisters are formed throughout their bodies. They utter heart-rending screams

of pain. Their lot is really pitiful. What crimes have they committed?

The Mandarin: I am going to have some of them coming here. Their declarations will be a good lesson for men.

YT: Interesting, indeed.

The Mandarin: Here they come. Now listen, sinful souls! These gentlemen are the Living Buddha Tse Kong and Mr. Yang Ts'ien of the Temple of the Sages in Taichu. By celestial order, they come to hell to gather facts. Tell them the whole truth about the wrong actions you did in your life.

The soul: It's a sad shame for me to give an account of my crimes. In the terrestrial world, I made a living with my pen. I had thought that regular writings could not make great profits, therefore, I wrote pornographic novels. So, I did it clandestinely, and sold them at high prices. Later on, my wife and I disagreed, and we got a divorce. At old age, I suffered from paralysis. This infirmity reminded me of the bad karma, the law of retribution and sanction which govern man's actions. All of my misdeeds appeared accurately in the Mirror Revelator of Past Crimes. For this reason, I had to pass by several prisons and endure various chastisements, such as heart extraction, limb-chopping, etc. I was at last transferred to this prison for the torment of bubbling oil. I suffer miserably day and night. I try in vain to pray for pardon. I would like to send this message to mankind to never write pornographic novels if you want to avoid the punishment I endure, detained in a dark cell with no sunrays.

The Mandarin: Pornographic scripts give birth to deplorable consequences. By reading them youngsters are tempted to practice masturbation and seek prostitutes



in disguised pleasure-houses and dens. They may go so far as to commit rape and even murder. In addition to severe punishment in many prisons, the pornographic writers are finally deported to the Eternal Prison. All pornographic scripts must be destroyed before they can return to the cycle of metempsychosis to receive the sanction of the law of causality. Now, the second soul will declare his crimes.

The soul: When in life, I had a photography studio. My professional technique was not bad, but business was poor. Getting advice from some friends, I started producing pornographic films which I sold at exorbitant prices. Afterwards, my illicit business was discovered and I was arrested by the police. I had to appear at a court-hearing and was given severe sentence. That was the only crime I committed in my life. After my death, I was sent to several prisons and finally to this one to suffer the most painful torment.

The Mandarin: All the people who write erotic novels, produce pornographic films, distribute photos of nudes, prepare aphrodisiacs or publish obscene stories are creating for themselves a bad karma. Hell has reserved for them the most severe punishment. Sexual immorality is the root of a thousand crimes. The writers who use their skill for writing foul things and their talent for creating imaginary characters are intellectually sick. They stir and trouble men's hearts. Their crime is colossal. Men should abstain from perusing obscene images and reading unchaste magazines in order to avoid damaging their attitude and character. Whoever tries to run counter to morality will sow a harmful

karma and give vent to the fury of the Immortals governing the three worlds.

TK: It's growing late. Let's prepare to go home. I appreciate the useful information you have giving us, Excellency.

YT: Please accept my thanks for the assistance you granted us.

The Mandarin: It's my pleasure.

TK: Here is the temple. Your body is awaiting you.



Words From Master Luong Si Hang-Vi Kien

Let's take a short break after reading this chapter. We see that the scenes described in this chapter are similar to those appearing previously. But why don't people die from such heavy punishment in hell? Why don't they die from such a misery? Now we realize that on earth, a word can break our heart without us seeing it; it's like a rod whipping at our heart and mind, but we don't see it. It is just a word: We are the ones who insult the others for betraying us, but we feel miserable. Our flesh and bones do not suffer, but we naturally feel tormented in our heart and mind, and we are unable to sleep. Therefore, it functions like a rod of spiritual energy to chastise the consciousness of any soul. In reality, the soul is eternal, and if we know how to repent and improve ourselves in order to evolve and ascend higher, we will have an opportunity for liberation. We will truly have such chance.

Why do we read the book "Voyages To Hell"? We read



it to prove that we may achieve liberation. The sinner souls die from their torments, and then they are reborn. Do you see it? The true consciousness remains a true one; but if it turns towards impurity, then vices will engender reactions and other vices, which is comparable to a whipping.

Today, we are honest people, but if we go out and steal from others, if we slander others, or use our guile to do all kinds of betrayals, who will suffer the consequences? We are the ones flogging ourselves, not hell. On the other hand, if you are honest and virtuous, and turn towards the World Above, if you are altruistic and understand that this world is just temporary, and that only love and forgiveness are essential, if you maintain such a consciousness during your whole life, then eventually you will also achieve liberation. We only need to learn this much. All wise people only learn this much.

Only through patience and resignation will we know how to love and forgive. If we lack patience and resignation, we will not forgive anyone, and we will remain close-minded. We should practice extreme patience and resignation. The Immortals and the Buddhas have achieved enlightenment through their patience and resignation. No one has succeeded to attain the Tao without patience and resignation. As you see, Sun Wu-K'ung possessed 72 magic powers and fought everywhere he went, but finally, he had to practice patience and resignation while lying underneath the mountain of Five Elements. He was imprisoned there for several hundreds years to learn the word "patience" before having an opportunity to elevate himself. Today, what is our soul doing? It is also imprisoned in the mountain of five elements. We are subject

to actions and reactions, and we face innumerable attacks that we have started ourselves. If we are wicked, we will encounter wickedness. If we always maintain our serenity, we will never encounter evil, but we will only touch people's hearts and transform them, and we will not be blocked.

You have the fortunate opportunity to know this Vo-Vi method to cultivate yourselves spiritually, and you know the way to control yourselves with the practice of the silent invocation of Nam-Mo-A-Di-Da-Phat. You know how to concentrate your spiritual energy, how to breathe without retention, and how to achieve meditative contemplation in order to improve your inner organism, and transform your consciousness from the impure to the pure. We should recognize that we are impure; we should recognize our sins, and we must correct ourselves on our own, and not let someone else do it. With our own efforts, we will be able to bring us to a place of purity and we will evolve to return to our inherent equilibrium.

As you read about the Vo-Vi method, you have noticed that from the day you started your spiritual practice until today, you have encountered numerous fortunate opportunities. For example, the canonical books come from people's persistent efforts to translate them for your understanding, saving you time and energy to do it yourselves. Who has given us this opportunity? Thanks to our efforts to meditate and perfect ourselves spiritually, the Immortals and Buddhas have sent people to help us, and give us the means to read, to understand, to achieve awareness, and to correct ourselves. However, many people are still prejudiced, and believe that this book is false, and that these are untruths.

This would be somewhat acceptable for those who have not yet understood, but now that we have cultivated ourselves spiritually, we should re-examine with calmness: Why have I felt purity and lightness since I started my spiritual practice for several months, but today I felt anxious after some events had happened, and my soul is tormented even though I am unable to express myself? What is afflicting me? Do you see the divine law? The divine law is not commonly advertised for people to see, but it is hidden in your consciousness, and if you sink deeper, you will descend to hell. Many people on earth look fresh and healthy, and have a prosperous business; they look happy and boast to be such and such famous person; then some day, their face looks ashen and filled with dark energy. What sin is that? They have tormented themselves. Their situation is similar to a house with hermetically closed doors and windows, allowing no light to enter, so how can the house look fresh? Isn't it our own fault?

When we practice this Vo-Vi method, we are following exactly the esoteric science, which is hidden in our consciousness. If we accept to develop and open ourselves, we will progress. We are not presumptuous, but we will certainly arrive at our destination. We will return to equilibrium, calmness and contentment. We practice detachment, and give up our bad habits and bad characters. From a young age, we have been holding to our bad habits and bad characters, and wrongly believed that what we inherited from our parents is happiness. No, we must recognize our bad habits, and return to our inherent lightness and purity, our inherent equilibrium. Only then will we achieve calmness and contentment, and we will be able to realize love and forgiveness. Before issuing

any words from the tip of our tongue, we should always keep in mind the feelings of love and forgiveness among peoples.

When you see someone bleeding, you would also draw in a quick breath. This person's bleeding is happening outside of your body, but why do you still feel affected? We have the same consciousness, and we suffer similarly.

When Yang T'sien descends to hell and sees how people are being flogged, he would feel pity and wishes to intervene immediately. Why? He is a sinner soul too, and he identifies himself with the sinner souls. But he has the fortunate opportunity to travel to hell for learning, so that he would awaken his consciousness and spend more efforts in his spiritual cultivation upon his return. If, upon his return to the earthly world, he does not want to cultivate his spiritual mind, he would have to return to hell to endure the same punishment. This is why he feels indignation at the beginning. Why does he feel indignation? He still nurtures his pride. He believes to be better and wiser than the King of Hell, but after talking with the King, he sees that the latter is right. The sinner must pay for his sins. What should the baker do when his cake is broken? He must knead the flour again, so that it has a chance for resurrection.

Therefore, we conform to the law of birth, maturity, death, and annihilation, followed by resurrection, and the whole universe resides within this divine law. We currently exist here, then we will die and be annihilated, and will be reborn. However, now we know that the soul is constantly reborn and indestructible. Therefore, we work on cultivating our soul directly, and the dark sins cannot invade us anymore because we have gone on a straight path and we always

accept to love and forgive, so that we may attain lightness in our spiritual evolution, and return to our old homeland. This is the place of calmness and contentment; we will fully enjoy the lightness and purity of heaven, and we will cooperate with the Lord to help all living beings, and all thousands of beings become one. When our consciousness returns to oneness, there will be no more discrimination, no more differentiation among this or that religion, only merciful compassion.

Today, we descend on earth, we form relationships as wives, husbands and children, but we do not know what love and compassion mean. Now we know and respect ourselves. We see that this physical body, this organism is a structure formed by the supernatural. It is very subtle, and it currently controls our soul without our knowledge, and we wrongly believe it to be the master. The physical body only creates waves of infatuation in order to awaken the soul. Once the soul repents its mistakes and turns to spiritual cultivation, it will be able to project out of the body. We recognize that the soul is the master of the body, and not the reverse. If the body is the master of the soul, we would be able to call the dead bodies in the morgue to come out to listen to the spiritual lectures. No, this is not possible, so only the people who have a soul and astral body can sit and listen here. Does the body attain awakening, or do the soul and astral body? When the soul and astral body are awakened, they will no longer burden the body; they will love and respect God and Buddhas, they will love and respect their physical body. The more we appreciate our bodies, the more we will love our parents, our fellow human beings, and God and Buddhas. This is the path to attain enlightenment. We must see ourselves in

others; we see ourselves in a blade of grass; we see ourselves in everything. Why does the Lord grant pure energy to a blade of grass? It also enjoys the pure air like we do. Without the pure air, we would die; similarly, the blade of grass lives thanks to the pure energy. The same applies to earths and sands. Do you see it? The consciousness of harmony of all living beings is evolving within order and discipline. However, due to our stubbornness and our pride, we lose this order for ourselves.

Therefore, when we hate someone, we hate ourselves. When we are angry with someone, we are angry with ourselves. You should remember this sentence. When you love others, you love yourselves. You must know how to love others compassionately. God and Buddhas have loved us and they have touched our hearts, so that we have an opportunity for spiritual cultivation today. Why don't we learn the virtue of God and Buddhas to touch the hearts of others and give them an opportunity for spiritual training? Eventually, we have to learn patience and resignation.

Today, we have the fortunate opportunity to assemble here to contribute our will for spiritual elevation for all, and to work for all three spheres, so that they attest to our sincerity, and our earnest will for spiritual training. We do not nurture senseless intransigence and rivalry that prevent our spiritual evolution. We express the vow to give up all our bad habits and bad characters to advance toward our true consciousness, and to live in harmony with all living beings in the whole universe.

I sincerely thank you for your attention.

Chapter 53

Visit to the Prison with Biting and Drilling Vipers

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on April 19th, 1978. Year of the Horse.**

*Repentance is a way to purify man's karma
Devoid of worldly dust, he returns to his original spirit
Paradise is reserved only for good people
While hell entertains the hearts of vampires.*

Buddha Tse Kong: Paradise grants admission only to the people who have learned the Tao and accumulated good actions and great merits, that are the honest and sincere persons. Hell, on the other hand, is ready to give hospitality to dishonest elements, wicked persons, scoundrels and swindlers. Because of these two opposing features, heaven and hell don't have the same type of visitors. In other words, the gambler will be attracted to visit a gambling place. But a person of different taste like you, will not be concerned about gambling. In hell, that person who has no interest in gambling will not be allowed to cross the "Lake of Lightning and Thunder". And the genius-guardian will not permit him to even make a step to visit the place. Therefore, if you have no interest in gambling, then you will never follow the path to which the inveterate gamblers are rushing. Let's prepare for another tour to hell. Come on to the lotus dais, son.

Yang Ts'ien: Order executed, Master. Ready for departure.

TK: Here we are. Disembark.

YT: What place is this?

TK: Do you see the Mandarin-Governor and his staff who are coming in our direction? They are the dignitaries of the prison with biting and drilling vipers.

YT: My respectful salutation to His Excellency and to the Generals.

The Mandarin: I received the order to meet our guests of honor. Would you mind coming in, gentlemen?

YT: Your hearty welcome touches me greatly, Excellency. Let's come in right away. Mercy upon me! All those snakes creeping along the ground! The spectacle provides an alarming terror to those who see it. Coiling, stretching, interweaving, red and purple snakes, each one is the size of an arm. They aim at the sinners' mouths to bite and crawl down the throats, enter deeper inside the sinners' bodies and perforate an outlet at the navel. Some of the sinners have holes all over their bodies, and fresh blood is gushing out of the gaping holes. Pale-looking, they fall unconsciously on the ground. Moans and high-pitched screams are deafening. The spectator feels electrified with all his limbs trembling with horror. May I ask what crimes the sinners have committed?

The Mandarin: This prison is given the name of "Biting and Drilling Vipers". Inside is a multitude of red and purple vipers. They don't excavate the earth for a refuge, but prefer to drill into the mouths and umbilicuses of the sinful souls. Hence comes the name of the drilling vipers. All those people who, in their life, didn't behave uprightly and didn't obey the law, who were corrupt or guilty of misuse of money and bribery, who appropriated public properties, who did harm to other people in order to satisfy their greed for money, in brief, all those whose hearts were as cruel as vipers have to suffer this punishment. Those who create misfortune for others, acted fraudulently, sowed hatred and dissension

among men, killed other people while hiding their weapons, sharpened their daggers for an ulterior vendetta, are to be punished here. In our time, many contractors building public edifices and private houses seek to exploit the workmanship, and steal building materials, which may cause catastrophes in the future. They are like the snakes digging their lairs underneath the earth. They are despicable men. After their death, they not only suffer the chastisements of other places, but are also sent here for complementary punishment.

YT: For torment, this must be one of the most dreadful ones! Are there other categories of sinners to come here and suffer?

The Mandarin: I only list a number of the most severe sins. Sins are multiforms and the sinners are judged after their particular cases.

TK: The people who love to dig the small hole with a sharp buffalo's horn certainly get little done. What can they get after all? Man's life is so transient. Why don't they simply live in good conscience instead of using their know-how to pursue dishonest gains? Look at those sinful souls being led to torture! They stagger, wail, moan, and suffer indescribable pains. It's a heart-breaking sight. I hope that human beings will discontinue using buffalo's horn, after reading the book "Voyages To Hell". Otherwise, they will be like an eel catcher who stretches his arm to rummage for an eel, but touches a venomous snake which bites his hand. Isn't he trapping himself to death? Our visit is long enough. Sweet home is waiting, Yang Ts'ien.

YT: Your explanations are excellent. They help us greatly. Now we must take leave.

The Mandarin: Muster your men, Generals, for the farewell salute.

TK: Your body is there, son.

Chapter 54

Visit to the Eternal Prison

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on April 26th, 1978. Year of the Horse.**

*Sounds of sutras and prayers resound in symphony
Awakened, man renounces fame and prestige
What's the use of owning so many properties?
At the end, everyone must leave everything.*

Buddha Tse Kong: Opposite to the Temple of the Sages, a tall building has just been built. Those who live in the cozy place high above the ground are lucky. However, those who possess a peaceful mind, or a tranquil heart are more fortunate. How precious life will be, if the mind is at peace.

YT: What you said is correct, Master.

TK: Fine. The dais is waiting. Get ready, Yang Ts'ien.

YT: I am ready, Master.

TK: We arrive now.

YT: Where are we, Master?

TK: Tonight, something special. We go to the Eternal Prison.

YT: Human beings are scared to death when hearing about the Eternal Prison. Can we go somewhere else?

TK: O, come on! What do you have to fear? I'm next to you. If you feel alarmed, I'll give you one of my pills. Take it and follow me.



YT: Thank you for your miracle pill. I now feel stabilized and calm. Here is the Mandarin coming to greet us.

The Mandarin: Welcome to Buddha Tse Kong and Mr. Yang Ts'ien. Our prison, being called "The Eternal Prison", is placed under the administration of the 9th Palace. We are honored to have you as our guests.

YT: We thank you for your good will, Excellency. May I ask you why this prison is so big?

The Mandarin: The Eternal Prison is like the nose of a man. Man's nose is neither too big nor small, but through it, the air penetrates deeply into every cell of man's body. This Eternal Prison is thus the resting place of the souls whose crimes are piled up as high as heaven.

YT: I certainly dare not visit that cavern. The cell inside is so dark! The only sounds we can hear are poignant screams and bubbling of boiling water. Are the sinful souls being drowned in there?

The Mandarin: The lodgers of the cavern are all sinners. This prison is composed of 18 levels. Its floor is studded with sharp pointed stakes and flooded with boiling water. Here is how the torment proceeds: The sinful soul is pierced by a guard's sword and flung into the cavern. Meanwhile, the terrestrial attraction draws him down to the bottom. A rending shriek is then heard. After a short pause, you hear again endless cries. Inside, you can raise your hand without seeing the fingers. I should say that the punishments inflicted upon the sinners in this prison are extremely severe and painful.

YT: I'm told that the human beings have great fear of the Eternal Prison. Why is it so, Excellency?

The Mandarin: Most of the sinners in the Eternal Prison are condemned forever. Their condemnation is equivalent to a life sentence on earth.

YT: Can you allow some of the sinful souls to come, so I can ask them questions?

The Mandarin: Since your mission consists of writing a book, with a special order from the King of Hell, I can grant the sinners some provisional liberty. For other cases, the detainees of the Eternal Prison are forbidden to come out, even for a minute. Mr. Yang Ts'ien, look at the way I'll perform a miracle! A strong stream of light is pouring down into the cavern, and the whole mechanism of torment ceases to operate. General, can you get some of the sinful souls out?

The General: At your orders. I've just brought out these souls.

YT: Their bodies are completely decomposed. Their flesh is mashed like paste with impregnated blood. Their eyeballs are out of their eye sockets. And their human forms are unrecognizable. How pitiful it is!

TK: With the power of dharma, I will restore them to a normal state and soothe their pains, so they can relate their crimes.

YT: Your gracious dharma is really splendid, Master. The sinners' bodies which were completely disintegrated are now seven tenths reconstituted, whereas the other three tenths still look demonical.

The Mandarin: (to the souls) You are here in the presence of two Great Masters of Virtue. I order you to tell

them the crimes you committed in your lifetime so they can apprise the living men.

The soul: When in life, I committed the gravest sin which was impiety towards my parents. I preferred to foul around and refused to work. I asked my parents for money, and if they refused, I would blaspheme them. In the moment of madness, I even mistreated them with kicks and blows. This lack of filial piety led me to experience the chastisements of nearly all places before I was sent to this prison to endure the eternal punishment, without hope of freedom. O Masters! Have mercy on me! Please intervene with the King of Hell to obtain some grace for me. I would be very happy to reincarnate in the form of a buffalo or a dog to pay off my debts. I am so miserable in this prison.

TK: Among the virtues of mankind, filial piety is considered the most important. You didn't serve your parents as you should; worse still, you mistreated and beat them. Your crime is colossal and unparalleled. Impiety is a sin that is unforgivable. I confess my incompetence in doing anything for you.

The Mandarin: In the living world, too many people are betraying their parents because of either their self serving interests in sinful lust or their individual interests in monetary gain. If such people don't try to change in time, the Eternal Prison will be the place for their souls beyond life. Now, the second soul, we want to hear from you.

The soul: I spent all my lifetime in lewdness and in adoration of feminine beauty. Many times, I raped respectable girls. I was fond of widows and adopted orphan girls for vile schemes. I had thought that was the infallible

ideal of a happy life. But after my death, I had to endure the most terrible pains in different places, and was at last sent to this prison where all hope of freedom is reduced to ashes. Save me, Master, I promise to serve you after I am changed to a dog or a horse.

TK: In this case, dogs and horses aren't of any concern. I don't need them. You were too evil in your life and you don't follow the right path. Carnal sins are considered the gravest sins. Your present remorse makes no sense at all.

The Mandarin: The 3rd soul's turn now. Speak out!

The soul: I was well-versed in preparing imitation kinds of foodstuffs, medicines, alcoholic beverages, such as brandy, alcohol, soy sauce, etc., for amassing as much money as possible. Being so greedy for foul gains, I was condemned to the Eternal Prison. I pray you, O Buddha Tse Kong to help me. In my next life, I promise to behave correctly and earn money with good conscience.

TK: To prepare fake alcoholic beverages and medicines is a heavy crime. You didn't care about other people's lives. By consuming your imitation products, they swallowed poison. You had lost your conscience, and indirectly killed many persons. At present, you are forced to drink that muddy liquid that will dilute the toxic ingredients of those products that you had prepared. I admit that I am unable to do anything for you.

The Mandarin: Now is the turn of the 4th soul to confess.

The soul: In my life, I was a smuggler and used to smoke opium and drugs. Later on, for the need of money, I indulged in the smuggling of narcotics. The King of Hell



was irate when seeing me. He condemned me to the Eternal Prison. Such painful grief I must endure. I am so remorseful for not having any way to redeem my errors.

TK: Smuggling is against the laws of the country. Clandestine traffic of narcotics is twice as bad, because it did harm to other people's lives. The law of the terrestrial world is without pardon, the law of hell is without rescue. Those smugglers, drug users, and narcotic merchants must realize their sins, and throw away their butcher's cutlass, then make a new life. If they persist on their way of living, they will go to the Eternal Prison and stay there for millinea without possibility of freedom.

The Mandarin: Here we are face to face with four sinful souls. I hope that after the perusal of the "Voyages To Hell", people will quickly change and repent. I will forgive them if they discontinue committing those errors. But they must regenerate themselves toward the right path, otherwise they will fall into a dead end. These short-lived profits will certainly lead them to an abyss.

TK: It's getting late. What about going home?

YT: Goodbye, and once again thank you.

The Mandarin: In lines for the farewell salute.

TK: The lotus dais is here.

YT: I am ready to go back, Master.

TK: Arrived! Now, go back to you body, son.

Chapter 55

Visit to the 10th Palace—Interview with The King of the Reincarnation Palace

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on May 9th, 1978. Year of the Horse.**

*The King of Hell is just and stern
Contemptuous souls are stupefied with fear
Their belongings are given to their children
Lonely, they now cry and rail in despair.*

Buddha Tse Kong: Up to now, we have visited nine palaces of hell, and we're going to visit the 10th one. The book "Voyages To Hell" is coming to its conclusion. The 10th Palace is the site of the Reincarnation Wheel, where the souls will be sent to an unknown place, as fuzzy and indefinite as doom. They are all in a semi-conscious state and are unable to discern the east from the west, the north from the south. That is why man on earth is so inquisitive about his previous life. And the spiritual adept must look for his origin. If the people have a ready answer to this question and know about their origin, then there will be no need for spiritual regeneration leading to enlightenment. Get ready, son. The lotus dais is now waiting for us.

Yang Ts'ien: Just a moment, Master. Some of my acquaintances want to print the book "Voyages To Hell" and give them free to people. Before the distribution is made, they have to address prayers to the genii of the kitchen. But



instead of the antique brickbat-trivet which used to be the residence of the genii, the households of today are cooking their meals on stoves and cooking-ranges. Then, what should they do?

TK: Men's dwellings have changed from tiny thatched cottages to large buildings of concrete and stone, but it's not because of this reason that the genii of the kitchen don't exist. This is only the matter of upgrading one's kitchen. In ancient times, the kitchens were dirty, with plenty of soot, smoke and ashes, and the genii of the kitchen did not even refuse to reside in the households. Food has always been prepared in the kitchen, and it is indispensable for the maintenance of man's life. As goes a dictum, "Wherever smoke exists, men exist".

Our forefathers used to estimate the population density of a region with the words "smoke and inhabitants". The function of the genii of the kitchen is to watch over man's life and man's food provision which is granted by God. The brickbat-trivet of yore and the cooking range of today are analogous because they all must use fire as the means to cook. For this reason, the genii of the kitchen have also been named as the "the Lords of the Vital Essence and of the Virtuous Fire". In the olden days, man used petrol to light the lamp but nowadays, we use the switch to turn the light on and off. Even though the material means has been upgraded, the presence of the genii and the Immortals don't cease to manifest in the sacred places such as in the churches or the pagodas. Sciences may progress indefinitely, and modern architecture may construct multi-storied skyscrapers, but man's intuitive cognition remains unchanged. Saints and

genii are always by our side, and the genii of the kitchen are always there, in front of us.

YT: Your explanation is quite clear. The households' style may change completely but rice, bread, salt, oil and vinegar are as necessary now as they were several centuries ago. I am now on the dais, Master.

TK: Here we are. Come down.

YT: The 10th Palace is ahead. That noisy group seems waiting for us.

TK: The King of the Reincarnation Wheel and his staff are coming toward us. Let's pay them our respects.

YT: My humble reverences to you and your staff. I am Yang Ts'ien from the Temple of the Sages. With the order of God, we come here to pay you a visit and to collect information.

The King: You have visited most of the main palaces, from the first to the tenth, and gone through dark roads to fulfill the mission of rescuing mankind. It's a tremendous credit on your part. Please come inside to rest for a moment.

TK: Because the time is limited, we cannot rest for the moment. Will you take Yang Ts'ien to inspect the 10th palace instead?

The King: Of course, it's my pleasure, Buddha Tse Kong.

YT: May I ask you why the sinful souls are more crowded in this place than in other Palaces?

The King: It's because ours is the terminus of all palaces. As my name indicates, I am the King of the Reincarnation Palace who takes care of the transmigration of the souls to outer space. All the reincarnated souls must first



gather here. Therefore, I'm very busy and my task is pretty complicated. Please come to visit the "Observatory of Life on earth".

YT: Thank you. This observatory with transmigrated stairs rising high to touch the clouds, is extending to a great height.

TK: I'll give you a hand.

YT: Thank you very much, gracious Master.

TK: If you climb the celestial stair without counting on the might of your spiritual heart, you will not succeed, sonny. A regenerated man who wavers to progress doesn't go far.

YT: Here we are at the top of the observatory. Every sight here reminds me of an observatory on the terrestrial world. Ahead, I hear nothing but confused sounds. The space around is immense; the horizon is without end. Where are we now?

TK: In order to reach this station of the observatory you have to climb 360 steps. This figure corresponds to 360 degrees of a celestial circle. We are here on a celestial station, which is very distant from hell. Out there in the large openness are the four main continents. Since your clairvoyance is not yet opened, the extent of your sight is limited. Let's me cast this illuminating pearl to help you see farther.

YT: O, miracle of miracles! Your pearl illuminates every place, as a beacon does on a foggy night. Naturally, I can see the remotest areas now. It's just like a view of the earth surface seen from a space vehicle in the air. The spectacle of the four points differs, one from the other. Isn't that America

I see over there? The population is dense, people are seen going back and forth, and there are many high buildings. Its architectural style is identical with the one I saw in the movies.

TK: That's America. From this high celestial station, we can see all of the continents. The reincarnated souls are dispersed by the Reincarnation Wheel to every corner of the world. Their destinations are in accordance with man's affinities. Let's go down now.

YT: Certainly, Master.

TK: It's getting late. We hope to come back next time. Goodbye to you, Your Majesty.

The King: Indeed, we won't retain you. Generals, line up to greet the guests.

TK: The lotus dais, Yang Ts'ien.

YT: I am ready, Master.

TK: Here is the temple. Back to your body, son.



Chapter 56

Visit to the Reincarnation Center

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on May 19th 1978. Year of the Horse.**

*Misery fills the six paths of transmigration
Why not turn to goodness at an early age?
Always respect good and bad, and remain kind
Only by repentance, can man become wise.*

Buddha Tse Kong: The six ways of transmigration¹³ are like the rotating wheel that never stops. Those caught in the wheel without a way to escape will become a “demon of the wheel” for life. I hope that within death, man will discover life. Therefore, when being rotated by the Reincarnation Wheel, the soul must know how to survive, and not be like a blind man who walks into the tiger’s jaws. The best solution is to avoid hell, or have sufficient time to repent for previous errors. In this manner, he will have a chance to proceed further, to the exploration journey into the future. Let’s prepare to visit hell, son.

Yang Ts’ien: I am ready, Master.

13 Translator’s note: The six ways of transmigration are: The world of deities or devas, the world of human beings, the world of combatant devils or asuras, the world of hungry devils, the world of hell, and the world of brutes.

TK: Tonight, we're going to the 10th Palace to visit again the King of the Reincarnation Wheel.

YT: The King is waiting for us.

The King: It's an honor to have you as my guests. On your last visit, since your time was limited, I couldn't provide more details. Today, I will guide you to inspect the places.

YT: I am grateful for your precious instructions.

The King: This Gate of Reincarnation is operated with absolute impartiality. The destination of each soul is based on his karmic affinities. The decision that he will be sent east or west, south or north depends on his former existence. Let's visit the Reincarnation Center.

TK: Tao and destiny are two antipodes. Those who earnestly pursue the Tao, and attain enlightenment are exempted from passing by the Reincarnation Center. On the contrary, those who run counter to morality and to the teachings of the Tao are subjected to the judgement of this service.

The King: Please move quickly, because this Reincarnation Center has various functions. It is divided into eight offices. There are officers in charge of verdict files for each individual soul. Please step inside and you will be informed further.

YT: This building is the Reincarnation Center. The prisoners, being escorted by the infernal guards, are coming in large numbers. Their files are being submitted to the judges. What could be the latter's decisions?

The King: Just come in. I shall explain to you.

YT: Upon seeing us, the high officials interrupt their work to welcome us.

TK: Please take a seat. And don't be intimidated, Yang Ts'ien.

The King: May I introduce the Service-Chief to you?

The Service-Chief: Welcome to Buddha Tse Kong and to Mr. Yang Ts'ien. We are aware of the effort you have expended for preparing your book. You have already gained many credits.

The King: Please, have some tea. I'm going to explain to you the work of the eight bureaus in this center. This will enable humans to comprehend the process of reincarnation that governs their destinies. First of all, the souls are guided to the Portico of Demons either by the Tutelary Genius, the Gracious Genius, or by the infernal guards. From here, they are led to the registry-office for establishing their curriculum vitae. When a person comes down to hell, regardless of his being only a visitor or a prisoner subjected to punishment, he has to successively pass from the 1st to the 9th Gate. The souls who have completely atoned for their sins are transferred to this 10th Gate so we can work for their transmigration. The most important office of our place is the reincarnation center composed of eight bureaus:

1. The bureau of judicial control,
2. The bureau of good actions,
3. The bureau of bad actions,
4. The bureau of debts, gratitude and vengeance,
5. The bureau of longevity and destiny,
6. The bureau governing familial ties,
7. The bureau governing to-be-reincarnated existences,
8. The bureau governing births (by reincarnation).

1. Bureau of Judicial Control: This office is in charge of controlling the sinful souls after they are judged and punished by the other places. This is a necessary formality for the guilty soul to be freed and acquitted. Before he is allowed to transmigrate, the soul is forced to make his declaration at the judicial control office which delivers him a certificate of discharge. If a defect of any kind is discovered, the soul is ordered to return to his respective prison. This procedure is required in order to avoid inconsiderate and erroneous performance of the responsible personnel.

2. Bureau of Good Actions: This bureau establishes the list of meritorious souls and examines the good actions they have done before granting them rewards corresponding to their merits. The souls having a virtuous past are promoted to reincarnate in the form of children of wealthy families, and will become mandarins, illustrious lettered men with honors and celebrity, or children of rich businessmen with sumptuous residences and abundant riches. They may also be reincarnated into those men who start empty-handed from zero in their life, then succeed with the sweat of their brows to secure some property and a home in their old age; men who inherit the merits of their ancestors, enjoying a life full of affluence and honor. As for the female souls, they will be married to men of high society, will have an excellent heir, and will be surrounded by pious children who insure them tranquility and good welfare in their old age. All the above-cited cases concern the souls who acquired great merit by doing good actions in their lifetime, and it is now the moment for them to be rewarded. All this work is relevant

to the Bureau of Good Actions which doesn't permit itself to omit the least detail.

3. Bureau of Bad Actions: The work of this bureau consists of considering whether the to-be-reincarnated souls have or have not committed some crimes in their earlier life. If they have had performed only a few good actions but committed a few negligible sins, they will be reincarnated in a materially adequate existence, living under the protection of their parents, and later enjoying an harmonious matrimonial life and a wise, pious progeny. For the men whose bad actions balance good ones, they will become people of mediocre condition, will have a long life, sufficient eating and clothing, and a united family. However they will have to work hard in their lives and enjoy little leisure in their old age. Now, comes the category of souls whose merits are none but whose crimes are many. They will be reincarnated in an existence full of misery, and suffering hunger and cold. They will be separated from their parents, or their siblings, and spouses. Heavy sinners are to be reincarnated in extreme misery, infirmity or without complete limbs. They will be born with lame legs, mutilated arms, deformed heads, or will suffer from deafness, blindness, muteness and will live as beggars. The youngsters who neglect the five cardinal virtues, the women who fail their three subjections (to their parents, their husbands, their parents-in-law) and do not keep the feminine virtues (occupation, bearing, speech, character), all those who commit heavy sins will be reincarnated in the forms of animals, insects or worms. This is the causal law of evil adopted by the Bureau of Bad Actions: Evil deeds will lead to bad consequences.

4. Bureau of Debts, Gratitude and Vengeance:

This bureau decides on the sex to be attributed to the reincarnated soul so he or she can proceed to a settlement of accounts with his or her previously connected partner. A person who receives a favor from a dear friend this time, will have to pay it back in the next life if the karmic accounts are not yet cleared. A person who provokes other persons with insults, offences and scorn, or creates violent disputes, will have to settle the accounts with his victims in the following existence, if hatred is not yet dissipated after death. From this fact, the following adage is justified, “Good deeds appeal to good actions, vengeance engenders revenge, injustice gives birth to unfairness”. There exists a category of women who are very passionate in their life but are betrayed by their lovers. They become mortified and ready for revenge. Because of sorrows and anger, they prefer to become ferocious demons to take revenge against their treacherous partners after their death. The angry souls will haunt their partners and may lead the latter to an accident or to get involved in a tragic death. In these cases, our bureau will allow them to settle these types of accounts to calm their anger.

5. Bureau of Longevity and Destiny: This bureau deals with the longevity and destiny of the people. There are many categories of people: Some people have both talent and reputation; some others are wealthy and live a long life. Others again are rich but their life is short, then people who are poor and have short life or vice versa. There are people who die in tragedy, in sufferings or in sadness, and infants who die a few days or month after they see the daylight. All these are various cases. On earth, we often see the guilty

being executed or people being murdered by others. All such apparently casual things are determined by destiny. But we shouldn't fail to mention the cases of people who commit suicide due to failure in life, or those who kill themselves out of carelessness in their work. Their deaths are not predestined but it's caused by their own imprudence.

6. Bureau Governing Familial Ties: This bureau is concerned with the bonds that tie the members of a family together. Whether people give birth to a pious son or an ungrateful one, marry a loyal, mild wife or a wicked, unfaithful spouse, it is not at all a coincidence, but rather the effect of a former debt. Their encounter is predestined. Consider this example: One A by name lends money to a certain B who is unable to pay the loan before he dies. Surely, he is not guilty as far as human law is concerned. But the infernal law demands that B must reincarnate as A's very pious son to pay A his due. Thence, this dictum justified the fact, "The children acquit their debts toward their parents". Take another example: Through crafty subterfuge, C appropriated the possessions of D. He misused his power to seize the portion of fortune which should legally go to D. The latter's despair was so deep that he died. He sued C before the infernal court which ordained that D must reincarnate as C's wasteful, vain, sexually overactive child who would squander away his father's properties. This case is called "The child claims his due from his parents". This is also true with nuptial ties. Some people are married to hardworking, mild, faithful matrons who become loving, and devoted mothers. Others have pernicious, unfaithful, saucy, lustful wives. The good or bad fate reserved for each person is determined by

the actions committed in his former life. This fatality suffers no errors, and such is the work of the Bureau Governing the Familial Ties.

7. Bureau Governing To-Be-Reincarnated Existences: This bureau keeps records of the number of times and on the conditions that cause the souls to have to be reincarnated. For instance, how many successive existences will this virtuous man live in opulence and honors; how many lives of misery will that cruel person have to bear; and that one whose sins are extremely severe, will be reincarnated in a beast for how many lives? Can he return to human life or will he remain eternally an insect or a worm? There is a proper norm for each category and it is very apparent that predestination is unrelenting and inevitable. However, a man's life is liable to variations if he runs counter to his destiny. For a man predestined to live in opulence who creates malefic karmas, another man damned to tribulations who knows to regenerate and accumulate merits: Good and evil will counterbalance and the poor man's misery will be curtailed whereas the rich man's wealth will dissipate while he will be waiting for a future life in wretchedness. From this fact is inspired this proverb, "Man is always compensated for his efforts whereas the sluggard wastes his time". It is also worth stating that, by order of the Celestial Emperor, three observatory posts, commanded by the genius-king of the "Great Bear" are constantly keeping an eye on the humans and report their deeds to the King of Hell who will alter their fates either favorably or unfavorably. That is the work of Bureau Governing To-Be-Reincarnated Existences.

8. Bureau Governing Births (by reincarnation)

that takes charge of the process of soul transmigration. This bureau provides necessary testimonials for reincarnation to be based on. Every soul having made amends for his crime will have his file transmitted to this bureau for complementary formalities.

Once all procedures are completed properly, he is accepted to pass to transmigration. A certificate is delivered to him, and the Mandarin in charge begins to process his reincarnation. Each one will be given the tools corresponding to his trade. The lettered man receives his pen and inkstand, the merchant his calculator, the husbandman his farming implements, the animals and birds their furs and feathers. Thus, they all have their proper trades as their fates want them to, but since their karmas are not alike, they received different certificates before they can reincarnate. And that's the work of the Bureau Governing Births.

The eight bureau offices issue the certificates to the souls for reincarnation. Once they are admitted to transmigration, they are considered as having changed their fates. Well, gentlemen, I think it's quite late. We can discuss this matter in more detail next time.

TK: Speed up, Yang Ts'ien. Please accept my deepest expression of gratitude, Your Majesty.

YT: We have taken much of your time, . With your permission, we ask to take leave.

TK: Arrival! Go rejoin your body.

Chapter 57

Visit to the 10th Palace and the Lady Meng's Inn

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on May 26th, 1978. Year of the Horse.**

*Visits to the dark ten regional palaces are ending,
Money to print and distribute the book is given,
How precious and lively is this masterpiece
To teach mankind about wisdom and soul liberation.*

Buddha Tse Kong: For the past two years, we have visited the gates of hell, and the disciples of the temple have made a great contribution to the writing of the book. They have adopted a standing position all the time, and passersby are astonished, wondering whether the disciples are undergoing some punishment. Their astonishment is improper as they don't understand the correct meaning of the standing position which is by no means extraordinary. Such is the fundamental position for those who know how to behave in life. The regenerated man should be able to stand upright a long, long time without bending or stooping. He keeps his faith unshakable to attain enlightenment. Idleness and laziness bring nothing. Some people are happy to do nothing but lie on a bed and enjoy leisure time. They are lazy and reluctant to straighten their backs. How could they become courageous and heroic men, braving dangers and inclement weather? Am I right, Yang Ts'ien?



YT: You certainly are. If a man is incapable of standing firm on his feet, his platform is unstable and he can't expect to be successfully regenerated.

TK: The one who can't stand firm, who lacks a strong platform, wouldn't feel comfortable even in a sitting position. The regenerated man should first concentrate on mastering character and subduing his spirit which is subject to being disturbed. If he can't adopt a firm position, he will be at the mercy of circumstance. Yang Ts'ien, to the 10th Gate.

YT: I am ready, Master.

TK: Let's get down from the lotus dais, son.

YT: The King is there. My humble salutations, sir.

The King: Welcome back! Last time, you were informed about the functions of different Bureaus in the Reincarnation Center. Tonight, you will learn about the system of the six ways of transmigration.. Since we don't have any spare time, we should go there right away.

YT: We appreciate your kindness, sir. Here we are, back to the Reincarnation Center. What a teeming crowd! There are people of all races, coming from all nations of Asia, Europe and other continents. Are they going to be reincarnated?

The King: The souls must be purged in the prisons of hell after their death. Hell is similar to an international law-court. Those who are free from sins are anxious to obtain their certificate of discharge before they can be reincarnated. It's the same way the travelers on earth yearn for an exit visa.

YT: We are now at the Bureau Governing Births. The crowd is extremely large, just like at a bus station on earth.

The Reincarnation Wheel constantly revolves. The ticket window is too small to accommodate all the soul passengers going to reincarnate to every corner of the world.

The King: Buddha Tse Kong is right. The souls are judged and forced to atone for their sins before they are allowed to reincarnate. The act of transmigration is unique. Souls take the same bus but the destination of each is different, because their fates are different. They get off the bus, bid farewell to each other, then each one goes his way. Man's life is agreeable only in the moments he meets with other companions in the same situation.

YT: There is a crowd over there. I think people are hustling for a glass of iced tea. It's so hot today. My throat is dry. May I have a glass of tea to quench my thirst?

The King: No! That's the Inn of the Lady Meng where the to-be-reincarnated souls will consume a porridge named "amnesiac porridge". It has the faculty of erasing from the souls' memory all that is related to their former life and to the time spent in hell. It is the porridge of oblivion. If you just eat a little of it, you will return to the living world with a deplorable amnesia, which will blot out your total memory.

YT: That porridge is so terrific!

TK: In fact, the inn on the roadside bears an inscription saying "Inn of the Lady Meng". Can you be more explicit, sir?

The King: Of course, I can. This inn is managed by the Lady Meng. By order of the Celestial Emperor, she is in charge of having souls consume this porridge before their reincarnation. Otherwise, the children born in their new existence will grow up and remember all the facts concerning

their former lives. They will search for and find their parents and the members of their families, creating a great disorder in social relations and family ties. More than that, they will locate their foes and take revenge. This porridge is a mixture of various flavors (acid, pungent, salted, sweet, bitter) combined in such a way that those consuming it lose all sense of orientation, experience, and fall into one of the six ways of transmigration.

TK: This amnesiac porridge is also a bewitching one. Once the soul consumes it, he feels his spirit completely changed. In the world, there exists also a beverage which has the same effect.

YT: I have never heard of such a beverage, Master.

TK: Why, it's alcohol, son. Just look at the man who gets drunk. He loses his bearings, goes astray, and fails to find his way home. He is just like these semi-conscious souls who fear to be reincarnated into a new existence of sorrow. The drunkard is without fear. He dares challenge the perils by crossing an ocean, or he can, with full audacity, toss himself under the wheel of a moving carriage, or jump into water or fire. Being thus drowned in his drunkenness, he drops unaware in the wheel of reincarnation. When waking up to sobriety, he finds himself at an entirely different place, far away from hell. The reincarnated souls feel awakened in a totally different world.

YT: If the amnesiac porridge is so highly effective, every human would like to take it after his death.

The King: One detail is worthy of notice though. After passing by all gates of hell and enduring punishment of all types, the souls are at the height of hunger and thirst when

they arrive here. Now the 10th Gate of Hell is located at the frontier, adjacent to the earth, the Inn of the Lady Meng is intensely hot and the outdoor heat is overwhelming. Being intolerably thirsty and hungry, the souls do not hesitate to enter the Inn to enjoy something cool, which means that they are lured into a trap. Particularly on dog days, after they walk a thousand leagues under a grilling sun, they naturally feel happy at the sight of an inn that offers a free drink to quench their thirst. It is natural that they argue over the chance to be served first. Some of them even find one glass insufficient, and greedily take several. But we should admit that some other souls, as sly as a fox, who know the amnesiac properties of the porridge, seek deliberately to avoid it and move aside. But then, from under the ground an iron hook is shot up which fastens their bodies and retains them firmly. The waitresses of the Lady Meng will forcibly make them drink the porridge. There is a saying: "Refuse to drink the offered wine, then drink the imposed one".

YT: With the given amnesiac effect of the porridge, why is it that our babies born now are so prematurely clever? Should we attribute the fact to the mediocrity of the porridge whose properties become weaker?

The King: The fact is self-explanatory: From time immemorial, the humans have undergone innumerable incarnations. Their transmigrations have been repeated many times; each of them is preceded by a forcible taking of amnesiac porridge. Because they have taken it several times, the souls become immune to its effect, and the expected amnesia is far from absolute. Thus, the intelligence of some present day babies is quite advanced. Man often calls his

stubborn children “demons’ head or demons’ brains”. The repeated use of this undesirable porridge results in acquiring some immunity. This fact, by itself, provides no joy to mankind. It’s just like the case of those devotees to Bacchus who, because of a long time habit, don’t feel groggy in spite of strong doses of alcohol. They have lost their normal senses. Prematurely smart babies are more likely to adopt vices, and unless they are carefully educated and guided to the right path, they will do more harm to society than normally clever babies do. This is the reason the living world counts an ever-increasing number of harmful and unreliable people who use their brains for doing evil. The more clever they are, the more easily they deviate from the right path. An unusual intelligence, therefore, is most undesirable.

YT: I have no interest in that kind of intellect.

TK: Time is pressing. We have to go home. Next time, we shall know about the six categories of to-be-reincarnated souls

YT: I thank you greatly for having shown me the truth. May I take leave?

The King: I can’t retain you. Goodbye.

TK: Embark, Yang Ts’ien.

YT: I am ready.

TK: Destination! Your body, see?

Chapter 58

Visit to the 10th Palace – Observation of the Six Categories of Reincarnated Souls

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on June 3rd, 1978. Year of the Horse.**

*Losing your human body causes much pain
Do regenerate and care for yourself,
Or furs and horns will close your soul in,
Under inclement weather, the feeble creature trembles.*

Buddha Tse Kong: If humans fail to regenerate and allow themselves to commit cruel acts, they will be reincarnated into the forms of animals or fowls and will suffer for thousands and thousands of existences. Let them organize themselves decently, observe the rules of morality, and live an upright, virtuous life. Wicked, dishonest men will be reincarnated into the forms of animals with fur and horns, worse still, they can be transformed into insects and worms living miserably in the mud and stagnant water, exposed to the caprices of inclement weather. Yang Ts'ien, en route to hell.

Yang Ts'ien: Yes, Master.

TK: Look, son! A prater talks too much, and he ventures to commit errors. The best thing would be to talk as little as possible. Prattle isn't as good as money.

YT: I certainly agree, Master. I am ready for departure.

TK: Here we come. We're going to visit the 10th



Palace again, and I want you to see with your own eyes what the six categories of to-be-reincarnated souls are like. Here comes the King of the Palace.

YT: We present to you our greetings, sir.

The King: Welcome to you, gentlemen. Last time, you visited the Inn of the Lady Meng. This time you are going to witness the process of transmigration. Follow me, please.

YT: You are taking your own time to guide and give us explanations again. We are deeply grateful, sir.

The King: The pleasure is mine. If living men don't renounce evil for good, it will be deplorable for them to pass by the wheel of reincarnation and live a new existence on earth.

YT: What is that river with a red color and whirling waves?

The King: Its name is Crimson River. Its current is derived from the semen and blood of human beings in their sexual intercourse. Its red waves represent the ardent fire of carnal cravings among humans.

YT: On the opposite bank, I see something resembling a big wheel turning constantly.

The King: That's the Reincarnation Wheel, alias the Wheel on the Crimson River. It rotates incessantly between wind and water.

YT: And that bridge next to the wheel, what is it used for?

The King: Ours is the place where reincarnation into new existences on earth are effected. The boundary of hell is terminated right here. This bridge is the junction point of the

roads leading to different directions. Beyond it, there are six other bridges of gold, silver, jade, stone, wood and bamboo:

1. The Gold Bridge is passed over by humans who have accomplished great merits in their life on earth. After an observation tour of the Palaces of Hell, they will be authorized to take this bridge to go to paradise. Also, there are true spiritual adepts whose merits are fully achieved who will go directly to paradise after death, as soon as they come to the frontier between the worlds of the living and the dead, and do not need to go through this bridge.

2. The Silver Bridge is reserved for people having tolerable merits. After their death, they are sent to the center of perfection in hell for furthering their religious studies and perfecting their regeneration. Once they have passed their examination and learned the canonical books thoroughly, they are authorized to come to the Styx(Cascade of Nine Streams) for purification of their vital energy. Then, they will pass over this bridge to go to the world to assume the function of geniuses. They will be venerated by thousands of people in their temples where joss-sticks are constantly lighted.

3. The Jade Bridge is used by humans who performed considerable actions of charity. After being investigated by the Palaces of Hell, they are authorized to reincarnate into children of honorable and wealthy families.

4. The Stone Bridge: The people with an equal number of merits and sins are to be reincarnated into ordinary people. This bridge is for them.

5. The Wooden Bridge: People who in their life committed more sins and earned less merits will be



reincarnated into a lower class of society, enduring hunger, poverty, and loneliness in their lifetime. Those people will pass over this bridge to the Reincarnation Wheel.

6. The Bamboo Bridge: People who in their life committed grave sins of immorality, robbery, theft, slaughter, lewdness, and cruelty will pass over this bridge of bamboo, and will be reincarnated into the forms of beasts such as the viviparous (animals), oviparous (fowls, birds), aquatic creatures (fishes, crustaceans), or insects.

YT: Thank you, sir. Your explanation is quite clear. I notice that there are only a few travelers passing by the Gold and Silver Bridges. On the other bridges, however, the passersby are so numerous, they jostle each other to make their way as if they fear missing their crossing.

TK: As a dictum has it, “I take the Wooden Bridge which is reserved for me. The others take their respective paths toward the living world”. Each one takes his proper path to reincarnation. They have eaten the amnesiac porridge that erases their former life from their minds. The absorption of this porridge puts them in a state of semi-consciousness, and they jostle each other on the paths allotted to them. Some souls wear costumes of mandarins, others carry the tools and implements of their work, others have their inkstands and brush-pens. There are also simpletons and souls wearing animals’ furs and horns. Everyone manifests an ardent yearning to go to the terrestrial world.

The King: They have lost their good sense, just like those men going blindly, with weapons in hand, to the war without knowing whether they will be killed or not. The spectacle of the world is identical with the pitfall that man

is running into. The reincarnating phenomenon is just the same.

YT: While in their state of semi-consciousness, they rush blindly toward the Bridges of Jade, Wood, and Bamboo to approach the Reincarnation Wheel. I even see some of them fall off the bridge and disappear in the waves. I wonder what will become of them?

The King: Humans should listen carefully to what I am going to explain to them: All creatures are created by fertilization of the vital breath energy from Yin and Yang. The Reincarnation Wheel is the pattern of a mixture of the Yin and Yang among humans. When a male and a female are in the state of sexual excitement, their spirits rise in ecstasy, their overbrimming sperm and blood are similar to the waves of the Crimson River that push and revolve the Reincarnation Wheel, like a river current turns the irrigation system with its force. The semi-conscious souls are sucked in by the wheel, following their assigned destinies. In the world, the semen and blood of the two sexes in intercourse form a fetus in the womb of the mother: The vital essence impregnates the embryo until it is born to life, nine months later. At the moment the Reincarnation Wheel heaves it into existence, a wailing is heard from within the wheel of the Crimson River, meanwhile the infant is born, together with spilling blood and water, and its synchronizing cries symbolize its fright when awakening in a totally strange world. That's the way reincarnation operates.

As regards to the four categories of creatures, namely the viviparous, the oviparous, the aquatic creatures and insects, their birth takes place according to the time that

their embryos are nurtured in the Reincarnation Wheel. The incessant rotation of the wheel often gives the pregnant woman a sensation of nausea. These are the moments when the fetus feels dizzy, like passengers feeling uneasy in a jerky carriage in movement or aboard a plane in flight.

YT: I see clearly now, sir. Without your explanation, I think that humans can never be aware of these realities. Human sciences are knowledgeable on the process of pregnancy, and humans can write detailed books on conception, but they ignore completely the process of reincarnation. I am very fortunate to be able to understand this matter, and my revelations will make the most skeptical readers reconsider their doubts.

The King: Indeed, Yang Ts'ien. You believe it, because you see it. For the rest of humans, they begin to know things only when it is too late for them to explain the facts publicly. Now, this wheel has the form of the octagonal diagram Pa-Kua, with a circle at the center representing the Great Extreme or the Infinite(Wu-Ki). The Infinite gives birth to the Great Extreme which in turn puts into motion the two polar principles Yin and Yang which fertilize heaven and earth and engender all living creatures and things. The same principle and law governs the Reincarnation Wheel which turns and multiplies indefinitely.

Inside the wheel, there are six holes for the reincarnated souls. The first hole is for the souls to be reincarnated into high ranking dignitaries, noblemen, and titled persons. The second hole is for future intellectual men, husbandmen, industrialists, and merchants ((including poor people, orphans, widows and widowers). The third hole is for

the souls to be transformed into animals (buffalos, horses, dogs...). The fourth hole will make fowls of the souls. The fifth hole is for fish, molluscs and crustaceans. The sixth hole is for insects. It is thus depending upon their merits and sins for the souls to be categorized among the six above cited groups.

TK: That action is comparable to factories in the world. Manufactured products differ as consistently as raw materials which are employed to produce them. As a matter of fact, good timber is utilized for solid construction, whereas wood of average quality is used for fuel. The same thing happens in the process of reincarnation. Honest men are bound to come from a good hole of the reincarnation wheel. By the way, the consumer goods of key necessities produced by humans should be made better from day to day, if their producers don't want to be reincarnated with a negative karma.

YT: These are the six categories of to-be-reincarnated souls, as far as I can see. Now, what about the six ways of transmigration, sir?

TK: They are the ways to the worlds of deities, human beings, combatant devils (asuras), hungry devils, hell and brute. Classification of these ways is based on the categories of creatures and their degree of evolution. The way to the world of deities or of paradise, is the one for Gods, Buddhas, Saints and Genii. After they practice spiritual perfection and attain enlightenment, the regenerated men will rise directly to paradise without having to consume the amnesiac porridge and to pass to the reincarnation wheel. Humans should be aware of this fact if they desire to avoid a

new reincarnation onto the earth. Among the highly evolved immortals, there are compassionate personalities who endeavor to bring salvation to mankind. They voluntarily incarnate into the living world to teach and guide humans. They are pontiffs, masters, initiators of religions who really are gods or buddhas wearing the form of human beings. Whence this saying, “Highly evolved beings never forsake mankind”. From ancient times to the present, a great number of Gods and Buddhas have come down to earth to teach and show the path of salvation to human beings. They renounce the kingdom of immortals, where neither birth nor death exist, for the terrestrial world or even for hell. They are said to be “returnees” rather than “reincarnated” into the world. In reality, there exist 3000 worlds but only six ways of transmigration which lead the reincarnated souls to all of them. More accurately, we should say there are thousands of ways of transmigration. The spiritual essences of the souls in all worlds commune together, as being of the same source. They are scattered to thousands of directions, and then from these, will converge to the same source. Humans must retain this truth. Yang Ts'ien, what you have seen this day is the picture of the six main ways of transmigration.

The King: All in all, the process of reincarnation operated by the 10th Palace is readily explained in the “Voyages To Hell”. I hope that humans will read, understand and practice for self-improvement. Reincarnation to new existences is decided by hell, but it is up to human beings to cope with the predestined paths. If they don't try to improve themselves and progress on the virtuous path, they will lose their physical bodies some day, and thousands of existences

will be required before recovering their original state. Now, I say goodbye to Buddha Tse Kong and Mr. Yang Ts'ien, and wish you good luck in completing your book for the sake of mankind.

Yang Ts'ien: We are really touched by your sayings, sir, and thank you greatly for your teachings. The blessed readers of the book will be enlightened and awakened from ignorance and errors. Goodbye, Your Majesty. Master, we must go home!

TK: We have so far visited the 10 palaces of hell. The burden of our mission has been lightened by half. You have had much pain, Yang Ts'ien. On August 15th of this autumn, your book will be published. The satisfaction of the Three Councils will be indescribable. I advise all people on earth to have this book printed and widely distributed in order to spread the truth and enhance the genuine Tao. Such is my vocation. Following the sinister visits to the Palaces of Hell, here appears the resplendent halo. I hope that humans will understand the realities revealed in the book. They will eliminate their narrow minds and open their hearts mercifully to extend joy all over the world. The way to paradise will open itself for them. Here is the temple. Alight and enter your body!

Chapter 59

Visit to the Popular Quarter of Hell

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on June 9th, 1978. Year of the Horse.**

*There's competition in earth's multitude of trade
The Popular Quarter of Hell also does it late
Don't ignore your body, the possible sower of fate
In hell, souls are heavy, spurned and alienated.*

Buddha Tse Kong: In the world, people carry on hundreds of trade, and they compete among themselves quite ludicrously. In hell, under the sinister starry vault of the sky also prevails much activity created by the souls exercising their trade. Lao Tsu had said: "If we attract misfortunes and woe, it is because we possess a physical body. Once the body exists no more, misfortunes disappear". It is strange to see the souls in hell become so attached to their illusory bodies (false and temporary). Yang Ts'ien, I'm going to have you visit the Popular Quarter of Hell tonight so you can attest to what I've just said.

Yang Ts'ien: Thank you, Master. I am ready.

TK: We arrive. Down.

YT: This citadel has much activity, with groups of souls going back and forth. They look content and free, unescorted by the infernal guards. On the wall of the citadel, I read the inscription "Popular Quarter". I would like to know what is happening inside.

TK: This is the Popular Quarter which is the residential quarters of ordinary souls whose merits and sins are balanced. After their death, these souls come here if they are not forced to reincarnate for settlement of accounts with their enemies or their benefactors. The quarter is named “Popular” because the souls are free to exercise their trade here. A farmer or a merchant can do the job they did on earth to make a living in hell. The only difference is that here in hell, they have to work hard for a mouthful. They can’t enjoy an agreeable existence with little work because they can’t use any mechanized equipment. Let’s enter the citadel for a better view of things.

The Officer on guard: Which region are you from, deities?

TK: I am Buddha Tse Kong. By order of God, I take a terrestrial man to visit your citadel to get information to write a book on hell to educate mankind.

The Officer: I regret that it is impossible for me to disclose the situation of the citadel to strangers.

TK: Here is God’s edict. Please announce me to your superior.

The Officer: I humbly apologize for my impertinence. Let me announce you right away.

The Mandarin Administrator of the Citadel: I present my apology to Buddha Tse Kong and Mr. Yang Ts’ien for the rudeness of my guard officer. Also, forgive my delay in receiving you.

TK: Don’t worry, Excellency. The fault is ours for not having informed you of our visit.

The Administrator: You are invited to come inside.

YT: Thank you for your kindness. Do the functions of an administrator here differ from an administrator's in the terrestrial world?

TK: How inquisitive of you. Yang Ts'ien. He is called administrator just for the sake of distinction, but he is in reality the Mandarin Governor of the Quarter of Ordinary Souls.

YT: All lodgings here are made of wood. There are no storied houses like the living world.

The Administrator: They are the living quarters of the souls. Wooden houses suit them better, because the spirit of wood and that of earth always go together.

YT: One could almost say this is a replica of the terrestrial world. I see inns, shops, groceries, crowds of souls congregating. Why do some of them wear long, long hair, with clothes of ancient style?

The Administrator: O, yes. Some of the souls belonged to very ancient dynasties, and they preserve their traditions and customs which are different from the contemporary souls'. Let me take you to the fields so you can observe the way they till the earth.

TK: The world of the living and that of the dead are two, but men's psychology is always the same. When in life, they didn't travel on the right path; when in death, they don't forget the profession of their life. Thence, this dictum: "One carries along his trade to the grave". The fact is true. In this quarter, the souls like to exercise the trade of their lifetime. None of them renounce their occupation.

YT: I see men working everywhere in the fields. But

what labor! Not a shadow of a buffalo, a mule or a tractor. Just work, pure manual work!

The Administrator: No comparison is possible between hell and the living world which is much better off. Here, the souls rely wholly on their strength and labor to make a living.

YT: Can you describe their way of living in hell?

The Administrator: It somewhat duplicates the one on earth. Three meals a day, a regular schedule for working and resting. Being imbued with their infatuation from the terrestrial world, they keep intact their passions and anxieties. Marriages have been taking place. Their hardworking, painful existences have become a custom.

YT: Will they have to work this hard forever?

The Administrator: No! Everyone has a different length of time to be in this place. When reaching the end, he or she will be granted a period of relaxation while awaiting reincarnation onto the earth.

YT: The living people on earth have the custom of burning gold-colored paper, imitation banknotes and checks..., and give offerings to the soul. Could these souls profit from all that?

The Administrator: I'm going to explain your question this way: The souls of the humans' descendants by no means can profit from the offerings, because they are sinners waiting for punishment in hell. As a dictum has it: "When luck arrives, the earth is changed to gold". In the terrestrial world, this phenomenon may occur and become reality because earth may produce gold according to the law of creation and destruction governing the five elements



(metal, wood, water, fire and earth), but those golden papers, imitation banknotes, once burned, become ashes and return to the soil. Gold is indestructible but ashes become earth that absorbs water to generate energy. The souls receive this energy to nourish their five viscera. In other words, that energy of the five elements which comes indirectly from the paper burned by their descendants, will feed the souls, the way human beings eat food for their maintenance of life.

YT: I have heard that in the dreams, some descendants have seen the souls of their ancestors come back asking for alms. What does that mean?

The Administrator: On earth, people used to offer food to their ancestors during the annual memorial ceremony. The offered food remains intact because the souls only feed themselves on the vital breath energy of the food.

Because of the work they did in hell, also following the punishment they endured, the souls' vital breath energy became exhausted. Sometimes, they must come back to the earth to ask for energy support from their descendants. Members of their families may burn paper money or offer a meal in the form of the offerings, when seeing them come back in the dreams. A simple offering is sufficient to prove one's filial piety towards his ancestors. Terrestrial wealth is meaningless to the dead, therefore there is no need to offer a great quantity which will be a waste if the souls cannot receive it. The offerings or the memorial ceremonies serve to soothe the pains of the dying person, and preserve the morality toward man's predecessors. Isn't the filial piety a form of loving energy too? And the ritual ceremonies are the means to express man's filial piety towards his ancestors.

When the papers are burned, they will be converted to energy that can soothe the dying person. However, it's not necessary to burn a large quantity of papers. Few are sufficient to warm the soul of the dying person. Human beings should not underestimate this fact. Filial piety is essential, and the offerings are the means of extending your love toward the defunct person. Souls can only receive energy provided from the fact of burning paper-money, but they cannot use that money for trade in hell. Here in hell, we use a different kind of money for trade.

TK: These burnt papers are only useful for the ordinary souls. For the souls who have done charitable actions on earth or followed the way of Tao, their vital energy is pure and their halo is bright. So, they don't need profane monetary means. Humans should know about this.

YT: You are perfectly right, Master. Now, other things: Since the imitation banknotes of the world are all different in sizes as well as in quality, I wonder how the souls will make their exchange in hell's bank?

TK: Ha! Ha! Hell's banknotes are printed in great quantities on earth. Therefore, sometimes it becomes a mere business for profits. If the printer doesn't have a clear conscience, he may create also a bad karma for himself. Isn't it true that hell has had to return to earth a lot of things that fail to meet the required norm? (implying reincarnations).

YT: What is the difference between the souls living in the Popular Quarter and the sinful souls being in condemnation?

The Administrator: The souls in the Popular Quarter enjoy freedom. They can obtain a permit to go out of the

quarter, whereas the souls with heavy sins aren't allowed to go out, except for special cases. The souls with slight sins can get a permit to go out of their respective prisons during the month of July.

YT: Now I understand.

TK: I advise humans to engage in regeneration, and learn the Tao so they can acquire knowledge of the truth, and realize that their bodies are all but illusory. They should not hold on to life after death. If they do not mend their ways and lead a path toward spiritual perfection, they will never escape from the cycle of birth and death. They will be entangled in the vicious circle without end. Time is short, let's go home, Yang Ts'ien.

YT: We thank you for your information, Excellency.

TK: See the temple? Your body is over there. Go, sonny.

Chapter 60

Visit to the Center of Perfection, the Service of Remuneration for Good Actions, the Service of Punishment for Bad Actions

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on June 16th, 1978. Year of the Horse.**

*O souls, learn and perfect yourselves again
To regenerate your souls and stained characters
Study well, and delve into art and sacred writings
These serve to teach men to open their minds.*

Buddha Tse Kong: We have made up our minds about tonight's visit to the Center of Perfection and the Services of Remuneration and Punishment. The preparation of the book "Voyages To Hell" will soon be finished. I am delighted to learn that many good natured people are willing to pay for printing the book and distributing the copies free to their friends. Mercifulness is indeed settled in their golden hearts. How relieving for the Immortals and men who have worked for the revelation of the truth, which exhorts human beings to return to Tao, and be honest. The "Voyages To Hell" is a piece of work containing realities analogous to the teachings of every religion. Those whose read it many times will profit as much for their minds as for their hearts. I make an appeal to humans, encouraging them to renounce evil for good, to do good actions and avoid bad ones. With all my heart, I hope they will engage in spiritual regeneration,

and invite the good-hearted people in the world to make the same appeal to their friends. Yang Ts'ien, come to the dais for another trip.

Yang Ts'ien: I am ready, Master.

TK: Here we are. Disembark!

YT: The Center of Perfection is there, before us. It has the appearance of a school. The outside is pretty clean with ornamental plants and beds of flowers. A striking difference from the dismal prisons of hell.

TK: The function of this center is to train our personnel, the genii and saints in their sacred tasks.

YT: The door is open. The dignitaries are standing in line for our welcome.

TK: The Mandarin-Administrator and his personnel are coming. Come quickly to meet them.

YT: My respectful salutations to His Excellency and to the dignitaries.

The Mandarin: We wish you welcome, Buddha Tse Kong and Mr. Yang Ts'ien. For a long time, we have been longing for your visit. Please, come inside for better observation.

TK: Thank you, Excellency. We are here to get information concerning your center.

The Mandarin: With pleasure. Here it is. This Center of Perfection is one for the propagation of virtues. Humans, whose merits are considerable but who have not yet attained the criterion of enlightenment for access to paradise, have to come here to further their spiritual studies, so they can evolve to a higher astral plane or return to the terrestrial world to assume the function of geniuses to salvage mankind.

YT: Lo! That's Mr. Tchoung Kien An, if I am not mistaken. He was a former disciple of our temple.

TK: That's him all right. We have good luck to meet him.

YT: He seems greatly disturbed upon seeing me. Tears are in his eyes.

The Mandarin: Come on, Mr. Tchouang! Don't act unhappy! I have arranged especially for your co-religionists to have this face-to-face encounter. Mr. Yang Ts'ien, you can tell him how things are going on earth since his death.

Tchouang: I am really touched to see you here. Words fail me and I can hardly control my tears. I was a disciple of the Temple of the Sages in my life. I received many favors from our benevolent president, Mr. Kouan, also much sympathy from my brethren who encouraged me to do good actions. I came daily to the office of editor of "The Sages" to reply to the readers' correspondence. I had thought my merits would enable me to reach paradise. Unfortunately, I was later involved in a love affair. Though after my death I was escorted by the Gracious Genius and protected by our master-benefactor, my sins were still numerous, and I was not qualified to ascend to heaven. When I was alive, our master counted greatly upon me. He often tried to encourage and give me precious pieces of advice. But I was too slow minded to understand and put his teachings into practice. Consequently, my heart failed to master my body and I haven't reached the goal of controlling myself yet. As I was sincere, I was guided by our master-benefactor to this place of repentance for a thorough understanding of things before being able to go to the Center of Perfection for further

regeneration. On my burial day, I was greatly touched at seeing my brethren light joss-sticks before my coffin and follow the hearse to the grave. Will you please convey to them my sincere thanks for their kindness. Here, I am daily taught literature and the tenets of the Tao, and have to take regular tests. The students have to exchange experiences and opinions, develop a merciful heart, learn to combat greed and to remain insensitive to feminine beauty. For every subject, our score must be above the average. We are constantly tested by the Immortals with their divine powers. For instance, they check to see whether we are still greedy when seeing gold or precious treasures on the roadside, or whether we are seduced by pretty girls. If we succumb to temptation, then we will have to learn the lessons again. God and Buddhas come regularly to the center to teach us the dogmas of the Tao. We have never been punished, but I admit that it is hard for us to assimilate the lessons, to learn and to pass the exams

The Mandarin: Our center has the responsibility of training the souls for the functions of genii or saints, or replacing the acting genii who are still weak in the knowledge of the Tao. For this reason, the scholars have to take frequent tests. We only let those graduate who completed the compulsory spiritual level. Upon completion of their studies, some of them who have predestined attachments with a divine master will be taken by him to paradise for further spiritual perfection. Others will return to the human world to undertake the functions of genii.

Tchouang: My dear Yang, I ask you to do me a favor. Please advise my children to regenerate and to devote themselves to the studies of the Tao. They are well educated

and sincere boys. It would be deplorable if they didn't accomplish great achievements. I hope my brethren in the Temple will notice their qualifications and provide them assistance. I remember many times this sentence: "If I could accompany Yang Ts'ien to visit hell, it would be wonderful". This wish of mine, like a prophecy, now comes true. I wish to serve the Temple of the Sages in its good works, but here I am, my body is lost, and I am devoid of means to do so.

TK: We now know the situation of the Center of Perfection. We still have to visit the Services of Remuneration and Punishment. Good bye, gentlemen.

YT: Farewell, dear Tchouang. Take care of yourself. Don't worry about our temple.

Tchouang: Adieu, Yang.

The Mandarin: Order the dignitaries to muster for the salute to our visitors.

TK: On board, Yang Ts'ien. We are to visit another place.

YT: I'm aboard, Master.

TK: We come to the Service of Remuneration for Good Actions.

YT: Indeed. I see a sign with such words.

The Mandarin Service-Chief: Welcome to you, Buddha Tse Kong and Mr. Yang Ts'ien.

TK: Master and disciple, we have come to pay you a visit in order to learn about the activities of your service.

YT: The souls arriving here are led by the Gracious Genius. They seem totally free and are neither escorted nor maltreated.

The Mandarin: A certain number of humans who



have more merits than sins come here after their death, to wait for judgement. They enjoy complete liberty. They may drink tea, talk at leisure all day long or play chess for amusement. Our place serves as a temporary resting place for honest souls. After a temporary stay they will be transferred to the Center of Training for Perfection or to the places for investigation and decision on their fates.

YT: That's how things are! I understand now.

TK: Our time is quite limited. We must visit the Service of Punishment for Bad Actions. May we take leave?

The Mandarin: Personnel mustering for the salute.

TK: Embark, Yang. It's quite a short distance from here. Well, we arrive.

YT: How different this place is, compared to the Remuneration Service. The souls are being escorted by infernal guards, like the guilty under arrest. At the entrance door is a placard bearing the name of the service.

The Mandarin: Our salutations, Masters. We are greatly honored by your visit in person. Your book will be very precious.

TK: We are deeply touched by your words. As our time is restricted, may we ask you to give us essential information about your service?

The Mandarin: Perfect, my service is named Punishment for Bad Actions. The dishonest humans who do harm to other people and infringe upon the divine law are closely watched by the genii of the Three Worlds. The latter are patrolling day and night and they send their reports to hell. Our warning to the very wicked people consists of seizing and leading their souls to hell for punishment. Living people

whose souls are being punished in hell are haunted by a vague nuisance which tortures them terribly. They feel strangely sick, with splitting headaches and discomfort all over their bodies. They only know that they are not well. They are out of sorts, irritable and they are completely unaware that some kind of ghost is tormenting them.

As soon as we release their souls back to their bodies, all of these symptoms disappear and they return to normal. Look at those folks passing by whose souls are being captured and punished. Our first job is to warn them about their bad actions while they are still alive. Our second job consists of punishing humans after their death. The very heavy sinners are sent to our service for preliminary punishment while waiting to be transferred to their respective prisons, after a thorough investigation. Their stay in our service is but transient.

YT: I fully understand your explanation and thank you very much

TK: Let's return to the temple, Yang Ts'ien.

The Mandarin: Muster your men to salute.

TK: The dais, Yang Ts'ien.

YT: I'm settled, Master.

TK: We are home. Go to your body, son.



Chapter 61

Visit to the Lake of Polluted Blood and to the Palace of the King of the Eastern Mountain

**Buddha Tse Kong who manifested
on July 25th, 1978. Year of the Horse.**

*Travel to hell included mountains and valleys
Pains and perils by no means make us uncertain
Good and evil are not without reverberations
Paradise and hell appear in symmetric unison.*

Buddha Tse Kong: While traversing the paths of hell, we saw nothing but sinful souls plunged into nearly total alienation. Before his birth, man ignored who he was. Born into the world, he ignores the place he came from and the place he will go. With haggard eyes, he doesn't know how to behave. He is like a lazy pupil following his comrades to school with his lunch basket in hand. All he knows is to eat his food and play with his schoolmates. Upon the arrival of the exam, he has memorized none of his lessons, and he fails. He has thus nullified the pains and cares of his parents who have reared and tried to educate an ignorant, ungrateful child. I appeal to humans who show themselves worthy of their names, be honest and follow the good path. Let them not be demonical and inhuman in their lives, because they will become real demons and devils after their death. Let's depart on duty, Yang Ts'ien.

Yang Ts'ien: In the distance, I see a lake where

people are being drowned. Some of them are immersed to the bottom while others are struggling to rise to the surface. Cries for help are reaching me, and I smell a fetid odour.

TK: That's the lake of polluted blood. The sight will be horrible, and I suggest that you remain calm. Let's go closer to have a better look.

YT: Along the road leading to the lake, infernal guards are seen mercilessly dragging some sinful souls.

TK: They're going to cast the souls into the lake.

YT: As we are approaching the lake, the smell of blood is growing more and more nauseous. The wild screams of the dying souls squeeze my heart.

The General on guard: I am delighted with your visit. I received a message announcing your arrival. Please follow me to the lake.

YT: Thank you very much, General. Looking from here will do. There is no need to go as far as the lake. Can you tell me about the crimes committed by these souls?

The General: Of course. First, I deem it proper to tell you about of the history of this lake. It is situated adjacent to the Bridge of Distress—you must have seen it previously—under the bridge, there crawl a multitude of snakes as big as an arm which bite the souls. The sinful souls serving as prey for the snakes are dragged to the middle of the bridge and pushed down to the pit. The snakes will snatch at them, crush them to pieces and swallow them. The number of victims is so great that the blood gushing from their bodies flows abundantly enough to make up this lake. The souls who drowned in it had committed foul crimes in their lives.

YT: Can you explain more to me, General?

The General: The Immortals, as you know, must be accorded full respect. There are a number of persons who dare curse the Immortals or use blasphemous speech when they are in desperate circumstances: sickness, ill luck, misfortune. Others utter rude, obscene words addressed to the aged, respectable persons or slander other people. All those people belong to the category of men whose hearts and entrails are polluted. This includes those professional prostitutes who trade their beauty for money and whose every utterance is swearing; exceedingly lustful people who spend their days in pleasure-dens, soiling their bodies and souls; people fortifying their bodies by eating impurities; people of certain perverse doctrines practicing their cults and rites with animals' blood and others; those who like to massacre living creatures while disgracing the holy ambiance of sacred places and canonical books. All of these are drowned in the Lake of Polluted Blood after their death.

TK: According to an age-old tradition, it is rumored that a woman dying of child-birth is also condemned to the polluted-lake drowning. I believe this rumor is nonsense. The fact of giving birth to a child and bring it up is included in the law of nature. When a woman dies in her confinement, her fate is already deplorable as it is, why should she be thrown into the lake of polluted blood? The members of the victim's family should perform as much charitable work as possible, recite prayers for providing her soul some peace in the grace of the genii, saints, gods, and buddhas.

The General: You are perfectly right, Buddha Tse Kong. I hope the living men understand this truth.

TK: I think it's quite enough. Now, we're going to see something else.

YT: Thank you for your instructive information, General.

The General: At your service.

TK: Good. Now, let's pay a visit to the King of the Eastern Mountain. We arrive, now.

The King: At last, you have come. We are glad to see you.

TK: Please forgive us for coming here late. We have chosen to visit the other Palaces first, because of their hierarchical functions.

The King: Your arrival affords me a great deal of joy. Don't apologize. Since the days the Temple of the Sages was opened, a large number of canonical books have been distributed and the radiance of the Tao has shone throughout the world. These books have responded to the wish of the virtuous hearts who have a thirst for the providential way of God. They transform honest people into passionate worshippers of the divine light. Your important works inspire deep admiration from me. At present, you are accompanied by your disciple Yang Ts'ien, and it is an honor for me to welcome you here. Please follow me to the reception hall for some discussion.

YT: We are grateful, sir.

The King: Take your seats. General, please serve us some tea.

The King: May we offer you some tea and fruits? Please, make yourselves at home.

TK: The tea is delicious.



YT: Its fragrance is excellent, and the fruits are exquisite. May I take some with me to the living world?

The King: These fruits are tasty only if eaten here in hell.

TK: Don't be so greedy, Yang Ts'ien. I saw in your orchard a lot of ripening fruits. Take good care of them and you'll have something good to eat. The fruit of the Tao alone is the most exquisite, it has neither form nor bulk, but it is wonderful. By eating it, you obtain all that you desire. But if you leave it to rot, it will become useless.

YT: The teachings of Buddha Tse Kong and of your Majesty enlighten me greatly, and I feel ashamed.

TK: Can you explain to us your various functions in this Palace, sir?

The King: This mountain in the east, alias T'ai Shan is the first of a range of five mountains. It is placed under the administration of the 10th Gate. This is the highest judiciary branch of hell, something like the Supreme Court in the terrestrial world. My function consists of correcting and punishing all of the discontent and belligerent souls who create disorder, also promoting or demoting the genii and demons on earth as well as in hell. I can send a request directly to the Celestial Emperor and then give the order to execute. All of the genii of the mountains, regions, frontiers, heaven and earth are depending on my palace. We also have to make the final decision for the judgements of the other palaces. We are the most important branch of the ten palaces. On the summit of this mountain resides the Pontiff of the World of Darkness, alias King of Hell. He administers and directs the

activities of hell to ensure success. My role of administrator is quite different from the administrators of the other gates.

YT: May I have one more question, sir. You said all of the souls and demons in hell are at your command. However, it is often rumored in the world that some man is possessed by a demon, some other is haunted by a devil and other things of this kind. Can these demons and devils escape from your control and run away to do what they want?

The King: The celestial net is incommensurable and loose, but no human being can slip off its vast meshes. Even though the infernal net is thick and tight, some devils can occasionally escape from it. Your remarks are correct. The law of hell is impartial but it doesn't mean that compassion is neglected. It must encompass both the logical side and the sentimental side of the matter. Malevolent geniuses and devils causing disorder on the terrestrial world are many. This is because souls which suffer an unfair death have the right to avenge. But after they are back on earth, for lack of consciousness, they get attached to humans and don't want to leave them.

However, the demons don't dare to approach the good people who possess pure and strong spiritual energy. As a result, the souls who violate the infernal law and sow disorder will be discovered some day. They will be either punished by the genii on earth or arrested by the patrollers of our palace and led to hell for punishment. They will be unable to deny their crimes and will be judged by the law of hell.

Back to your question, I can summarize the matter like this: Because the authorities of hell want to see the souls'

rancor dissipated, they set the souls temporarily free for the latter to return to earth and settle their accounts. Therefore, we can find in the world those people who are possessed by devils or demons, and sometimes, the convicts who, after their release from jails, disguise their faces to commit even havier crimes. These vindictive souls can manipulate and incite human beings who lack of self- control, so they commit serious mistakes without being aware of the consequence of their acts.

YT: Now, I understand perfectly.

TK: Your clear explanations have opened my mind. May we take leave, now.

The King: Before you go, I hope that the book “Voyages To Hell” will be finished as soon as possible and distributed to humans under the best conditions. Officers, form your line to render honors to our distinguished guests.

YT: We are really grateful, sir. Shall we go, Master?

TK: We return home. Your body must be impatient. Go!

Celestial Edict

A personage of the Service of Rites and Cults of the Temple of the Sages ascended the pulpit on the 3rd day of the 5th month, year of the Horse (1978) and declared:

The Saint- Messenger of God prescribed the following:

"At this moment, the Celestial Edict is going to be distributed. Order is given to the Titulary Genii of Communes within five leagues around, and Gracious Genii within ten leagues around to gather here for welcoming it and attending its promulgation".

The High Chamberlain Tseu of the Celestial Palace of God, through the intermediary of a medium, send down this quatrain:

*In the festival of mid-autumn, divine energy shines,
The celestial macrocosm is glorified with blissful light
Respectfully, the book is for dedication
To redeem sins, untie woes; it's compensation.*

And the Saint-Messenger to proclaim:

Down to this earth, I have the mission to bring this Edict of God which I dictate tonight in the following terms:

That all of the genii and disciples humbly bow in reverence toward the Celestial Edict that reads:

His Majesty the Celestial Emperor, Supreme God, ordains the following:



“Carrying out a decision decreed by the Celestial Congress held in my palace at the Ethereal Heights, the Temple of the Sages inaugurated its brush-pen for beginning the book “Voyages To Hell” on the 15th of August of mid-autumn, year of the Dragon (1976) and will complete this precious piece of work on the 15th of August, year of the Horse (1978) which is two entire years.

During this lapse of time, Yang Ts’ien visited the 10 Palaces of Hell, interviewed the souls in the prisons, and the testimonials he gathered heaped up as high as a hill, as described in the book “Voyages To Hell”. All these documents had been published on the reviews of the Temple of the Sages and popularized among all classes of citizens

On the 15th of lunar August this year, they will be published in the form of books, 108 copies of which are to be placed on the altar, and three copies are to be burnt: The first one offered to paradise, the second to hell and the third dedicated to the genii of the human world under the vault of heaven. This is to express adoration with respect to the deities of the three worlds: Heaven, earth and hell.

The different services of hell which are great admirers of this accomplishment will consider the merits, as written in the book, to gratify and grant amnesty to the sinful souls. In addition, they will organize a great festival to celebrate the event, and will address a report to the Pontiff of the World of Darkness.

As far as the world of humans is concerned, all of the people who exert effort to do charitable works, by writing, printing or distributing this book will acquire great merits and will be rewarded. They will have their names, addresses, the

number of books printed, mentioned in a manifesto that will be burnt and will serve to report to heaven the memorable acts of their generous hearts which are devoted to the cause of morality.

I congratulate the disciples of the Temple of the Sages who have undergone considerable hardship during these two years to attain this glorious success, and I expect to see them accomplish even greater results in their ideal of redressing the religious way, exterminating the depraved manners and advancing toward universal peace.

I command respect to this.

This is my order.

(O, God! We obey Thee without negligence. We thank Thee for Thy Grace).

Celestial Cycle, May 3rd, Year of the Horse (1978)



Postface by the Living Buddha Tse Kong

In spite of their most sophisticated scientific equipment and their advanced technology, humans of today can only explore superficially the domain of spiritualism, and their knowledge about it is, unfortunately, quite meager. As long as humans refuse to participate in the laborious practice of spiritual perfection to open their 3rd eye of clairvoyance and see through everything, spiritualism will remain dim to their eyes and vague to their reasoning.

Man possesses three spiritual forces: seminal essence energy, vital breath energy and spiritual energy. His temporal body, which we call a bag for containing food, and a coat rack for hanging garments, will not last long because one fine morning the earth, water, wind and fire in him will metamorphose, his body will decompose and become dust and ashes. Man departs leaving behind him his deserted palace.

Because of this phenomenon, his perpetual soul can acquire another existence and another body; he changes his features and form, and again sees daylight with a renewed face. The prophets of different religions in all times and all nations, also the Immortals endowed with divine powers who are well-versed in the mystic domain, have seen these phenomena clearly and they can testify to my sayings.

The publication of the “Voyages To Hell” is due to the mercifulness of God. He suffers greatly at the sight of humans groveling in the dust of the terrestrial world. For a long time the three vices: Greed, anger and foolishness

have been raging among humans. They immerse the virtues, create indescribable karmas and drag society toward complete perdition. It is therefore necessary to redress the religious way as soon as possible, and reestablish a happy life for humans. Particularly, it is imperative to disclose the real situation of hell in order to forewarn humans, to reform their manners and ways, guide them toward good, propagate the truth and the religious way, enhance a devoted faith and a clairvoyant conscience.

After reading the Voyages to Hell, the lucky man will ponder over it, and will “forsake his butcher’s cutlass”. With all my heart, I hope the readers will return to their serene self which is the genuine nature of Buddhas. After the busy days of the past two years, my heart is now filled with serenity and enchantment. I now commune with myself calmly, in depth of thought to reach attunement with the rhythm of God, our Supreme Being.

Respectfully, I dedicate this dictum that serves as a conclusion for this book:

*“Misfortune and happiness have no door,
Man himself sows the seed of cause.
Good and evil are reaped like the image and its shadow”*

The Temple of the Sages, June 29th, 1978(year of the Horse)

Respectfully,
The Monk Tse Kong



Final Poem of the Temple of the Sages

*Knowing the Tao is awakening from obscurity
As the dark room being filled with resplendent light
If man neglects self-regeneration in this life,
Then when does he hope to find another time?*



Words From Master Luong Si Hang–Vi Kien

After having read the voyages through the ten palaces of hell, and listening to the argumentations from the enlightened kings of the palaces, their mandarins and genii, Buddha Tse Kong and Yang T'sien, and though we cannot see with our blind earthly eyes, we can judge whether their reasoning is far from reality or not. Do their explanations help to guide and save all living creatures? Do they provide guidance to our souls? Do they allow us the last opportunity to amend ourselves and awaken our consciousness on our own?

The World Above has encouraged us to cultivate ourselves spiritually so that we may return soon. We see the sinful souls being festered in hell. They were like us before, but they did not know about the soul, they did not know the value of the soul. Therefore, today, they must be enchained in hell and once awakened, they wail, cry, suffer, and are miserable. The soul is eternal – we have clearly seen so from the rigor and wisdom of the divine law – but only when we perfect ourselves spiritually, will we know that our soul is eternal. We heard how the souls were jailed, how they suffered in the prison of heart-wrenching, the lake of foul-smelling urine and excrement, how their faces were skinned, how they were mutilated and tortured in all kinds of manners. Why did they have to undergo these frightening tortures? This is so that their consciousness could be awakened.

Today, on earth, do we suffer similarly? We certainly have suffered in the same way. We are sinful souls imprisoned



in our microcosm. If we do not follow Heaven's will and do not act in a virtuous manner, where will we go? We will encounter misfortune in our inner consciousness. When we kill, harm or slander a person or when we discredit a religion, our hearts will not be peaceful. Who will carry this illness? It is an incurable disease, which causes grief and suffering. Our spirit is dark, but we don't see ourselves and only blame others. What kind of sin is it? We will become gloomier each day. As spiritual adepts, we know how to cultivate ourselves spiritually; we know the path to return to our existing equilibrium. We are immensely fortunate to understand that we have the opportunity to repent our sins as well as amend ourselves in order to return to the original nature that God has granted us, and that we have the last opportunity for spiritual awakening.

On earth, people wrongly believe that having billions of money will free them of all sins. No, having billions will not free us of all sins after death, and we have seen it clearly. The World Above has clearly stated that one cannot buy clearance of one's sins with billions. We must accept the consequences of our sins. If we do not cultivate ourselves spiritually, who will guide us to advancement? On earth, God has given us many opportunities, many temples and pagodas, many churches, many places where the Truth is lectured and explained to provide salvation to the soul in accordance with each person's abilities and their own great vows. Let's not hesitate longer to search for a spiritual path. God has bestowed upon us all possible means, but if we refuse to perfect ourselves spiritually, how will we ever attain awakening?

As spiritual adepts, we truly respect the book “Voyages To Hell”, and we clearly see that we also come from hell, and that we have experienced the frightening scenes before; now we have awakened and we want to return to our equilibrium through spiritual training. We ponder upon the seriousness and education of the Lord, a means of great compassion to save humanity, even with the creation of hell. Humans who go to hell do not care about God, and they can even sell God for profits. But God still gives them one last opportunity to return to their true selves. People are jailed for a number of years, but their stay will lengthen if they do not repent. Similarly, on earth, if we breach the law, we will also be jailed. On earth, one could possibly find ways to mitigate one’s situation, but this is not available when one is in hell.

Today, we are at the entrance hall of love and spiritual virtue, but we do not know how to build love and spiritual virtue. Why can we say that we are at the entrance hall of love and spiritual virtue? The Almighty Lord has granted us one last opportunity; He has bestowed upon us love and spiritual virtue through the reading of the book “Voyages To Hell” today, so that we may understand our own errors. Before reading the book “Voyages To Hell”, we also feel regret when making mistakes between husband and wife, between parents and children, and we have spent a little time to repent and amend ourselves. But if we remain stubborn, we will only tear apart our own hearts.

More churches and more places for spiritual training are now opened so that people can achieve true understanding, and relate with heaven and earth to write sublime philosophies to stir people’s hearts in hope of awakening them. We see

the examples of spiritual people who attained enlightenment through their perseverance: Shakyamuni Buddha and Jesus Christ both persevered and remained steadfast; they liberated themselves to influence all living creatures. If today people do not want to learn, whose sin will it be? It will be theirs. People must awaken their consciousness, they should see that they have a soul and they should preserve their soul to advance. Our souls do not need to be overly greedy; what is necessary is to maintain spiritual virtue, compassionate love, and achieve equilibrium in order to evolve higher. This is an important task, but why do we still refuse to learn? We are still skeptical and we still yearn for ill-gotten material possessions, but how can we be liberated if we do not conduct ourselves humanely? If we were all billionaires, where would we still go after death? The important question is where do we go after death? Can we take with us our possessions? Can we take our husbands or wives? Can we take our children? No. We must depart alone, but the question is whether we leave in an agitated or a serene state. To leave in an agitated state means to descend to hell, but to leave in a serene state means that we will have a clear mind, and we will be able to continue our learning in the higher sphere which is heaven.

A spiritual adept must perceive his position and his goal clearly. We live presently in the agitated earthly world, with its winners and losers. Now we awaken our consciousness and return to the eternal law of equilibrium; we want to search for a spiritual path. Spiritual perfection means to improve us to return to equilibrium, and not to depend on God and Buddhas. If as humans, we are dependent on God and Buddhas, we could use money to buy God and

Buddhas before we die. People have done so on earth. In the past, rich people in China did so. When they earned a lot of money, they busily burnt paper money and silver to send to hell, so that they could receive this money at the netherworld bank after their death and spend it. In the past, billionaires acted in this way, but how many people reported back that they were able to receive the money that they had sent to hell? There is no such thing. Only through charitable work will we be able to redeem our sins. This is important as it means to practice love and spiritual virtue.

Humans must love humans. They must know how to respect humans like they respect God. *"To follow heaven's will means survival, to go against heaven's will means destruction"*. We disdain the precious gift that the Lord has given us on earth to educate us. We currently have a miraculous and beautiful body, but who has arranged it? You see that your body is the realization from the whole universe. This is a very esoteric science that cannot be seen with terrestrial eyes. We can never see the evolution faculty in our inner consciousness, and no machine will ever be able to prove it, as it resides in the infinite sphere. We clearly see the miraculous opportunity that God has granted us through our physical body so that we can act and achieve spiritual awakening. We analyze to awaken our consciousness; we listen to awaken our consciousness; we speak to awaken our consciousness and we think to awaken our consciousness. Eventually, we will return to our fundamental nature of equilibrium, serenity, and wisdom.

We are immensely fortunate to understand the value of the soul. We understand the value of the soul and we should

repent soon and devote ourselves to spiritual cultivation. We should see our sinful past, with all kinds of slanders and gossips, damaging people's reputation and defaming people without any proof. Doing so will only cause a dark state of mind for ourselves.

When we see which direction to follow, we will never err on the wrong path. If we are untrustworthy but keep protesting and shouting, we will only enchain ourselves more, as we are already in the dark and do not see the way. The sinful souls in hell have clamored a lot, but they must accept their fate eventually. Even though they do not agree, they must accept it eventually. All human beings who descend on earth weep and cry, and refuse to enter their bodies, but after a while they become accustomed, and would pray God and Buddhas to let them live a little longer to stay with their children and grandchildren. However, if they do not awaken their consciousness, if they do not cultivate their consciousness to return to their roots, then they will be closer to hell than to their children and grandchildren. Even if they earn billions, money alone may not benefit their children and grandchildren who could fall prey to debauchery. The love and spiritual virtue granted by Heaven and Earth are infinitely large and deep; the universe has shined pure energy upon all spheres so that everyone can benefit and ascend higher, but if they refuse to awaken their consciousness, they only bury themselves alive, as no one else is jumping in to save them from their actions.

The book "Voyages To Hell" has clearly demonstrated that those who have committed sins must shoulder all punishments themselves. Only by shouldering all

punishments will one truly release one's karma. At that time, one will be allowed to be reborn through the six paths of transmigration. But how many years, how many days, and how many sufferings and miseries would that mean? Why do we not repent now and devote ourselves to spiritual perfection? People who read the book "Voyages To Hell" should read it many times to awaken their consciousness even more. Then they will slowly become a good person on earth; at that time, they will attain wisdom and search for a path of liberation for themselves.



Conclusion

Above was my conclusion after reading the book "Voyages To Hell". I hope that those who have read the book "Voyages To Hell" and listened to my readings would understand better. I wish especially to help either the elderly or blind people who cannot read, so that they can listen and awaken their consciousness to return to their original nature. They will then rejoice to be the master of a miraculous microcosm, which is their physical body. They will know that their soul is eternal, and they will repent and amend themselves soon to return to their roots.

This is now the end of my reading.



Even though the books are now printed and you have awakened your consciousness to turn to spiritual



cultivation, you still do not have much pure energy. During the past few days, you have heard my readings of “Voyages To Hell”, and all spheres have shined their blessings upon us. This is an infinite grace so that you could fully enjoy this pure energy. What a pity that your level of spiritual training is still weak, and you are unable to fully perceive it. If you can fully perceive it, this would be an enormous blessing, and pure energy would envelop both your minds and bodies. One day, you will reach self-awakening; you will embrace this book and read and re-read it. When you practice the Vo-Vi meditation method, you will not err by an inch. Our path is clear, we release our intransigence and passions with our own efforts, we develop ourselves toward infinity in order to see the value of compassion and realize compassion in a proper way.

We have the opportunity to be a human being, we have the opportunity to advance toward the level of a Saint or an Immortal, but if we refuse to learn, what will our future be? We will regret immensely later. On earth, we earn a living; we work in a factory; we must toil hard in order to get a salary. Similarly, as spiritual adepts, we must suffer before attaining enlightenment. The more you cultivate your spiritual virtue and make sacrifices, the more valuable it will be. Don't say that “I am a spiritual adept, and thanks to reading the “Voyages To Hell”, I can see the sins of this person or that person.” No, I see my own sins. I read the book to see my own errors, my laziness, to verify my unrighteous actions, so that I can repent and amend myself. Only then will I be able to evolve toward infinity.

You should not continue holding yourselves in

contempt. You have the serene capacity to return if you turn toward serenity. Life, our agitated body, rivalries, intransigence, all these are transitory, illusory, false. Serenity is the truth. I have visited you many times, but this time, I stay here to read the “Voyages To Hell, which is a fortunate blessing from the World Above for all of you. Let’s read to enjoy together, to learn and awaken together. This is a very fortunate opportunity to guide us, the spiritual adepts. I am already in an advanced age, I wish that people after me will achieve greater and better results, and they will contribute their voices to guide all living beings in accordance with the divine path of development. Everyone will have the opportunity to progress easily without being oppressed or coerced.

In the Vo-Vi community all over the world, there are many people who have spent efforts and dedication to perfect themselves spiritually. They will be able to project their energy. They are not just a few. They will attain a higher spiritual level, they will release their blinded passions and intransigence on their own and they will contribute their share. They will also be subject to more karmic retributions so that they could become purer and lighter. If they have made some mistakes and encountered karmic retributions, let’s not deride them, or insult them. This is not right. When our consciousness is awakened, we understand that the process of spiritual evolution must involve sufferings.

We see that Yang T’sien and Buddha Tse Kong were covered with dust while visiting the dark realm of hell to find materials for us to learn from. Why does Buddha Tse Kong, who has already attained enlightenment, need to follow us?



We should follow them, but compassion is a powerful force, and this force has come to us. We are infinitely fortunate. Even if we are very ignorant, we should at least learn a little bit of compassion to be worthy of a human being. A human being without compassion only betrays and kills himself.

We must make efforts and understand our path clearly: **The direction of the “Vo-Vi Method of Esoteric Science of Non-Being and Dharma of Buddha” is to release the impure and conserve the pure energy** to open up and develop ourselves, to eradicate all impure in our inner consciousness and turn toward serenity to cooperate with the Great Serenity of the Almighty Lord, as there will be many changes in the upcoming era. Only those who turn toward the Great Serenity will have an opportunity to work positively; only by turning our mind directly toward the Great Serenity will we have an opportunity to provide full guidance to all living beings. We must work positively in order to earn spiritual merit, and no one else can do it for us.

Today, you have a spiritual method to practice on your own and to remind yourselves on your own. Our karmic debts in the form of family relations follow us, and demand that we pay back, so how could we detach ourselves from these karmas, and guide them to a higher level? This is how we learn the Buddhist meaning in “Courage”. You are very fortunate: If you practice the Vo-Vi method, you will see that you will progress rapidly. Before, you are unable to understand the words of Truth when reading spiritual scriptures. Now you can understand these scriptures profoundly. You can understand any book of scriptures if you agree to practice correctly in accordance with the direction of the Vo-Vi

method. You will realize that you are procrastinating, you are slowing down, you are dependent, you have forgotten your own sincerity and you do not use your sincerity. Sincerity means serenity, compassion, and wisdom. We must keep these values. We hope that our future will be better, we hope for a better society, and we hope that there will be a heaven close to humans. However, humans refuse to be close to heaven and instead, they are closer to hell by committing sins and engaging too much in self-deception.

We have had the opportunity to hear numerous Saints and Immortals reminding us to become a Saint. Today, we should spend efforts to return to serenity. Let's practice detachment, let's drop sorrow from our hearts, let's no longer nurture anger, hatred, and grief in our hearts! We should set them aside on our own, we should live peacefully and leisurely, then we will be able to grow this seed of peace in order to advance further. The more we advance, the more people will see that we suffer, but we are in fact happy. Kuan Yin attained enlightenment through suffering. The Buddhas also attained enlightenment through suffering.

Only through suffering will we appreciate the value of patience and resignation. We have suffered a lot already. When we emigrated here, we suffered a lot, but we only harvested the lesson of patience and resignation. Wherever you go, you are still discriminated and not truly respected. We should remember this point, and continue to learn patience to direct ourselves toward purity and lightness. We do not need to triumph over people, but our lightness and purity will be our contribution, and it will help them become better. They will improve themselves and live peacefully together with their

brothers and sisters on this planet earth within compassionate love in order to harmonize with the Immortals and Buddhas. The latter have persevered a lot, they have suffered many hardships in order to attain enlightenment, but they always think about humans and want to provide spiritual guidance to them. They want us to advance and do not forsake us. We are the people who abandon the Immortals and Buddhas, we utilize them like a rag and give them orders at any time, but we do not practice. At night, we would ponder about it and know that we have committed sins, so we must repent and amend ourselves. During our human existence, we must absolutely devote ourselves to spiritual perfection. We must be sincere with ourselves and no longer engage in self-deception. We should eradicate any impure habit, any anger and blinded passion. We should cultivate our consciousness of harmony, love, and forgiveness. This is essential, and all three spheres are waiting for humans to contribute their share in this last era.

I sincerely thank you for your attention today.

*Luong Si Hang–Vi Kien
Melbourne, Australia
February 1987*

Biography of Master Lương Sĩ Hằng
(spiritual name Vĩ Kiên)
(1923-2009)

Mr. Lương was born on 20 December 1923 in Qui Nhơn, Binh Dinh province, Viet Nam. His father, Lương Tâm, was a freight owner. His mother, Lâm Thị, passed away when he was still a young child. In his youth, Mr. Lương suffered from ill-health, and he was often depressed. In his childhood, Mr. Lương saw the severe storms and floods caused by the upheavals of the celestial mechanism that completely destroyed the dwellings in the central region of Viet Nam. This prompted him to search for the subtle mysteries of Heaven and Earth. Later on, he married and had two adopted daughters.

In 1957, he had the chance to meet his spiritual master, Mr. Đỗ Thuần Hậu (1883-1967) who taught him the Vo Vi meditation method (Vo-Vi Esoteric Science and Dharma of Buddha) in a devoted manner. Under the guidance of his Master, Mr. Lương strengthened his resolution to find the truth through self-practice, willpower and meditation.

In 1978, with the mission to introduce the dharma around the world, Mr. Lương left Viet Nam and arrived at the Fabella Refugee Camp in the Philippines. There, he helped many fellow refugees and Phillipino officials with his acupuncture treatments. Donations from his treatments were distributed to the Bataan, Palawan, and Fabella camps. Mr. Lương also devoted his time to giving lectures about the Vo-Vi meditation to fellow refugees in the camps.



In 1979, Mr. Lương left the Fabella Refugee Camp to settle permanently in Montreal, Canada. Every year, following the invitations from Vo Vi meditation practitioners, Mr. Lương traveled around the world (Asia, Europe, Australia, North America), to visit them and give lectures. Despite his age and the strenuous schedule, Mr. Lương continued to travel around the world visiting practitioners to impart the teachings of the Vo-Vi method and his message of peace and resignation, which clarify and light the path towards deliverance. His lectures were recorded in audio cassettes, CDs, DVDs, and printed as books by the Vo-Vi Friendship Associations.

Mr. Lương passed away at the age of 86 on September 23, 2009 in Montreal, Canada, leaving behind many loving memories and deep respect in the hearts of Vo Vi practitioners around the world.

Here is an excerpt from his writings, “A Transient Existence”, in his book “The Source of Infinite Guidance”:

“I have engaged in the practice of spiritual training, and overcome innumerable instances of treachery and duplicity caused by the dark and ungrateful minds of human beings, going from heaviness and impurity to lightness and pureness of both mind and body. I have often shed tears because of the poignant scenes of destruction by war. I have felt that myself and the population were all in great misery. Therefore, I have always wanted to find justice in society as well as in Heaven and Earth. Thanks to my diligent spiritual practice, I was able to recognize that the original energy of Heaven and Earth was the most important thing for life...”

Thanks to my strong determination and diligent spiritual training, I keep meditating every night, regardless of harsh and difficult circumstances; whether I have money or no money, I persevere in my spiritual training. Therefore, today, I am still strong and healthy, and I work even more than in my youth. Thanks to the Vo-Vi Esoteric Science and Dharma of Buddha, I can understand many things at the same time without burdening my mind and spirit. I feel as if I work without labor and speak without effort, and I always feel peace, inner calm, lightness and purity. My spiritual energy is always abundant while I give guidance and service in any domain..."



Printed and Freely Distributed by
VOVI Friendship Association of Northern California

To receive other free publications, please contact:
Vo Vi Friendship Ass. of No. California
P.O. Box 18304
San Jose, CA 95158
U.S.A

Email: vovikinhsach@gmail.com

Printed for Free Distribution / Not For Sale

website: <http://www.vovi.org>